

MALORY'S MORTE DARTHUR



# LE MORTE DARTHUR

BY SYR THOMAS MALORY

38133-

THE ORIGINAL EDITION OF WILLIAM CAXTON  
NOW REPRINTED AND EDITED

BY H. OSKAR SOMMER, PH.D.

VOL. II.—INTRODUCTION

LONDON PUBLISHED BY DAVID NUTT, IN THE STRAND

1890



*In sending out this second instalment of Dr. Sommer's Edition of Malory the Publisher begs to thank the Original Subscribers for the patience with which they have waited for it. As will be seen by the Preface, a third instalment has still to be issued. The Publisher trusts that Original Subscribers will appreciate the fact that when they have received this third instalment considerably more will have been supplied to them than was contemplated when the Subscription price was fixed at 21s. The Original Subscribers will easily understand that this price cannot be remunerative, and the Publisher appeals to them with confidence to aid in increasing the sale of this great Edition by mentioning it to their friends. The present Subscription price (valid up to the publication of Part III.) is 30s. for Small Paper Copies, and £5 5s. for the few remaining Large Paper Copies. Even at this advanced price Sommer's Malory is probably the cheapest book of its class ever offered to the public.*

---

## PREFACE.



WHEN, two years ago, I resolved upon reproducing the editio princeps of Sir Thomas Malory's "Le Morte Darthur," I determined that, as far as lay within my power, my edition should be a standard work of English literature, and should serve as a worthy token of the gratitude which, in common with all scholars who have worked at the British Museum, I feel towards the English people for the unrivalled organisation of that magnificent institution, and towards the unfailing courtesy and helpfulness of its officials. Bearing this high purpose in my mind, I have done my utmost to test and sift every question relating to this best of all English romances, as Sir Walter Scott so rightly styles it. Whatever shortcomings there may be in my humble work, they are not, I can honestly say, due to lack of zeal and energy. I have hopes that this will be recognised by the world of scholarship to which I offer the result of my labours.

The consequence of this purpose, from which I have never swerved, has been a considerable delay in the issue of my prolegomena to Caxton's reprint. This delay, though chiefly due to ill-health, which necessitated abstention from work during several months, is also partly due to the fact that I was unable at the outset to clearly recognise the magnitude of the task that I had taken upon me. I found, for instance, the investigations into the question of Malory's sources longer and more arduous than I had anticipated from the very scanty remarks in even important works bearing on this subject. To discuss this theme adequately required much more time

707  
Caxton's reprint

and space than I had at first calculated. With the concurrence of my publisher, I therefore determined, instead of bringing all the editorial matter into the second volume, to divide it, and to issue first the critical and philological apparatus, and, independently, in a third volume the literary discussion.

The second volume now lies before the reader, comprising the Bibliographical History of Malory's romance, a substantially complete List of Various Readings between Caxton's and Wynkyn de Worde's second edition, an exhaustive Index raisonné of Names and Places, Notes on the Language of Malory's work, etc., and a Glossary. The third volume, containing my Treatise on the Sources<sup>1</sup> and Mr. Andrew Lang's Essay on Malory's Prose Style, is being actively pushed forward, and will be issued as soon as is compatible with a thorough examination of the complex questions involved. I trust that original subscribers will feel compensated for the delay by the greater completeness of what is offered to them. I venture also to think that those who use this edition will find it a decided advantage to have the critical and the literary apparatus in distinct volumes, though those who are not so minded will be able to bind the two in one if they wish.

It only remains for me to acquit myself of the pleasant duty of thanking all those who have aided me in my task.

I must again renew my expressions of gratitude to Mrs. Abby E. Pope, of Brooklyn, N.Y., for her fresh collation of the four pages I sent for the second time to America, and to His Excellency Herr Dr. von Gossler for his grant of an additional subsidy from Prussian Government funds. To Sir Edward Strachey, Bart., I am indebted for the use of his private copy of Southey's edition, containing his collations with the Althorp and Osterley Park copies of the Caxton. To the authorities of the British Museum, and in especial to Dr. Richard Garnett, to Mr. W. Y. Fletcher, and to Mr. E. J. Scott, of the MSS. Department, I am deeply beholden for the facilities afforded me in

---

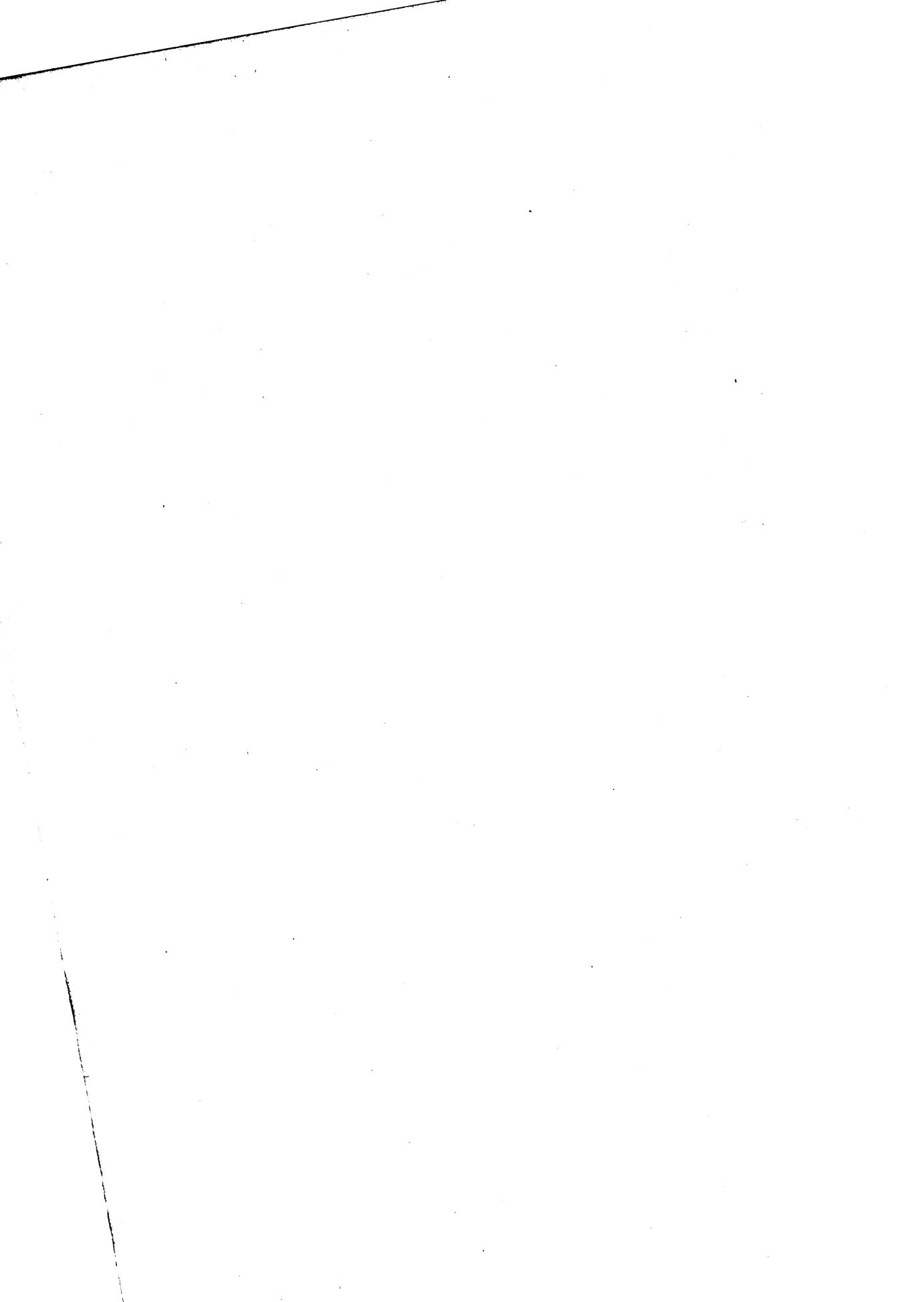
<sup>1</sup> Concerning the sources of "Le Morte Darthur," see my letter to *The Academy* London, January 4th, 1890.



the course of my studies. Mr. Henry Bradley, one of the editors of the great English Dictionary on Historical Principles, assisted me with his kind advice, and placed at my disposal the rich apparatus of texts and books of reference of the Delegates of the Clarendon Press deposited at the British Museum. To my eminent friend Mr. William Blades I owe not only the information derived from his great work on England's first printer, but also generous help spontaneously rendered me at a critical moment. Last, not least, I must thank my friend Mr. Alfred Nutt for advice and assistance of every kind rendered me during the whole period I was engaged on this work. It is to his love for Arthurian romance, to his enthusiasm for scholarly studies, that these volumes owe their existence.

H. OSKAR SOMMER.

EARTHAM HOUSE, CHICHESTER,  
*March 1890.*



## CONTENTS.

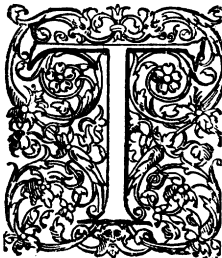
### INTRODUCTION.

	PAGE
SIR THOMAS MALORY AND THE VARIOUS EDITIONS OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR" . . . . .	I
RELATION OF THE DIFFERENT EDITIONS OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR" TO ONE ANOTHER . . . . .	15
THE PRESENT EDITION . . . . .	17
LIST OF ERRORS, OMISSIONS, AND ORTHOGRAPHICAL IRREGULARITIES IN CAXTON'S IMPRESSION . . . . .	21
RESULT OF THE COLLATION OF WHITTAKER'S FACSIMILES WITH THE ORIGINAL PAGES . . . . .	26
NOTES ON THE LANGUAGE OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR" . . . . .	28
LIST OF THE VARIOUS READINGS BETWEEN CAXTON'S AND WINKYN DE WORDE'S EDITIONS . . . . .	43
LIST OF NAMES AND PLACES . . . . .	147
GLOSSARY . . . . .	185



## INTRODUCTION.

### SIR THOMAS MALORY AND THE VARIOUS EDITIONS OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR."

HE cycle of stories of King Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table, known as "Le Morte Darthur," was first presented to us in a volume by England's earliest printer, William Caxton. About the personality of Sir Thomas Malory<sup>1</sup> very little indeed is known, and this little must be gleaned from Caxton's preface and colophon. There we read that Thomas Malory was a knight, that he completed his work in the ninth year of the reign of King Edward IV.—*i.e.*, 1470—twenty-five years before it saw the light of day in print. Caxton further states that Malory "reduced" his work from certain books in French, and that he was the servant of Jesu both day and night, which fact and the general tone of the "Morte Darthur," have sometimes given rise to the hypothesis that he was a priest. The name "Malory" occurs in Leland's time<sup>2</sup> in Yorkshire, and is quoted in the next century in Burton's "Description of Leicestershire,"<sup>3</sup> but no clue can be found to connect the

---

<sup>1</sup> The name "Malory," is also sometimes spelt "Malorye" and "Maleore." See Caxton, p. 861\*, line 9; also, W. de Worde, Copland, East and Stansby.

<sup>2</sup> John Leland's "Itinerary," 2nd ed., Oxford, 1744, vol. viii. p. 22: "There be two Lordshipps lyenge not very far from Ripon, that is Norton Conyers and Hutton Coniers. Norton hathe Northeton Coniers, and Malory hathe Hutton Coniers. The Lands cam to their Aunciters by two doughtars, Heirs Generall of that Coniers. Malory hath another Place caulld High Studly, a litle from Fontaines."

<sup>3</sup> W. Burton, "Description of Leicestershire," 1st ed. 1622, 2nd ed. Lynn, 1777, folio, p. 140, Thomas Malory; p. 262, Sir Thomas Malory, knyght of Winwick, Newbould and Swinford, 19, 27.

author of the "Morte Darthur" with the bearers of his name. The "Bibliographia Britannica"<sup>1</sup> says that Leland, and others after him, stated Malory to be a Welshman, but I can find no reference to this fact in Leland's works.

The "Morte Darthur" has been in all twelve times printed or edited previously to the present edition: seven times in black letter and five times in Roman type.

BLACK LETTER.	ROMAN TYPE.
1. Caxton . . . . 1485 folio.	viii. Hazelwood . . 1816 3 vols. 12mo.
2. W. de Worde . . . . 1498 ,,	ix. Walker's Class . 1816 2 vols. 12mo.
3. W. de Worde . . . . 1529 ,,	x. R. Southey . . . 1817 2 vols. 8vo.
4. W. Copland . . . . 1557 ,,	xi a. Th. Wright . . 1856 3 vols. 8vo.
5. Th. East . . . . about 1585 ,,	b. Th. Wright . . . 1866 ,, 2nd ed.
6. Th. East . . . . about 1585 4to.	xii a. Sir E. Strachey . 1868 Globe ed.
7. W. Stansby . . . . 1634 b.	b. ,, ,, . 1880 ,,

W. Caxton's impression was finished, according to his own statement, in 1485.<sup>2</sup> He was induced to print the book "by many noble and dyuers gentylmen of thys royame." This edition was brought out in folio and printed in black letter. Only two copies of this first and original edition are known to exist. Of a third copy the second leaf of the table of contents of the book is alone preserved.<sup>3</sup> One of the two above-mentioned copies is throughout perfect and in good condition, and is unanimously considered one of the finest specimens of early printing. Belonging originally to the Harleian Library, this copy was sold to the Earl of Jersey for his library at Osterley Park. In 1885 it became the property of Mrs. Abby E. Pope, of Brooklyn, N.Y., in

<sup>1</sup> "Bibliographia Britannica," vol. iii. p. 372, "Caxton:" "If this Sir Thomas Malory was a Welshman, as Leland and others after him assert, he was most likely a Welsh priest."

<sup>2</sup> (a) W. Blades, "The Life and Typography of William Caxton." London, 1861-3, folio, vol. ii. p. 178.

(b) "Bibliotheca Spenceriana, or a Descriptive Catalogue of the Books printed in the Fifteenth Century, in the Library of George John, Earl Spencer, K.G., &c." by T. F. Dibdin. London, 1815, folio, vol. iv. pp. 403-9.

(c) Dibdin, "Typographical Antiquities, or the History of Printing in England, Scotland, and Ireland." London, 1810-19, 4to, vol. i. pp. 241-85.

(d) Lowndes, "Bibliographer's Manual." London, 1864, 8vo, p. 74.

(e) W. Carew Hazlitt's "Hand-book to the Popular, Poetical, and Dramatic Literature of Great Britain, from the Invention of Printing to the Restoration." London, 1867, 8vo p. 13.

<sup>3</sup> Bagford, "Fragments," vol. viii. No. 58.

the United States.<sup>1</sup> The other copy is No. 1194 of the famous library of Earl Spencer, Althorp, Northampton. This copy, too, is in good condition, and not, as some sources say, very much damaged. It wants eleven leaves (not twelve), which are, however, replaced by facsimiles from the Osterley Park copy, due to the skilful hand of Mr. Whittaker: which indeed resemble the original pages so much, that, at first sight, one might easily mistake them for the latter; but on close and careful examination one cannot help noticing many very characteristic, though small, differences in the single letters. Dibdin in his Spencerian Catalogue only mentions that the copy wants eleven leaves, and refers to his "Typographical Antiquities," where he describes the Osterley Park copy. According to a written note by Messrs. Longman<sup>2</sup> attached to the Althorp copy, and to Mr. Blades' account<sup>3</sup> of the book, these leaves were the following: 1. Sig. lj (fol. 98); 2. Sig. r<sub>7</sub> (fol. 152); 3. Sig. r<sub>8</sub> (fol. 153); 4. Sig. T<sub>4</sub> (fol. 357); 5. Sig. T<sub>5</sub> (fol. 358); 6. Sig. ee<sub>2</sub> (fol. 427); 7. Sig. ee<sub>3</sub> (fol. 428); 8. Sig. ee<sub>4</sub> (fol. 429); 9. Sig. ee<sub>5</sub> (fol. 430); and 10. Sig. ee<sub>6</sub> (fol. 431). This statement proved to be not throughout correct, as I discovered when I had done about two-thirds of the text. 1°. There are only nine leaves accounted for. 2°. Sig. ee<sub>2</sub> (fol. 427) is no reproduction, but the original. 3°. Sig. N<sub>2</sub> (fol. 307) and Sig. N<sub>3</sub> (fol. 312) are facsimiles, though not stated as such. The present edition is based on this copy.

<sup>1</sup> At the Osterley sale, in May 1885, the British Museum gave a commission of £1800 to their agent, but the copy was sold for £1950. It is very much to be regretted that the English nation lost this splendid specimen of Caxton's printing, containing, as it does, the traditional history of their King Arthur, a national epic.

<sup>2</sup> This note reads thus:—

Leaves wanting in Caxton's  
Morte d'Arthur left with  
Messrs. Longman & Co. 21 Feb. 1816.

The whole of l;  
Part of r,  
The whole of r<sub>8</sub>  
Part of T<sub>4</sub>  
The whole of T<sub>5</sub>  
Part of eeij

A few leaves following to the end of the Work.—LONGMAN & Co.

Also see Note at Nij.

The parts of the leaves in question alluded to in this note must have been removed. I was unable to discover where the "note at N<sub>2</sub>" refers to.

<sup>3</sup> Blades, vol. ii. page 178: "Imperfect, wanting lj; r, 7 and 8; Tiiij and 5; ee ij. iij, 4, 5 and 6 all of which have been supplied in beautiful facsimiles.

Neither copy has a title.<sup>1</sup> According to Mr. Blades' treatise on Caxton's Typography, the type is No. 4\*. The volume is 11  $\frac{3}{8}$  inches high and 8 inches broad. The lines are all 4  $\frac{5}{8}$  inches long. Thirty-eight lines make generally a full page, but pages occur with a few lines less, and some with thirty-nine lines. Neither folios nor catchwords are given. Books and chapters commence with woodcut initials, the former with ornamental ones, five lines high; the latter with plain ones, three lines high.<sup>2</sup> The first leaf of the book is blank. Caxton's preface commences on the second recto, with a three-line woodcut initial. This preface consists of two paragraphs, and finishes on signature iij. On the verso the table of contents, or "rubrysshe," as Caxton styles it, begins, and runs without interruption through thirty-four pages, terminating on the eighteenth verso. The history itself commences on signature a, with an ornamental five-line woodcut initial. The leaves are distinguished by three sets of alphabets, each in eights, intended merely as a direction to the binders, only half of each sheet being marked, in the beginning, alternately, one page with a signature and one without, afterwards four leaves with signatures and four without, these latter being the halves of the signed sheets. In the first alphabet, after z, follows &, also in eights. The second alphabet concludes with Z, and then follow aa, bb, &c., to ee, in eights, but ee has only six leaves, as the book finishes on the verso of ee. R iij is misprinted for sig. S iij, and S ij for T ij. The Althorp copy is beautifully bound in olive morocco by Lewis.

Caxton's helpmate and successor, Wynkyn de Worde,<sup>3</sup> printed the next two editions of the "Morte Darthur:" the second in 1498, and the third in 1529, both in folio and black-letter. Only two copies

---

<sup>1</sup> The title of the present edition is literally repeated from Caxton's colophon (comp. sig. ee, p. 861\*, lines 12-18). "Title-pages," says Mr. Blades (vol. i. p. 33), "are purely typographical in their origin, the scribes having satisfied themselves with heading their first page with the *Hic incipit* and name of the treatise. Caxton followed the manuscript practice in this particular; for, with one single exception ('The Chastising of God's Children,' plate Lii. vol. ii.), where the title of the book is printed alone in the centre of the first page, his books appear without any title-page. Wynkyn de Worde adopted title-pages immediately after the death of his master."

<sup>2</sup> Compare the photographic facsimile specimen page, selected because it illustrates both sorts of initials, as well as some other particulars referred to later on.

<sup>3</sup> The title which W. de Worde is supposed to have given to his editions, for his copies also want the title-page, runs thus:

"The Booke of Kynge Arthur and of his noble Knyghtes of the Rounde Table. Printed at Westmestre 1498 folio.



of his impressions are known to exist, fortunately one of each edition. That of 1498 is in Earl Spencer's library, No. 907, and that of 1529 in the Grenville Collection of the British Museum. The first copy, though lacking ten leaves,<sup>1</sup> and having thirteen partly injured by smaller or greater portions of the text being torn away, is of particular interest, as an example of the first attempt ever made of illustrating a text throughout with engravings. These are very coarsely executed woodcuts. Dibdin, who has reproduced several of them in his Spencerian Catalogue,<sup>2</sup> says: "They are very little superior to the

<sup>1</sup> The first leaf of the table; signatures a<sub>3</sub>; r<sub>2</sub>; E<sub>3</sub>; E<sub>4</sub>; C<sub>5</sub>; D<sub>3</sub>; B<sub>1</sub>; C<sub>6</sub>; D<sub>1</sub>; and E<sub>2</sub>. The damaged leaves are those: a<sub>7</sub>; i<sub>7</sub>; n<sub>3</sub>; n<sub>4</sub>; o<sub>4</sub>; p<sub>3</sub>; q<sub>5</sub>; r<sub>2</sub>; v<sub>3</sub>; v<sub>8</sub>; R<sub>6</sub>; S<sub>4</sub> and D<sub>5</sub>. Dibdin also mentions r, as wanting, but that I found preserved and not damaged.

<sup>2</sup> (a) Dibdin, "Bibliotheca Spenceriana," vol. vi. 403 ff. Lord Spencer's copy has been bound in a very elegant manner in dark-red morocco by C. Lewis. On a visit to Lord Spencer's library on February 1, 1889, at Althorp, I examined this copy and copied as a specimen the last 26 lines, which run thus:

For ye tranflacōn of this  
booke was fynffhed . the . ix . yere of the  
reygne of kynge Edwarde the fourth  
by Syr Thomas Maleore knyght / as  
Ihefu helpe hym! for his grete myght .  
as he is the feruaunt of Ihefu bothe  
daye and nyghte.

¶ Thus endyth this noble & Ioyous  
boke entytled Le morte dathur . Not  
wythftonding it treateth of the sayd kynge  
Arthur of his noble knyght/ of the rounde  
table . theyr merueyllous enquestes & ad  
uentures . thachyeuynge of the Sanc-  
greall . And in the ende of the dolorous  
deth . & departynge out of this worlde  
of them al . Whyche boke was reduced  
into Englyffhe by the well dysposyd  
knyghte afore namyd . And deuyde .  
in to . xxi . bokes chapitred . & enprynt . .  
fyrft by Wylliam Caxton . on wh . . .  
foule god haue mercy . A newel . . .  
prynted . and chapitres of the fam . . .  
briffhed at Westmestre by Wynk . . . .  
Worde y<sup>e</sup> yere of our lord M.C. . . . .  
.lxxxvij. and ended the . xxv . . . . .  
Marche . the fame yere.

The points denote that the ends of the lines are damaged.

(b) Dibdin, "Typographical Antiquities" (vol. i. pp. 248-52), gives some of the variations from Caxton.

(c) W. C. Hazlitt's "Handbook," &c., p. 13.

clumsiest embellishments which distinguish the volumes of the two Coplands; yet to the curious antiquary they have a certain degree of value, and to the bibliographer such a volume, remarkable for the beauty of its execution, as well as for the rarity of its appearance, cannot fail to be held in very considerable consideration." The book is arranged in the following way. Unlike Caxton's, it is printed in columns. The table of contents consists of eight leaves. The ninth leaf is upon sig. ij—as in Caxton's impression—and this leaf and a small portion of the ensuing one—sig. iij—contain a prologue precisely similar to that in Caxton's own volume. The prologue is followed by a summary of the contents of each of the twenty-one books. The text commences on a; the signatures run in three sets: a to v in eights and sixes alternately, v having eight leaves. Then, in Gothic characters, **A**, **B**, **C**, in sixes, **D**, in eights, **E**, in six, **F**, **G**, **H**, in eights, and **J** to **V** inclusively, in sixes; **F** has four, and finally **V** five leaves, the sixth blank leaf probably torn out. The third set, in Roman type—A, B, C, D, E, in sixes; E<sub>6</sub> being blank.

The British Museum copy,<sup>1</sup> originally in Archdeacon Wrangham's<sup>2</sup> library, represents the third edition of 1529. It is complete, with the exception of seven leaves of the table of contents and the title-page,

<sup>1</sup> "Bibliographical Memoranda, an Illustration of Early English Literature," Bristol 1816, 4to, p. 398.

<sup>2</sup> It contains the following manuscript notes, 1° by Mr. Grenville, 2° by Archdeacon Wrangham:—1°. "A singular degree of rarity prevails as to the earlier editions of this romance. It was first printed by Caxton, but the only copy known is wanting twelve leaves and with others much damaged at Althorp. The 2nd edition, by W. de Worde, 1498, is known only in two copies, one perfect, in Lord Jersey's library, the other at Althorp." Mr. Grenville evidently mistook Caxton's for W. de Worde's editions. As far as I could ascertain, there has never been an edition of W. de Worde at Osterley. Compare also C. Hazlitt's "Handbook," p. 13. 2°. "Ames, in his History of Printing, p. 57, Herbert's Edition, enumerates among Caxton's Works, 'La Morte de Arthur,' but Herbert adds:—'I make no question but that Mr. Ames saw the book, but that it is rather extraordinary that he has not told us in whose possession it was, according to his usual custom. I have examined Bibl. Harleiana (it stands, however, No. 372 in Harl. Cat. III. 25), Westiana, Radcliffiana, &c. &c., but have not been fortunate enough to meet with any copy of this Edition or any intelligence where to find one.' But although the above Edition of this curious and interesting Romance from the press of Caxton seems at present unknown, it may be worth stating that it was reprinted by Wynkyn de Worde in 1498 in folio, and also by William Copland without date in the same form. The latter Edition had escaped the research of the illustrious Herbert; but an imperfect copy was purchased by W. Mason at a sale in 1794 for three guineas and a half. It was reprinted by Thomas East without date in folio, and so late as 1634 in quarto. (Beloe's Anecd., i. 43, where see, also, a Memorandum of Dr. Lort's on the year of Caxton's death, 1491.) J. W."

but this defect can easily be supplied, as the contents are repeated before each chapter. The table of contents is printed on signatures  $aaa_{1-8}$ , only  $aaa_8$  existing; then follow  $bbb_{1-8}$ . The history commences on  $a$ , and the signatures run alternately in eights and sixes to  $v$ , which has eight leaves. Then follow, in Gothic characters, **A, B, C**, in sixes, **D, E, F, G, H** in eights, and **I** to **V** in sixes, and finally, Roman characters A to D in sixes, and E with five leaves. On the verso of  $E_5$  is the ornamental device of the printer, covering almost the whole of the page. The two editions of Wynkyn de Worde do not exactly correspond to each other as concerns the text.<sup>1</sup>

The next, or fourth, edition was brought out by William Copland, in the year 1557,<sup>2</sup> also in columns and folio. The press-work is superior to what is generally observable in works by the two Coplands. The volume has a title-page, running thus:

"The story of the moft noble and worthy Kyng  
Arthur, the whiche was one of the worthy chryften, and  
also of his noble and valiaūte knyghtes of the rounde  
Table. Newly imprinted and corrected. MCCCClvij.  
Imprinted at London by Wylliam Copland."

There are two copies of this edition in the British Museum;<sup>3</sup> the one is perfect, the other wanting several leaves, which are, however, replaced partly by facsimiles, partly by reprints. On the title-page, above the last line, is a woodcut of a knight on horseback, similar to that of St. George and the Dragon. A woodcut also precedes every book; after the colophon may be observed the device of the printer. The title and table of contents occupy fourteen leaves. The signatures

---

<sup>1</sup> The following lines give the beginning of the book as a specimen. The words in brackets are not in the edition of 1498:—

"Here begynneth the fyrft booke of the [mooft] noble [and worthy  
prince] kyng . Kyng Arthur sometyme kyng of [grete Brytayne now  
called] Englonde [whiche treateth] of his noble actes and feates of armes  
[and] of chyualrye . [of] . his noble knyghtes [of the] & table round and  
[this volume] is deuyded in to . xxi . bookes."

<sup>2</sup> Dibdin, "Typograph. Antiquities," p. 143.

<sup>3</sup> Also one copy in the Huth Library. See Catalogue, vol. i. p. 83. Some of the early cuts, including that of the title, have been illuminated, but the artist fortunately abandoned his task before he had proceeded far

run a to d in eights; e has nine leaves, f to z in eights, and A to O in eights.

Malory's work was then twice printed, once in folio, and once in quarto,<sup>1</sup> by Thomas East, about 1585.<sup>2</sup> I have not seen a copy of the quarto edition. The folio is in the British Museum—a fine copy, complete throughout. It bears the following title:

“The stoye of the moft noble and worthy Kynge Arthur, the which was the fyrft of the worthyes Chryften, and alfo of hys noble and valyaunt knyghtes of the rounde Table. Newly imprinted and corrected, betweene Paules wharfe and Baynardes Castell by Thomas Eaft.”<sup>3</sup>

Finally, the “Morte Darthur” was printed for the last time in black letter, in the year 1634, by William Stansby, with the title:

“The moft ancient and famovs hiftory of the renowned prince Arthur, King of Britaine. Wherein is declared his Life and Death, with all his glorious Battailles againft the Saxons, Saracens, and Pagans, which (for the honour of his Country) he moft worthily atchieued. As alfo, all the

<sup>1</sup> There is one copy also in the Huth Library and another in the library of the Earl of Ellesmere in Bridgewater House. See Collier's Catalogue, page 11.

<sup>2</sup> Both editions are undated. Thomas East printed, as we know, from about 1560 to 1607. I determined the date 1585 in the following way:—The “Transcript of the Registers of the Company of Stationers of London from 1554 to 1640 A.D.” (reprinted privately by E. Arber, 1875) was looked through and the following entry found in vol. ii. fol. 187b:—“Thomas Easte: Receaved of him for his licence to printe these xvj bookes followinge” (then follows a list of sixteen books). Among them is mentioned “King Arthur,” and on the same line “Johannes de Vigo.” A copy of this latter is in the British Museum, with the genuine date, 1586, attached to it. (Comp. “Catalogue of Books in the British Museum Library to the year 1640,” vol. iii. p. 1539.) Thus the book may fairly be dated about 1585, not as the Brit. Mus. Catalogue, vol. i. page 56 states “1560”; this is at least as near as we can get the date.

<sup>3</sup> Comp. J. Payne Collier, “A Bibliographical and Critical Account of the Rarest Books in the English Language,” 2 vols., London, 1865, p. 31:—“A few of the woodcuts of East's edition are considerably older than the date when he printed; one of them was used by W. de Worde in 1520 before Christopher Goodwyn's poem, ‘The Chaunces of a Dolorous Lover.’ The block then came into the hands of W. Copland, and having been used by him in his reprint of the ‘Morte Darthur’ it was subsequently in the possession of East, who applied it to the same purpose in his reprint preceding the 16th book. Thus W. de Worde's ‘Dolorous Lover’ served the turn, in the hands of Copland and East, to represent a dead man in a white shirt an hundred winters old. At the time the block was employed by East, it had been considerably worn and battered.”

Noble Acts, and Heroicke Deeds of his Valiant Knights of the Rovnd Table. Newly refined<sup>1</sup> and published for the delight, and profit of the Reader. London, Printed by William Stanfby for Jacob Bloome. 1634."

The work consists of three parts, each having this title separately. Title, preface, and frontispiece occupy four leaves, prologue two leaves, Caxton's prologue one leaf, table of contents five leaves. The first part has signatures A to Z, and Aa to Ii<sub>4</sub>, the second A to Z, and Aa to Rr<sub>1</sub>, and the third part A to Z, and Aa to Pp<sub>4</sub>, all in fours. Caxton's division of the whole, in twenty-one books, is departed from. In each of the parts the chapters are numbered from one to the end. The first book contains cli., the second clxxiii., and the third clxxvi. chapters. There are two copies of this edition in the British Museum.<sup>1</sup> One is quite complete, the other wants the title-page, the preface to the reader, and two leaves of the first part.

Almost two hundred years later (186 exactly) in 1816, the first two editions in Roman type appeared independently from each other, one in two, the other in three volumes 12mo; both being reprints of the last-mentioned black-letter edition of 1634. 182

The edition in three volumes (F. Haslewood) has the title :

"La Mort D'Arthur, The moft ancient and famous hiftorye of the renowned Prince Arthur and the Knights of the Round Table by Sir T. Malory. London. 1816."

and that in two volumes (Walker's British Classics):

"The History of the renowned Prince Arthur, king of Britain with his life and death and all his glorious Battles, likewise the noble acts and heroic deeds of his valiant knights of the round table. London. 1816."

Though both editions are said to be exact reprints, they contain, besides an endless number of mistakes and errors of the worst kind, alterations of the text. In many cases the long "f" has been mistaken for "f," and the "c" for "r," &c. Wright quotes other strange mistakes.

---

<sup>1</sup> This edition is, as the Catalogue of the Huth Library styles it, "modernised and ignorantly corrupted." Compare my note, p. 13, with regard to the meaning of "newly refined." (Catalogue of the Huth Library, vol. i. p. 53.)

In 1817 there appeared, under Southey's illustrious name, an edition, with the following title :

"The byrth, lyf and actes of kyng Arthur ; of his noble knyghtes of the Rounde Table ther merueyllous enquestes and aduentures thachyeuyng of the sanc greal, and in the end le morte Darthur with the dolorous deth and departyng out of this world of them al. With an introduction and notes by R. Southey. Printed from Caxton's edition, 1485. London, 1817. 8°."

It is supposed to be a scrupulously exact reprint from Caxton's copy in Lord Spencer's library ; but such is by no means the case.<sup>1</sup> Southey wrote the introduction, and gave his name to a bookseller's speculation ; he had nothing whatever to do with the text, the passing through the press of which was entrusted to Mr. Upcott, who, I am inclined to believe, left much to the care of the printers, as the text contains no inconsiderable number of mistakes. And, before all, Lord Spencer's copy still wanted twenty-one pages in 1817, as can be seen from a note by Messrs. Longman, given on page 3, and from the minute pencil paging on the left-hand side of the recto of every leaf. The defect was supplied in a very strange way. Sir E. Strachey, who has investigated this matter thoroughly, writes about it in his introduction thus : "The substitutes for them which actually appear in Southey's edition differ widely from the restored, or the original text. Thus, in chap. xii. of the last book, besides the interpolation of the long passage, 'O ye myghty and pompuous lordes,' &c., which is not in Caxton, there are in the first eleven lines thirty-five variations of spelling and punctuation, besides the introduction of the words 'but continually mourned un—' and 'needfully as nature required,' which are not in Caxton, and the change of Caxton's 'on the tombe of kyng Arthur & quene Gueneuer,' into 'on kyng Arthur's & quene Gweneuer's tombe.' And thus throughout the pages in question—seventeen in number<sup>2</sup>—

<sup>1</sup> Comp Warton's "History of English Poetry," ed. W. C. Hazlitt. Lond. 1871, vol. ii. p. 189, note 4. Also, Sir Edward Strachey, Introduction, p. xv. London, 1868. 8vo. Globe edition.

<sup>2</sup> The pages (in Southey's edition) are vol. i. p. 167, line 18, to p. 169, line 17 ; p. 275, third line from bottom, to p. 279, line 5 from bottom ; vol. ii. p. 202, line 13, to p. 204, line 14 ; p. 446, line 5, to end of p. 455.

the spelling constantly, and words and even sentences occasionally, differ from the real text of Caxton.<sup>1</sup>

"When at page 113 of volume i. the editor introduces the words 'certayne caufe' to complete the sense, he is careful to call attention, in a foot-note, to the fact that these words are not in the original, but taken from 'the second edition,' by which I presume he means that of 1498. But when he subsequently supplies seventeen pages, which were also not in his original, he gives no hint of the fact; and his reticence has been so successful that for fifty years the interpolations have passed as genuine among learned critics, who have quoted from them passages wholly spurious as Caxton's genuine text. It was only last year that, in collating Earl Spencer's copy with the edition of Southey; I discovered that these passages—to which my attention was directed by Messrs. Longman's note above mentioned—did not correspond with Caxton's text, as represented by Whittaker's restorations; and on afterwards collating them with the Osterley text itself, I found the like result. It remained to trace them to their real sources. This has not been so easy as might be supposed, for though it was evident that Upcott must have had recourse to one or other existing editions, the interpolated passages in fact agree exactly with none of them, but a careful collation of the last four chapters of the book (which include more than half the interpolations, and may be taken as a fair specimen of the whole) with the old texts, leaves no doubt that, with the exception of the first thirty-six lines of chapter x., they were taken, like the two words mentioned above, from the first edition of Wynkyn de Worde (1498) but with spelling occasionally altered, and here and there a small word put in, left out, or changed. These alterations throw an ingenious disguise over the whole; but if we penetrate through this we find that in these four chapters there are only thirteen words differing from those in Wynkyn de Worde's first edition, and these unimportant; while in his second edition (1529), and in those of Copland and East, the variations from Mr. Upcott's text of the same chapters are respectively fifty-seven, fifty-six, and fifty in number, and many of them important in kind: and if we go to the edition of 1634, we find the differences still greater, except as to those

---

Sir E. Strachey gave an account of these interpolations in the *Athenæum* of Sept. 7 and Dec. 10, 1867, and Feb. 10, 1868.

thirty-six lines supplied from this edition, as they were wanting in the other copy. But the colophon, or concluding paragraph of the book, Mr. Upcott could not take from any of the editions which followed that of Caxton; for though Wynkyn de Worde might, and in fact did, supply at least one or two of the first words, the latter part of his colophon relates to his own edition, and departs widely from that of Caxton, while those in the later editions are still more unlike; and yet Mr. Upcott's colophon is a tolerable, though not an exact, representation of that of Caxton. But his other materials can be ascertained beyond a doubt. They are, the colophon as given by Ames and repeated by Dibdin in a modernised and otherwise inexact form,<sup>1</sup> and that which first appeared in the Catalogue of the Harleian Library,<sup>2</sup> and was thence copied in the article on Caxton in the 'Biographia Britannica,' and also in Herbert's additions to Ames. The colophons of Ames and of the Harleian Catalogue have important variations from each other and from that of Caxton; and as Mr. Upcott adopts some portions of each which are not found either in the other or in Caxton, we see the manner in which the paragraph in question was compounded. Each stone of the ingeniously fitted mosaic may be referred to the place from which it was taken. We cannot indeed choose positively between Ames and Dibdin, or among the Harleian Catalogue, the 'Biographia Britannica' and Herbert; but as the two paragraphs which are required in addition to that of Wynkyn de Worde are both found in Herbert's Ames, it seems most probable that Mr. Upcott had recourse to that work, though another combination would have served the purpose equally well. That the interpolated passages are not taken from the Osterley Caxton itself, even in the roughest and most careless manner, is quite evident."

In 1856<sup>3</sup> follows Thomas Wright's edition, entitled:

"La Mort d'Arthure; The History of King Arthur and of his Knights of the Round Table compiled by Sir Thomas Malory, Knt. edited from the text of the edition of 1634 with introduction and notes by Th. Wright, etc. London. 1856. 8°."

<sup>1</sup> "Typographical Antiquities," by Ames and Herbert, 1785, vol. i. p. 61; *ibid.* enlarged by Dibdin, 1810, vol. i. p. 253. The "Additions" are at the end of vol. iii. of Herbert's edition.

<sup>2</sup> "Catalogue of the Bibliotheca Harleiana, 1744," vol. iii. No. 372.

<sup>3</sup> A second edition came out in 1866, "carefully revised, and a few errors corrected, and the number of glossarial notes somewhat increased."



Of all hitherto mentioned editions this is the best beyond doubt with regard to accuracy of the text, &c., and when the text of the edition of 1634 is desired, it will be found to answer its purpose everywhere. Besides, there is sound criticism displayed in the introduction, and the notes contain a great deal of most valuable information. Wright says with reference to Malory's work: "A knowledge of it is indeed necessary to enable us to understand the later Middle Ages in one of their important points of view; while it possesses an intrinsic interest, as giving us, in a comprehensive form, a good general sketch of a cycle of romances which through many ages exercised an influence upon literature and art. . . . It has been judged advisable to adopt for the text the latest<sup>1</sup> of the old editions, for it is evident that the choice lay between the last and the first, between this we have selected and that of Caxton; there was no reason why we should not take that of the reprints, which was most readable. This choice was made with less scruples, as no particular philological value is attached to the language of Caxton's edition, which would certainly be repulsive to the modern reader, while all its value as a literary monument is retained in the reprint. On the other hand the orthography and phraseology of the editions of 1634, with the sprinkling of obsolete words, not sufficiently numerous to be embarrassing, preserves a certain clothing of mediæval character, which we think is one of the charms of the book," &c.

Finally, in 1868, Sir Edward Strachey<sup>1</sup> reprinted Caxton in a modernised edition, entitled:

"Morte Darthur, Sir Thomas Malory's Book of King Arthur and of his Noble Knights of the Round Table. The original edition of Caxton revised for modern use with an Introduction. London and New York. 1868. 8°. Globe edition."<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> I think neither the antiquary nor the philologist will share Mr. Wright's opinion on this subject, especially if he reads what the printer of the edition of 1634 says about his words "newly refined" in his

"Preface to the Reader": "In many places this volume is corrected (not in language but in phraseology) for here and there king Arthur or some of his knights were declared in their communication to swear prophane, and use superstitious speeches, all (or the most part) of which is either mended or quite left out by the paines and industry of the compositor and corrector of the presse; so that as it is now, it may passe for a famous piece of antiquity, revived almost from the gulph of oblivion, and rescued for the pleasure and benefit of the present and future times."

<sup>2</sup> Reprinted, in unaltered form, in 1886.

In his introduction, Sir E. Strachey,<sup>1</sup> besides an essay on chivalry, gives a short account of the origin and matter of the book and describes especially the edition of 1817, as I have mentioned above. Among other things he says: "This present edition is intended for ordinary readers, especially for boys, from whom the chief demand for this book will always come; it is a reprint of the original Caxton with the spelling modernised, and those few words which are unintelligibly obsolete, replaced by others which, though not necessarily unknown to Caxton, are still in use, yet with all old forms retained which do not interfere with this requirement of being readable," &c.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In my preface to the first volume I have said the Globe edition is "modernised and abridged." As I have seen from an article on this volume in the *Scots Observer* (May 18, 1889), that this statement has been misunderstood, I consider it my duty to say that I hold the opinion that Sir E. Strachey's work perfectly fulfils its purpose,—in fact, it is of all reprints the best; but my term "abridged" is justified: it means that here and there words and little passages are omitted which are not fit for boys and girls to read.—On p. xvii. of his Introduction, Sir E. Strachey says: "The Early English Text Society promise us a reprint (1868!) of the original Caxton, which shall be free from the faults of that of Southey, which meanwhile is, except in the interpolated passages, a very faithful representation of that original for the purposes of the antiquarian and philologist."—I am sorry that I must contradict Sir E. Strachey here. He most likely trusted too much to Southey's authority. I have collated Southey's with the original text of Caxton, and must confess I found no inconsiderable number of errors.

<sup>2</sup> Besides those reprints, Malory's "Morte Darthur" has appeared modernised and abridged under the following titles:—

1. The Story of King Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table. Compiled and arranged by J[ames] T[homas] K[nowles]. Being an abridgment of "Sir T. Malory's Collection of Legends of King Arthur." With illustrations by G. H. Thomas. London. 1862. 8°.
2. La Morte Darthur. The History of King Arthur. Compiled by T. Mallory. Abridged and revised by E. Conybeare. London. 1868. 8°.
3. La Mort d'Arthur. Abridged from the work of Sir Thomas Malory. The old prose stories whence the "Idylls of the King" have been taken by Alfred Tennyson. . . . ed. with an Introduction by B. M. Ranking. London. 1871. 8°.
4. The Boy's King Arthur, being Sir T. Malory's History of the Round Table. Edited with an Introduction by S. Lanier. Illustrated by A. Kappes. London. 1880. 8°.

In 1886 (London) appeared, as the first volume of the so-called Camelot Classics, an edition of the "Morte Darthur" by Ernest Rhys, under the title "Malory's History of King Arthur and the Quest of the Holy Grail." The text of this edition, however, is not complete, seven out of the twenty-one books in the original edition being omitted, and the reprinted books are modernised and altered from Thomas Wright's edition.

RELATION OF THE DIFFERENT EDITIONS OF  
 "LE MORTE DARTHUR" TO EACH OTHER.

**S**IR THOMAS MALORY<sup>1</sup> finished the manuscript of his book, according to Caxton's statement, in the ninth year of the reign of King Edward IV.—*i.e.*, about 1470—and he printed from it: "a book of the noble hystories etc. after a copy vnto me delyuerd." All efforts to trace this manuscript in any of the libraries of the United Kingdom or elsewhere, have hitherto proved fruitless, and I think always will; for most likely Malory's manuscript, being intended for the press, existed only in one copy, and this, having been greatly spoiled and damaged during the process of printing, was destroyed after

---

<sup>1</sup> (a) An almost certain reference to Malory's "Morte Darthur" is found in a book which appeared in 1506, entitled:—

"Pastime of Pleasure, or the History of Graunde Amour and La Bell Pycel: conteyning the knowledge of the seven Sciences, and the course of man's life in this worlde. Invented by Stephen Hawes, groom of Kyng Henry VII his chamber, dedicated to the king and finished at the beginning of 1506."

In the passage in question (chap. xliii.) Fame appears and promising that she will enroll his name (*i.e.* Graunde Amour) with those of Hector, Joshua, Caesar, Arthur, etc. says with regard to the latter and his knights that their exploits are recorded "in royal bokes and jeftes hyftoryall." Comp. Warton, "History of English Poetry," ed. W. C. Hazlitt, vol. iii. pp. 169-188.

(b) Another interesting reference, containing not a very favourable judgment upon the "Morte Darthur," I found in Roger Afcham's book "The Schoolemaster." London. 1570. On p. 81 of The Rev. John E. B. Mayor's reprint of this book (London, 1863) we read:

"In our forefathers tyme, whan Papistrie, as a standyng poole, couered and overflowed all England, fewe bookes were read in our tong, favyng certayne bookes of Cheualrie, as they sayd, for pastime and pleasure, which, as some say, were made in Monasteries by idle Monkes or wanton Chanons; as one for example, Morte Arthure: the whole pleasure of whiche booke standeth in two speciall poyntes, in open mans slaughter and bold bawdrye: In which booke those be counted the noblest Knightes, that do kill most men without any quarell, and commit fowlest aduouleres by futelest shiffes: as Sir Launcelote with the wife of King Arthure his master: Syr Trifram with the wife of Kyng Marke his uncle: Syr Lamerocke with the wife of king Lote, that was his own aunte. This is good stufte for wife men to laughe at, or honest men to take pleasure at. Yet I know, when God's Bible was banished the Court, and Morte Arthure received into the Princes chamber," &c.

Comp. also Afcham's "Toxophilus." London. 1545. 4°. Preface.

the book was ready. Wynkyn de Worde has evidently printed his edition of 1498 from Caxton's edition, though he does not give any statement to this effect. Either from Caxton's, but more likely from his own, he printed in 1529 his second, in fact the third, edition of "Le Morte Darthur." The copy of this last-mentioned edition, fully described on page 7, was the one from which the variations are quoted, simply because, in the first place, the interval between 1485 and 1498 is very small; and secondly, the copy of 1489 has many deficiencies, while that of 1529 only lacks Caxton's preface, and some passages of the table of contents which can be supplied from the contents preceding the single chapters.

This edition deviates considerably, not only in orthography, from Caxton's, as will be seen from the list of various readings. Words are transposed, now and then added or omitted, and obsolete ones are frequently exchanged for more modern ones.

Whether these variations are introduced by the compositors or by some person who read the proof-sheets must be left undecided, but in some instances the latter seems very probable.

Copland's edition of 1559, the fourth in order, is not, as one would suppose, a reprint from Caxton but from W. de Worde's edition of 1529, which, on collation, was found to agree with it word for word and line for line, but not page for page, owing to the difference in size of the woodcuts which precede each book in the two copies.

About 1585 Thomas East printed his two editions either from W. de Worde or Copland. The similarity of title in Copland's and East's editions inclines me to think that Copland's is the basis.

Finally, the seventh and last black-letter edition, that of Thomas Stansby, 1634, in spite of the different arrangement of the book, some arbitrary alterations and omissions, not to speak of slight differences orthographical and otherwise, is a reprint of East's folio, as the following reasons show: firstly, as already stated by Thomas Wright in his introduction, Stansby's edition wants the contents of one leaf in East's folio edition. (According to Caxton: part of chap. ii., the whole of chap. iii., and almost the whole of chap. iv. of Book XIV.)<sup>1</sup> This leaf bears in East's folio the signature Dd<sub>8</sub>,

---

<sup>1</sup> Th. Wright has supplied the deficient leaf from Caxton. The editor of the "Morte Arthur" of 1816, in 2 vols., leaves the passage out without mentioning this fact

TABLE SHOWING THE RELATION OF THE DIFFERENT EDITIONS OF "LE MERLIN DARTHUR" TO ONE ANOTHER.

WYNKYN DE WORDE  
(1529)

**T** befell in the days of y<sup>e</sup> noble Vtherpen-dragon whā he was kyng of Englande and so regned / there was a myghty and a noble duke in Cornewayle that helde longe tyme warre agaynst hym . And y<sup>e</sup> duke was named the duke of Tyntagyl / & so by meanes kyng Vther fente for this duke / charge hym to brynge his wyfe w<sup>t</sup> hym for she was called a ryght fayre lady / & a passyng wyfe / & Igrayne was her name . So when the duke & his wyfe were comen to y<sup>e</sup> kyng / by the meanes of grete lordes they were bothe accorded / & the kyng lyked & loued this lady well / and made her grete chere out of measure / etc.



**T** befell in the dayes of the noble Vtherpen-dragon when he was kyng of Englande & so reigned, there was a myghtye and a noble duke in Cornewayle, that helde longe tyme warre agaynste hym . And the duke was named the duke of Tyntagyl, and so by meanes kyng Vther fente for this duke charge hym to bryrge his wyfe with hym for she was called a ryght fayre lady, and a passyng wyfe, and Igrayne was her name . So when the duke & his wyfe were comen to the kyng, by the meanes of great lordes they were bothe accorded, & the kyng lyked & loued this lady well, and made her grete chere out of measure, etc.

LAND  
(1557)

Book i. Chap. i. PAGE 35, LINES 1-12.



**T** befell in the daye of the noble Vtherpen-dragon when he was kyng of Englande and so reigned, there was a myghty and a noble Duke in Cornewayle, that longe time warre agaynst him . the Duke was named y<sup>e</sup> Duke of Tyntagyl, and so by meanes kyng Vther sent for this duke charging him to bring his wyfe with him, for shee was called a right faire Lady, and a passyng wyfe, and Igrayne was hir name . So when the duke and his wyfe were comen to the kyng, by the meanes of great Lordes they were both accorded, and the kyng lyked & loued this lady well, and made hir great cheere out of measure, et

STANSBY  
(1634)



**T** befell in the dayes of the noble Vtherpen-dragon when he was King of England and so reigned, there was a mighty and a noble Duke in Cornewayle, that held long time warre against him. And the Duke was named the Duke of Tintagil, and so by meanes King Vther sent for this Duke charging him to bring his wife with him, for shee was called a right faire Lady, and a passing wife, and Igrayne was her name. So when the duke and his wife were come to the King, by the meanes of great Lords they were both accorded, and the King liked and loued this Lady well, and made her great cheere out of measure, etc.

[Part i. Chap. i.]

Book i. Chap. ii. PAGE 36, LINES 31-35.

And thā Merlin was bouēden to come to the kyng . Whan kyng Vther sawe hym, he sayd y<sup>t</sup> he was welcome . Syr fayde Merlin, I knowe all your herte so ye wyll be sworne to me as ye be a true kyng enoynted to fulfill ye shall haue your desyre .

And than Merlin was bouēden to come to the kyng . whan kyng Vther sawe hym / he sayd y<sup>t</sup> he was welcome . Syr fayd Merlyn / I knowe all your herte every dele / so ye wyll be sworne to me as ye be a true kyng enoynted to fulfill my desyre / ye shall

And than Merlyn was bouēden to come to y<sup>e</sup> kyng . Whan kyng Vther sawe him, he said y<sup>t</sup> he was welcome . Syr said Merlyn I knowe al your hart every dele, so ye be sworne to me as ye be a true enoynted to fulfill my desyre, yee haue your desyre .

And then Merlyn was bouēden to come to the King. When King Vther saw him, he said that he was welcome. Sir said Merlyn, I knowe all your heart every dele, so you will be sworne to me as ye be a true King. I will fulfill my desire, you shall haue

[Chap. ii.]

the I ride on this ...  
Arthur, and all the round table.  
[Part ii. Chap. 7.]

All this vifion faw  
fir Launcelot at the croffe. And on the, etc.  
[Part iii. Chap. 61.]

...vifion fawe  
And on the

my trefour.  
fir Launcelot

Arthur and  
my trefour. All this vifion fawe  
fir Launcelot at the croffe. And on the

SO the queene departed from the King, and fent for Sir  
Bors into hir chamber. [Part iii. Chap. 109.]

SO the queene departed from the  
king, and fente for fir Bors into  
hir chamber.

SO the  
kyng, and fente for fir Bors in  
to her chambre.

SO the queene departed from the  
kyng / and fente for fir Bors in  
to her chambre.

Book xxi. Chap. xiii. PAGE 861\*, LINES 7-11.

For the tranflacyon  
of this booke was fynnyfhed the .ix. yere  
of the regne of king Edward the fourth  
by fir Thomas Maleore knyght; as  
Iefu helpe me for his greate myghte,  
as he is the feruaunt of Iefu bothe daye  
and nyght.

For the tranflacyon  
of this boke was fynnyfhed the .ix. yere  
of the regne of king Edward y<sup>e</sup> fourth  
by fir Thomas Maleore knyghte, as  
Iefu helpe hym for his greate myghte,  
as he is the feruaunt of Iefu bothe daye  
and nyght.

For the tranflacyon  
of this boke was fynnyfhed the .ix. yere  
of the regne of kyng Edward y<sup>e</sup> fourth  
by fir Thomas Maleore knyght / as  
Iefu helpe hym for his grete myght /  
as he is the feruaüt of Iefu bothe daye  
and nyght.

Colophon. PAGE 861\*, LINES 12-21.

Thus endeth this noble and ioyous  
booke entytuled la mort d'Arthur, not-  
withftandyng it treateth of the byrthe,  
lyfe and actes, of the faide king Arthur  
and of his noble knyghtes of the round  
table, their meruayulous enquestes and  
aduentures, the acheyuynge of the holy  
Sancgreall. And in the ende the dolo-  
rous death and departinge out of this  
worlde of them all, which booke was re-  
duced into Englyfhe by the mooste well  
difpofed knight afore named.

Thus endeth this noble and ioyous  
booke entytuled la mort d'Arthur, not-  
withftandyng it treateth of the byrthe  
lyfe and actes of the fayd kyng Arthur,  
and of his noble knyghtes of the round  
table, their neruayulous enquestes and  
aduentures, the acheyuynge of the holy  
Sancgreall. And in the ende the dolo-  
rous death and departyng out of this  
worlde of them all, whiche booke was  
reduced in to Englyfhe by the mooste  
well dyfpofed knyght afore named.

Thus endeth this noble and ioyous  
boke entytled la mort d'Arthur / notwith-  
standyng it treateth of the byrthe / lyfe  
and actes of the fayd kyng Arthur / and  
of his noble knyghtes of the rounde ta-  
ble / theyr meruayulous enquestes & ad-  
uentures / the acheyuynge of the holy  
Sancgreall. An in y<sup>e</sup> ende the dolorous  
deth and departyng out of this world  
of them all / whiche boke was reduced  
in to Englyfhe by the moost well dyfpo-  
fed knyght afore named. Impryn-  
ted at London in Flete frete at y<sup>e</sup> fygne  
of fonne / by Wynkyn de Worde. In the  
yere of our lord god .M.CCCC. xxix.  
the .xviij. daye of Nouember.

Finis

Imprinted at London by  
Thomas Eaft dwelling betweene  
Paules wharfe and Bay-  
nardes Caftell.

Finis.

Printed at Londō in Fletefrete  
by the Rofe Gar-  
de, by Wylyam  
Copland.

Finis

Thus endeth this noble and ioyous booke entituled  
La Mort D'Arthur, not-withftanding it treateth of the  
birth, life, and acts, of the faid King Arthur and of  
his noble Knights of the round table, and their mer-  
uailous enquestes and aduentures, the achieveing of the  
Holy Sancgreall.  
And in the end the dolorous death and departing  
out of this world of them all.


and has, as well as Dd., the same catch-word, “but.” It begins with the words: “but by waye of kyndness and for good,” and ends: “for a good horse would befeme you right well but.” The coincidence of the two leaves having the same catch-word easily explains the printer’s oversight, but at the same time it reveals the mechanical and careless nature of the reprint. Secondly, By the reproduction of some misprints, *i.e.*, in Book XXI. chapter xiii. East prints: “as Iefu helpe *me* for hys grete mygte as *he* is the feruaunt of Iefu both day and night.” It ought to run, and so indeed Caxton prints: “as Iefu helpe *him*,” &c. Stansby has faithfully reproduced this blunder.

As to the five modern editions, three are reprinted from the edition of 1634—namely, the two 1816 and that of 1856; and two from the original Caxton, that of Southey, 1817, and that of Sir E. Strachey, 1868.

The table on p. 18 gives graphically an idea of the relation of the editions to each other:—

On the Plate facing this page I have, for the sake of illustration, reprinted side by side short passages selected by chance from the principal editions: they will show better than a description the relation the texts bear to one another.

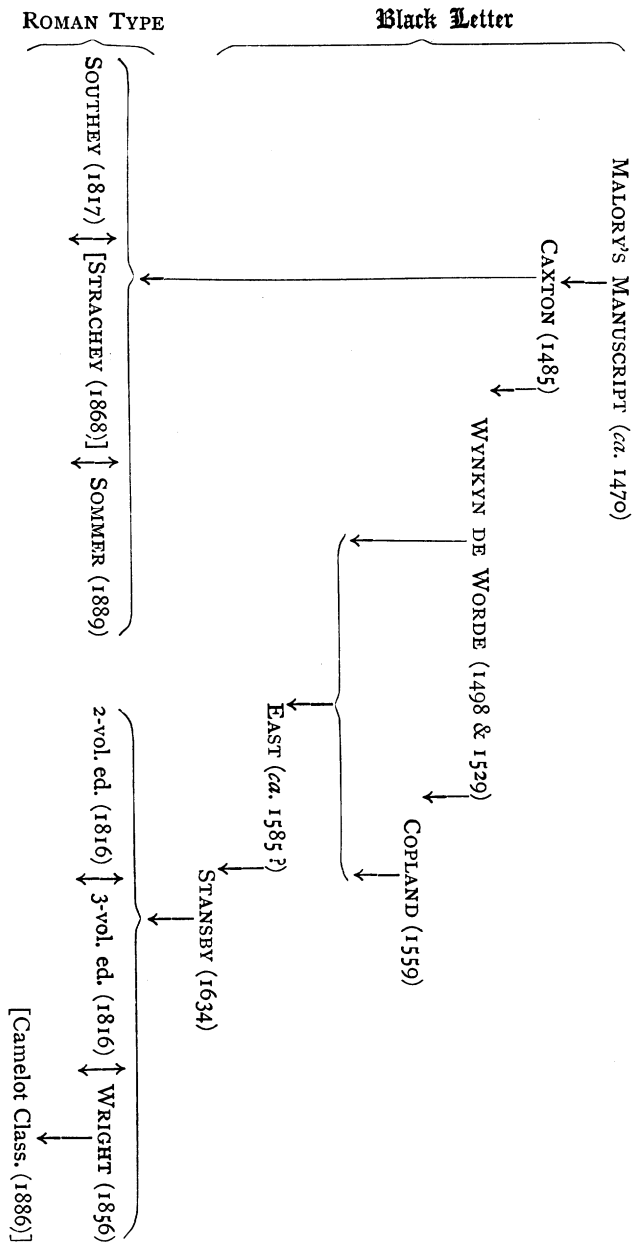
### THE PRESENT EDITION.

HE present edition of Malory’s “Le Morte Darthur” follows the original impression of Caxton in every respect (save that Roman type has been substituted for Black letter) with absolute fidelity, word for word, line for line, and page for page, and with some exceptions, which are stated below, letter for letter. Black letter has been retained for the chapter headings and at the close of each book, in order to relieve the monotony of the page, but it has not been thought necessary to use Caxton’s type in this case. As far as the different type permitted even peculiarities are exactly imitated, *e.g.*,

---

at all (comp. vol. ii. p. 244). In the three-volume reprint the missing part is supplied, most likely from East’s, but with the spelling modernised. The passages in question (pp. 111, 112, 113, 114 of the third volume) are marked by asterisks, but no note or remark alludes to the deficiency.

TABLE SHOWING THE RELATION OF THE EDITIONS OF MALORY'S "MORTE DARTHUR"  
TO ONE ANOTHER.





the spacing between books and chapters and in the various lines, the size and position of the initials in wood, the long "f" in the beginning and in the middle of words (those few cases of course excepted where Caxton himself departs from his custom of using the long "f").<sup>1</sup> Thus, wherever the reader opens the present volume he will have a faithful impression of the aspect of Caxton's volume. It is superfluous to add that the orthography has been preserved with scrupulous exactness throughout, and that even the misprints occurring in Caxton's text, with some few exceptions mentioned under No. 6, are to be met with in our impression. All these misprints and irregularities of spelling are marked in a list to which one may refer in any doubtful case. This list also registers the few cases where the present and original editions differ in the spelling of words. To understand, however, thoroughly the principle upon which I have based my edition it is necessary to make the following observations:—

1. Caxton's volume commences with a blank leaf, which, as shown by the signatures, is counted. This leaf is also in the present edition, but it is not counted here, for the simple reason that the coincidence of the signatures in Caxton with the marks of the binders in the present edition should be avoided. Thus, on page 65 the fourth sheet begins, and is marked at the bottom by "E," whereas Caxton's fourth sheet only commences on page 67 (c j).

2. There occur in the impression of Caxton three kinds of "w." (Compare the photographic facsimile: firstly, line 20, in the word "was;" secondly, line 21 in the word "afterward;" and, thirdly, in the same line in the word "toward.") The first kind of "w," according to Mr. Blades,<sup>2</sup> denotes in type No. 4\* the capital "W." Caxton's compositors did not distinguish, as they ought, these "w's" from one another, so that the one denoting "W" frequently occurs in the middle of words and in other places, where it is evidently out of place. I have, therefore, in the present edition, as Roman type does not admit

---

<sup>1</sup> While preparing the Glossary I noticed, to my great regret, that a few cases in which "f" and "i," have been confounded, have escaped my attention as well as that of three readers at the press. Owing to the minute difference between the two characters, and to the fact that the eye is not trained to distinguish them in an ordinary English text, it is extremely difficult to avoid such mistakes, especially before the paper is pressed, which is generally the case with proof sheets. Fortunately no ambiguity arises from any of these oversights.

<sup>2</sup> W. Blades' "Typography of Caxton," vol. ii. p. 35, and Plates xviii. and xix.

of marking the three kinds, rendered it by "W" in all cases where capital "W" was to be expected, as in the beginning of a sentence and in proper names, otherwise it is rendered by "w."

3. There are further two styles of "I" used in Caxton's type. (Compare the photographic facsimile, firstly, line 1, and secondly, line 5.) At first it appeared that a difference was made between "i" and "j," but such is not the case; both kinds are used indiscriminately. I have therefore, after some consideration, always rendered it by "I." Moreover, the first kind of "I" occurs more frequently.

4. The character "3" is used in Caxton to express both "z" and "gh." In words where "z" was to be expected I have rendered "3" by "z," otherwise I have preserved "3," *e.g.*, "Cezar" and "knyzt."

5. Caxton has no fixed rules for dividing words at the end of a line. A word is divided as the space in each special case permits, and as a rule there is no conjunctive hyphen put—*e.g.*, "horfes" is not broken "hor- fes" but "ho rfes." As I found that in many cases mistakes arose from this deficiency, I have for the convenience of the modern reader always added the hyphen where it was to be expected.

6. In some cases where Caxton's compositors evidently confounded "n" with "u," or the reverse, *e.g.*, in "but," I have not reproduced the error. I have done the same in a few cases where "f" and "v" were confounded, *e.g.*, in "for."

7. In a few cases letters or parts of words are either effaced or did not come out in printing; in such cases the missing matter is supplied in italics, as, for instance, on pages: 203, 25; 221, 17; 251, 33; 258, 34; 271, 26; 274, 14; 304\*, 25; 312, 8; 314, 31; 342, 9; 349, 31; 363, 34; 367, 5; 367, 30; 377, 14; 386, 9; 406, 7; 467, 20; 512, 26; 634, 34; 664, 10; 702, 15; 707, 6; 766, 34; 836, 22.

For the convenience of reference the pages and folios, with their rectos and versos, are marked throughout the book, the former at the head, the latter at the foot, of each page. The books and chapters occurring on a page are also indicated at the top; everything, however, not found in the text of the original volume is put in brackets, to preserve, as far as possible, the aspect of Caxton's book. Head-lines are avoided for the same reason, and the various readings, instead of being printed at the foot of each page, are given in a list in the

second volume, and referred to by means of figures (5, 10, 15, etc.) down the outer margin of every page.

The twenty-one pages missing in Lord Spencer's copy, but supplied by Mr. Whitaker's facsimiles, are marked by asterisks added to the paging numerals.

### LIST OF ERRORS, OMISSIONS, AND ORTHOGRAPHICAL IRREGULARITIES IN CAXTON'S IMPRESSION.<sup>1</sup>

1 18, *for* "kno," *read* know. 2 34, "boookes," bookes.  
3 35, "boook," book. 5 8, "boook," book. 6 25, "xvij," xvj.  
8 17, "Hrre," Here. 9 2, "lofth ys," loft hys. 11 30, "damofel,"  
*generally* damoyfel; 37, "fy," fyr. 12 20, "boook," book. 14 36,  
"hoow," how. 15 20, "triftcum," triftram. 16 21, "lazarroote,"  
lazarcote. 18 5, "fou3ght," fou3t *or* fought. 27 9, "fauggt," faught.  
31 15, "lamentacyon," lamentacyon. 37 20, "nyg3," nyght *or* nyzt.  
38 4, "lefey," lefay. 52 15, "Cornewalle," Cornewaile. 55 37,  
"poffyng," paffyng. 56 31, "here," were. 60 20, "the mand,"  
them and; 36, "ruffched," ruffhed. 61 2, "blood," blood. 62 33,  
"dohomage," do homage. 63 10, "Cmyliarde," Camyliarde. 67  
31, "af," of. 68 37—69 1, "terme me," ter- me. 74 16, "al one,"  
alone. 75 2, "bnt." 78 7, "af," of; 29, "mys fenformed," myfen-  
formed. 81 14, "nat," not. 85 23, "the the," the. 86 1, "on on," on  
an. 87 30, "werre," werfe; 34, "knyyt," knyzt. 89 19, "Bafdemagus,"  
Bagdemagus. 96 25, "yew," yow. 99 6, "handeld," handle;  
35, "ouer," euer. 101 6, "Ladegreans," Lodegreans. 110 27, "and  
one," on one. 118 11, "Pellinre," Pellinore. 123 38, "fenefcha,"  
fenefchal. 132—133, *several words repeated by the compositors.*  
134 37, "aduentures," aduenturous. 136 27, "counte ce naun,"  
countenaunce. 141 35, "aentures," aenturous. 145 24, "&," x.  
147 29, "ef," of. 152 26, "knyghht," knyght. 153 1, 5, "Pellas,"

<sup>1</sup> The first number refers to the page, the second to the line in which the word or words occur. The words marked with inverted commas are such as I found in Caxton, those in ordinary type my corrections, respectively readings. Words marked by asterisks and such in ordinary type with an italic "n" or "u" are such as I have corrected. Those few words marked by a dagger are slips of the press in the present edition.

Pelleas; "Nthurs," Arthurs. 161 26, "counceylleyou," counceylle you; 30, "xy M," xx M. 177 37, "his" *omitted*. 180 17, "wes," was; 31, "rotorned," returned; 32, "for," for. 183 31, "hxm,"\* hym. 186 21, "an," on. 187 10, "caas," cafe; 31, "laake," lake. 189 21, "goodd," good. 190 35, "&," *superfluous*. 194 15, "Turquyne," Launcelot. 197 34, "for," for. 201 30, "feythe," feythe. 206 8, "Ryyght," Ryght. 207 4, "loue," leue; 14, "of of," of. 209 30, "founed," fwouned. 210 16, "three," there; 32, "hrs," his. 211 1, "and," in. 215 30, "whyfonday," whyfonday. 217 14 and 220 2, "Beumayns," Beaumayns. 233 34, "aftir," after. 235 12, "Noo," Now. 242 20, "te," to. 245, "Cap. xxij," Cap. xxj. 247, *last line a repetition of first line* 248. 248 38—249 1, "ye" *omitted*. 250 27, "knyghtes," knyghtes. 251—252, "xxv" *omitted in the numbering of chapters*. 253 33, "Arthurle te," Arthur lete. 254 29, "haue" *omitted before* "the degre." 255 29, "fhal" *omitted before* "haue." 256 15, "Ilelys," Iles or Ilys. 258 30, "encountred" *omitted before* "with"; 34, "Launcelot," Lamorak. 261 32, "gym," hym. 265 1, "Thenme," Thenne; 10, "hem," hym. 266, "xxiiij," xxxiiij; 30, "do," done. 269 26, "maryge," maryage. 270 28, "on," an. 271 4, "dukde," duk de. 272 8, "knowm," knowen. 274 5, "gis," his. 282 23, "neuw," eme. 284 20, "fenefcal," fenefchal. 285 10, "arryuayl," arryual. 291 6, "Tcyftram," Tryftram 38, "he þ," þ he. 297—298, "defende" *omitted between* "knyghte" and "thyfelf." 305\* 26, "racreaunt," recreaunt. 306\* 20, "of the best" *omitted after* "one." 311 19, "my," thy. 312 19, "lady les," ladyles. 314 16, "herborouh," herborough. 316, "xix," xxix. 318 11, "an," on. 320 23, "thr," the; 25, "poffyng," passyng. 321 28, "flee," fle. 324 1, "ore," fire; 20, "Noo," Now. 330 6, "they"† *omitted before* "coude"; 27, "kay hedyus," kehedyus; 29 "roofe," roofe. 331 21, "Tdeftram," Triftram. 334 23, "he," they. 338 6, "myn," thyn. 347 15, "at euery stroke" *superfluous*. 349 5, "fupoofed," suppofered; 10, "Launucelot," Launcelot; 12, "vnto," vntil. 351 22, "nyyhe," nyghe. 357 6, "Ryyght," Ryght; 25, "moder," broder. 358 16, "dn," and. 363 6, "thye," they; 29, "Ifoud, Ifoud. 371 29, "was" *repeated*. 373, "xiiij," xxiiij; 1, "kyng Mark," fyr Triftram; 2, "nad," and. 374 25, "fperd," fper. 376 22, "feaufhip," felaufhip. 378 16, "what" *repeated*. 379 35, "gayne," gawayne. 380, "xvij," xxvij. 382 10, "gooldis," goold

is. 383, "xix," xxix. 385 10, "Northaglys," Northgalys; 15, "it a" *omitted before* "fhame." 386 33, "feaufhip," felaufship. 387 10, "there," theyr; 31, "theil," their. 390 22, "ye," he. 400 26, "thrnne," thenne. 403 5, "pryny." 409 30, "we" *omitted before* "to fpeke." 410, "xliij," xliij; 33, "meruyylled," merueyyled. 413 12, "lynyng." 415 9, "is" *repeated*; 10, "bataiylle," bataylle; 36, "couuceyille." 428 27, "Berlnfe." 430 34, "Dyuadan." 432 11, "was" *or* "hym" *superfluous*; 24, "rateynge," raceynge. 437 24, "Tdefram," Triftram. 438 24, "grane." 439 17, "t" *omitted in* "lygh-ly." 441 2, "adone," adoo. 443 17, "done," do. 449 34 "boook," book. 450 30, "man," may. 454 7, "adventure." 456 25, "Queneuer," Gueneuer. 458 2, "by" *omitted before* "kynge." 462 23, "your," our. 464 3, "blod," blood; 12, "aud." 464 24, "Elyas," Elyot. 470 20, "&" *omitted after* "Malgryn." 471 17, "kny3," knyzt. 473 2, "he" *repeated*. 475 9, "kuyghtes." 476 13, "pilggryn," pilgrym. 477 8, "deperted," departed. 478 27, "fai'd" *omitted before* "the queen." 483 28, "Bleoberys," Blamore; 32, "the" *omitted before* "nofe"; 33, "therecam," there cam. 484 8, "Bagdemagns." 486 33, "Elyfe," Elyfes. 487 36, "conenable," couenable. 489 9, "dyuer." 490, "xlv, xlvj, xlvij" *omitted in the numbering*; 8, "to" *omitted before* "the felde." 491 7, "Kyuge." 492 15, "one" *repeated*. 494 37, "kyny,"\* kyng. 497 16, "Percyuole," Percyuale; 27, "Dyanas," † Dynas; 33, "pntte." 500 20, "to" *repeated*. 503 4, "Brufe," Breufe; 16, "ener." 504 2, "for," with; 32, "wyhle," whyle. 506 36, "do do," to do. 511 10, "knyeght," knyght; 36, "wherr," where. 515 19, *after* "fuche" "chere" *is evidently omitted*. 516 13, "v,"\* a. 518 12, "Palomyders," Palomydes. 521 16, "an" *omitted before* "houre"; 24, "Arthurs"; 26, "knygyte," knyghte; 29, "Lamorck," Lamorak. 529 16, "af," of. 531 20, "we" *superfluous*. 534 4, "Bleberys," Bleoberys. 535, "lxxij," lxx; 1, "as" *omitted before* "I maye"; 4, "I" *omitted before* "fhalle." 536 4, "make," made. 538 5, "Palomydes," Launcelot. 541 23, "Palmydes," Palomydes; 35, "parfon," perfon. 543 2 *and* 31, "Dorkeney," Orkeney. 545 12, "cammaundement," commaundement. 548 33, "yours," your; 34, "nename" (?). 553 13, "pnllled"; 33, "knyghthode," knyghthode. 554 3, "Launceloot," Launcelot; 33, "Trifram," Triftram. 555 7, "do," done; 13, "doune"; 15, "kyuge." 556 33, "Blebeorys," Bleoberys. 558 15,

"tabble," table. 559, "lxviiij," lxxxiiij; 33, "Helynor," Helyor.  
 561 30, "Epyuogrys." 563 33, "knyytes," knyzttes. 564 12,  
 "Thenye," Thenne. 566 9, "vppn," vppon. 568 5, "payd" *super-*  
*fluous*; 25, "retornod," retorned. 569 1, "launcelot," palomydes; 9,  
 "ententente," entente. 572 11, "word," world. 574 8, "Queneuer,"  
 Gueneuer; 19, "kzewe"; 22, "man ere," manere; 31, "Elaye,"  
 Elayne. 575 12, "f fhehalle," fhe fhalle; 18, "teld," told. 576  
 28, "Theune"; 29, "meruelle," merueylle. 577 15, "aduentures,"  
 aduenturous. 579 23, "owne," one. 580 24, "rebellions"; 29,  
 "wile," wille. 581 24, "counteuauce." 582 10, "lanncelot." 585  
 19, "their," her. 587 26, "brodr," broder. 589 38, *after* "vp-"  
 "on" *omitted*. 590—591, "of" *omitted before* "yow." 591 10,  
 "renne" or "mette" *omitted*. 592 1, "n lyuote" not lyue. 593,  
 "boooke," booke. 596 30, "tho," go. 598 37, "honre." 599 34,  
 "kuowe." 600 32, "be" *omitted after* "ye." 604 8, "fyten," †  
 fyften. 608 2, "aud"; 36, "fhat," fhalt. 609 27, "fenfhip," fhenship.  
 614\* 6, "thenue"; 28, "marhel," marbel. 616 8, "Abarimathye,"  
 Arimathye; 32, "is" *omitted before* "he"; 33, "but he" *repeated*.  
 618 21, "aduenturrs," aduentures. 620 11, "an other," on other.  
 623\* 6, "perceyne." 624 17, "left," beft; 22, "beynge," brynge.  
 625 16, "good," god; 33, "greto," grete. 626 21, "meeueyll,"  
 merueyll; 28, "Ioheph,"\* Iofeph. 628 24, "loned." 629 34, "fane."  
 632 5, "thy," the. 633 9, "kayes," keyes. 639 3, "ornot,"\* or not.  
 640 11, "morr," more. 641 7, "hard" *probably omitted after*  
 "more." 642, "whiches," whiche is; 15, "reeclufe," reclufe; 18,  
 "commauuded." 647 8, "came" *repeated*. 649 16, "be," † he.  
 650 34, "flay," flay. 651 31, "a" † *omitted*. 658 3, "loetryd,"\*  
 entryd; 4, "nt,"\* not. 659 34, "et," † at. 660 24, "knygthode,"  
 knyghthode. 664 19, "his" *repeated*. 666 26, "douue"; 27, "of" †  
*omitted before* "full." 667 36, "thotherr," thother. 669 1, *some*  
*words omitted*; 25, "Thenue." 670 27, "aduenturr," aduenture.  
 673 16, "fyghto,"\* fyghte; 25, "gonerne." 677 24, "knyzght,"  
 knyght *or* knyzt. 679 14, "lauucelot." 680 10, "abone," aboue;  
 31, "Aud." 682 38, "flonre." 685 19, "one" *superfluous*. 687  
 11, "fheltes," fheldes. 689 28, "Thns." 691 37, "he" *omitted*  
*after* "Certes." 693 26, "werfor," wherfor; 34, "fhyptthat," that  
 fhyp. 694 33, "aad myghde," and myghte. 695 1, "we," the; 10,  
 "bnt." 696 1, "hym" *superfluous*; 16, "brauuche"; 27, "Caym,"

Cayn. 703 29, "kuowe." 705 13, "haue" *omitted after* "we."  
 710 16, "harme," arme; 20, "fay u," ? faire. 711 38—712 1, *a repetition*. 719 1, "his" *omitted before* "other." 723 16, "me," *probably omitted after* "refembled." 725 15, "hie," his. 733 28, "doth," do. 733 35, "wynchefter," Westmestre. 736 31, "quene," kyng. 737 20, "knytes," knyghtes. 739 4, "launcolot," launcelot. 741 14, "there," there. 742 2, "kymge,"\* kyng. 743 33, "fkynne," (?) kynne. 744 35, "Aud"; 37, "ener." 747 21, "feruauytes," feruautes. 751 22, "yf," of. 752 21, "me," (?) hym. 754 8, "Tlerfor,"\* Therfor. 759 20, "good," good. 762 29, "launcelat," launcelot. 764 27, "thy," the. 765, "xx," xxij. 766, "xxij," xxiiij; 7, "Inge." 768 13, "Arthr," Arthur. 769 6, "is" *after* "where," *or* 7, "haue been" *omitted after* "blood." 776 26, "were" (?). 777 10, "tabbe,"\* table. 778 2, "Melliagaunce," Melliagraunce; 30, "jere" (?) ("ere," W. de Worde). 782 34, "rmoure." 788 25, "bnt." 790 15, "fo,"\* of. 790—791, *a repetition*. 792 13, "Triftram," Gawayn; 23, "treuchaunt." 798 26, "Agrauayye," Agrauayne. 799 26, "dyd," hyd (?). 802 8, "rassyng," (?) rassyng. 803 38, "wan," than. 804 32, "a a," a. 805 15, "theyir," theyr. 806 37, "Arthue,"\* Arthur; 38, "be" *repeated*. 811 6, "myhapped," myshapped. 813 30, "your," you. 820 31, "ou." 823, "xiiij," xv; 7, "a" *omitted before* "bold." 828 38, "fpap," fpak. 830, 11, "Neroneus" (?); 19, "Snrlat." 837 33, "Gawyns," Gawayns, 838 14, "nerre," nere. 840 18, "Launcelot," Gawayn. 842 24, "a" *superfluous after* "For." 843 34, "that" *omitted before* "loued." 845 1, "vaynquyffhe," vanyffhe. 846 19, "lyne." 848 6, "fowned," fwounded; 24, "fad," fayd; 28, "fef,"\* felf. 850 3, "thon"; 9, "af," of; 17, "demyng," demyng; 35, "nener"; 35, "bookes," bookes. 851 5, "Nynyue," *generally* "Nymue." 853 31, "yom"; 35, "fewe,"\* fewe. 854 38, "fofaken," forfaken. 858\* 12, "bnt." 861\* 1, "book" *repeated*.

RESULT OF THE COLLATION OF WHITTAKER'S  
FACSIMILES WITH THE ORIGINAL PAGES.<sup>1</sup>

**T**HE following table shows how far Whittaker succeeded in reproducing the original in his facsimile pages. In the first column are quoted the readings of Lord Spencer's copy as I have reproduced them in my text; the second column shows the readings of the only perfect copy, once at Osterley, now in America.

*Leaf l<sub>1</sub> [pages 195\* and 196\*]*

	FACSIMILES.	ORIGINALS.
<i>recto</i> :	5 doe	doo
	8 roffhyng	raffhyng
	13 bespeckled	befperkled
	25 leue	lene
	29 myztest	myztyest
	35 fore	fayre
	— manayr	manoyr
<i>verso</i> :	12 manore	manoir
	23 fays	fayd

*Leaf r<sub>7</sub> [pages 303\* and 304\*]*

<i>recto</i> :	28 palfray	palfroy
	34 corne	torne
	— xxj	xxij
<i>verso</i> :	8 faunte	faunce
	11 reyentyd	repentyd
	25 fal wed	falewed
	29 fyonas	lyonas

*Leaf r<sub>8</sub> [page 305]*

<i>recto</i> :	26 racreaunt	recreaunt
	30 worlde	world

<sup>1</sup> Leaves: r<sub>8</sub> verso [page 306\*]; N<sub>2</sub> recto [613\*]; N<sub>8</sub> recto [623\*]; ee<sub>2</sub> recto [855]; ee<sub>4</sub> verso [857\*] and ee<sub>6</sub> recto [861\*] are faultless.



*Leaf N<sub>2</sub> [page 614\*]*

	FACSIMILES.	ORIGINALS.
<i>verso</i> :	8 faith	faid
	28 marhel	marbel

*Leaf N<sub>8</sub> [page 624\*]*

<i>verso</i> :	22 beynge	brynge
	29 fheef	fhoef

*Leaf T<sub>4</sub> [pages 713\* and 714\*]*

<i>recto</i> :	10 enchere	encheue
	24 bere	bare
<i>verso</i> :	8 ye	yo
	22 twelue	a twelue
	33 efcared	efcaped

*Leaf T<sub>5</sub> [pages 715\* and 716\*]*

<i>recto</i> :	2 Gatahad	Galahad
<i>verso</i> :	5 departede	departed

*Leaf ee<sub>3</sub> [page 856\*]*

<i>verso</i> :	13 Bleoheris	Bleoberis
	— Clarras	Clarrus
	14 Gohaleaniyne	Gahalantyne
	16 laft	luft
	18 preefthod	preefthode
	21 bodoly	lowly
	29 then	thou
	30 parouey	puruey
	37 fore	fote


*Leaf ee<sub>4</sub> [page 858\*]*

<i>verso</i> :	17 wekye	wekyes
	24 houe	haue

	FACSIMILES.	ORIGINALS.
<i>verso</i> :	25 So	Se
	29 hamborow	bamborow
	36 bedd	bedde
<i>Leaf ee,</i> [pages 859* and 860*]		
<i>recto</i> :	10 proue	preue
	18 togydere	togyders
	20 bernnyng	brennyng
<i>verso</i> :	12 brefte	reefte
	25 Wyllats de balyaunt	Wyllars de valyaunt
	— Clartus	Clarrus
	29 countreys	countreyes

Previous to the first issue of his Globe edition in 1867 Sir Edward Strachey collated his text of the Southey edition (of course only the doubtful pages), not only with Whittaker's facsimiles, but also with the originals then still at Osterley. He kindly sent me his volumes to London, and thus enabled me to check the American collation. According to Sir E. Strachey, we have to read : Page 305\* 33, "hit," for it ; 855\* 6, "erthyly," erthly ; 858\* 20, "cryften," chryften ; 35, "that," then ; 859\* 14, "&," and ; 860\* 29, "cuntreyes," countreyes ; 39, "hoole," booke.

#### NOTES ON THE LANGUAGE OF "LE MORTE DARTHUR."

HE language in which Sir Thomas Malory's "Le Morte Darthur" has come down to us in Caxton's imprint offers many peculiar features, and cannot fail to be of interest and value to the philologist. It would be a useful and meritorious task to treat the whole of Caxton's numerous volumes with regard to their linguistic peculiarities ; in short, to write a Caxton-grammar similar to those of the language of Chaucer<sup>1</sup> and Shakspeare.<sup>2</sup> This

<sup>1</sup> B. ten Brink, "Chaucer's Sprache und Verskunst." Leipzig, 1884, 8vo.

<sup>2</sup> E. A. Abbot, "A Shakspearian Grammar : an Attempt to illustrate some of the Differences between Elizabethan and Modern English." London, 1870, 8vo.

suggestion can, of course, only be realized when trustworthy editions of all the works issued from the press of the first English printer are within the reach of every scholar.<sup>1</sup> Time and space only allow me to note in brief the most characteristic examples of Caxton's orthography, phraseology, and syntax which attracted my attention during the compilation of the Index and Glossary.

If we adopt the common division into three periods of the English language—viz., Old English till 1250, Middle English till 1485, and from thence onward Modern English—our text belongs (taking in consideration that it was in manuscript in 1474, eleven years before it saw the light of day) either to the close of Middle English or to the opening of Modern English. And, indeed, whilst resembling in many respects the familiar language of Chaucer's poetry, it has also a marked modern colouring, and is akin to the language of Shakspeare and his predecessors. Being thus the product of a period of transition and change, it is not surprising to find on every page, in every line, the strife of ancient and modern forms. No uniform orthography existed at that time, and the art of printing, still in its infancy, was incapable of effecting such an innovation.

Just as the first printed books closely resemble the manuscripts they were intended to replace, so their language is like that of the manuscripts, the orthography is that of the individual scribe, and here and there abbreviations and contractions occur, though not to the same extent as in the manuscripts.

Caxton's orthography, as I prefer to call it, instead of Malory's, believing that Malory's text underwent a considerable change while passing through the press, is, to say the least of it, most remarkable; what it is like can be best seen from some examples.

The Modern English word *means* occurs in the following different spellings:—1. “menes” (394 35); 2. “meane” (11 30); 3. “moyne” (16 11); 4. “moyan” (10 23); 5. “moyane” (6 4).

*Realm* is spelled: 1. “reame” (39 34); 2. “royame” (11 2);

---

<sup>1</sup> Dr. L. Kellner, in his forthcoming edition of Caxton's “Blanchardyn & Eglantyne” (Early-English Text Society), of which he kindly submitted to me some proof-sheets of the opening pages of the Introduction, has devoted himself to the study of Caxton's syntax. He quotes not only from his text, but also from the “Four Sonnes of Aymon,” ed. by Miss O. Richardson (E.-E. T. S.), 1885, and from my edition of “Le Morte Darthur.” To judge from what I have seen of it, his work will be a most valuable contribution to the study of the English tongue.

3. "reaume" (45 8); 4. "royalme" (4 11); 5. "realme" (67 5);  
6. "royaume" (160 15).

*Thorough*: 1. "thorugh" (1 12); 2. "thorowe" (37 16); 3. "thorou"  
(235 16); 4. "thurgh" (59 12).

*Hair*: 1. "hayre" (657 16); 2. "hayr" (27 27); 3. "heyre"  
(362 19); 4. "here" (83 22).

*Whither*: 1. "whyder" (378 10); 2. "whydder" (702 28);  
3. "whyther" (384 15); 4. "whether" (219 15); 5. "wheder"  
(297 21).

The Glossary will disclose many more examples of a similar character.

Many words which in Modern English differ in meaning and orthography are spelled alike in Caxton: *e.g.*, "here" (*to hear*); "here" (*the hair*), "here" (*here*); "hede" (*the head*), "hede" (*heed*); "herte" (*heart*), "herte" (*hart*); "mete" (*meat*), "mete" (*meet, fitting*), "mete" (*to meet*); etc.

Compounds of different particles which generally form one word nowadays are written in two: *e.g.*, "to gyder"; "by nethe"; "by caufe"; likewise all pronouns with "felf," as "her felf"; "hym felf." In Caxton "felf" has no plural, or rather the plural *selves* is always spelt like the singular (comp. 389 6; 198 12). The same is the case with "other," which is also plural and singular (305 12; 361 12; 446 13).

The termination "er" occurs both in the Saxon and in the Norman form: "hongre," "honger."

The final mute "e" is more frequently used than in Modern English: "fente"; "grene"; "hande"; "owne"; "rede"; "none."

Words are not divided according to syllables or roots and terminations, but according to the space. The conjunctive-hyphen is rarely employed.

The prefixes "be-" ("bi-" or "by-"), "for-," "to-," and "male" often occur where unused nowadays, and are mostly separated from the verb.

"*be-*": "bebled" (294 12); "bybledeft" (176 33); "beclofed" (601 2); "bedaffhed" (773 31); "befalle" (420 34), etc.; for others see the Glossary.

"*for-*": "forbled" (350 26); "fordone" (334 32); "fordyd" (99 3); "forfende" (727 8); "forfendyd" (727 13); "forfoughten" (87

25); "foriufsted" (421 30); "forthynketh" (82 2); "forwounded" (350 26).

"male": "male engyne" (733 16); "male eafe" (338 2); "male fortune" (392 21).

"to-": "to braft" (204 20); "to cratched" (583 14); "to-forne" (247 20); "to hewe" (338 9); "to rofe" (330 29); "to fheuered" (481 12).

The prefixes "dis-" and "es-" occur once each in a short form: "fcomfyte" (146 38) for "difcomfyte"; "fcape" (92 33) for "efcape."

Two cases are noticeable in which the prefix has been separated from the verb and placed at the end of the sentence.

"for ye haue the water to paffe ouer" (632 22).

"and wold haue ronne fir Triftram thurgh" (526 4).

Something very similar takes place with the preposition *toward*: It is separated, *to* preceding, and *ward* following the noun or pronoun: "to the death ward" (70 27); "to y<sup>e</sup> Iuftes warde" (41 12); "comyng to hym warde" (27 17); but at the same time we find examples like the use in Modern English: "toward the caftel" (379 2).

The following contractions are used:—

1. The article "the" with the initial vowel or even "h" of its noun: "themperour"; "tharchbyffhop"; "thabite"; etc.

2. The preposition "to" with the initial vowel of the verb: "tenprynte"; "tefcape"; etc.

3. The preposition "at" with the article is contracted in "atte"; "atte requeste"; "atte turnement"; sometimes, however, the form "atte," or "att," and the article occur: *e.g.*, "att the caftel" (408 9); and with the indefinite article: "att a pryuy pofterne" (403 9).

4. The negative "not" with the present tense of to be: "nys" = "is not" (127 6; 219 35; 538 4; 748 20).

5. The negative with the present and imperfect tenses of to will: "nyll" = "wyll not" (297 32; 506 2); "nylt" = "wylt not" (641 17); "nold" = "wold not" (705 31).

6. The negative with the present tense of "weten" (to know): "nyft" = "he wyft not" (729 12; 677 3).

The old prefix of the past participle, "y," only occurs four times: "y fonde" (699 35); "y barryd" (780 27); "y fette" (822 32); "y fought" (754 1).

Finally I must mention a number of words which are either adopted

from the French originals in their proper form or disfigured. Such are: "peramour," "paramour"; "per-" or "paraenture"; "maulgre," "malgre," "maugre"; "per de," "per di," "par dieu"; "roche"; "lesses les aler" (*herald's cry*); "pouente."

The epithets of many proper names: "le breune"; "faunce pyte"; "de les yles"; "les auoultres"; "le fyfe de roye"; "le" or "la blanche maynys"; "le" or "la beale"; "le fyfe vayffhoure"; "maledyfaunt"; "bien penfaunt, beau viuante"; "le fyfe de dieu," once corrupted "le fyfe dene"; "le" or "la cote male tayle"; and finally, "le morte darthur," etc. It is remarkable that the definite article of the masculine and feminine genders is constantly misapplied.

Some cases may also be mentioned where the French and the Saxon form of the same word are placed in a pleonastic way beside one another, the first forming a sort of adverb for the second: "oute excepte" (102 11); "enuyronne aboute" (628 12); and "vnmefurably oute of mesure" (640 22).

Whilst the orthography of common names is thus often perplexing, this is still more the case with personal names. The name of the same person occurs in such different spellings that it is often difficult to identify its bearers, and in many cases it can only be guessed at from the context. Some examples will speak best:

"Mellegaunt" (479); "Malegeaunt" (480); "Melyagaunt" (482), "Melyagaunce" (356); "Melyaganus" (257); "Mellyagraunce" (780); are all names of the same man.

"Berlufes" (436); "Berlyfes" (*ibid.*); "Berfules" (423); and "Berlufe" (427).

The lady or "damoyfel" of the lake is called "Nymue" (115), and "Nyneue" (118).

Another knight, "Gromere Gumorfon" (258), *i.e.*, son of *Gumor*, is called elsewhere "Grumore gummurfum" (256), and very likely the form "Gromore fomyr Ioure" (799) is another corruption, as it only occurs once. Indeed, the names offer many difficulties, and I was not surprised to find that Sir Edward Strachey, the only one of the previous editors of "Le Morte Darthur" who ever attempted to compile an Index of Names and a Glossary, has made many mistakes in his Index. He speaks of three "Gromeres," whereas they are all one and the same person. He mentions two "Vryens," whereas there is only one: "King Vryence," or "Vriens of the land of Gore,"

husband of "Morgan le fay." The same error occurs with "Gracian," "Grastian," and "Gratian"; "Epinegris," "Epynogrys"; "Gillemere" and "Gilmere"; "Lamerake of Wales" and "Lomarake of Galis"; "Melyot de Logres" and "Melyot de Logurs"; "Neroneus" and "Nerouens"; "Pertilope" and "Pertolepe"; and some others.

The numerous epithets are most puzzling: "the valyaunt," "the son of," "the aduenturous," and the like. Persons often have epithets characteristic of others, and the same person has different epithets; of course this caused much confusion. There are, for instance, two "Galahads," "Galahalts," or "Galahaults," one the son of "Launcelot" and "Elayne daughter of King Pelles"; the other, son of "Sir Breunor of Surlufe." Both are surnamed "the haute prynce." In "Vwayne's" case the reverse takes place; he has three different epithets. In the first two hundred pages he figures without any epithet, later on he is once "Vwayne les auoutres," once "le fyfe de roy Vreyne" (comp. Index of Names, etc.), "les aduenturous," "le" or "la blanche maynys," etc.<sup>1</sup> In the "table or rubryffhe" and once in the text (page 38) his name is spelled "Ewayne le blanche maynys." Sir Edward Strachey in his Index has three different persons.

Names of places afford still more difficulty. Not to speak of the poor geographical and chronological knowledge of those days that identifies "Camelot" with "Winchester," or that speaks of a *Westminster Bridge* in the fifth century, the spelling of the names of cities, countries, etc., is so bad, and the original names are so much disfigured, that in many cases it is, despite the greatest efforts, absolutely impossible to identify them. Compare, for instance, on page 163 the enumeration of the different parts of the Roman Empire: "Arrage"; "Ambage"; "Cayer"; "Ertayne"; "Pounce"; "Cateland"; etc. etc.

After these general remarks I proceed to enumerate a few of my observations, which must not be supposed to exhaust the subject.

I. The personal pronoun of the second person of the plural is rendered in Caxton by "ye" and "yow," the former representing the nominative, the latter the accusative; if there should be met anywhere "ye" for the accusative it is most probably a mistake

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare text, page 667, lines 32 and 33: "Vwayne les auoutres that fometyme was fone of kynge Vryens"; and page 401, 5-6: "V. le fyfe de roy Vreyne / and fomme callid hym le blanche maynys."

due to the compositors, who misinterpreted the abbreviation in the manuscript.

*My* is invariably rendered by "myn": "myn ende" (755 32); "myn vnhappynes" (753 22).

*It* is generally spelt "hyt" or "hit" (61 5; 148 6); *them* is replaced by "hem" (85 21; 631 26); and *their* is written "her" (643 25; 816 11).

*Hym self* stands for he: "and the noble name that hym self had" (567 5); and *he* stands for hym self: "he weneth no knyght fo good as he" (202 11).

*These*, the plural of *this*, occurs in the form "this": "this thre yere" (61 21); "this feuen yere" (207 16).

*Which* is both a relative and an interrogative pronoun, and refers to persons as well as things: "whiche was fomtyme the rycheft woman of the world" (652 31).

*Who*, or *he who*, is mostly rendered by "the whiche": "Ban thy fader the which was" (660 17).

*That what* is rendered by "that that": "for now I see that that hath ben my defyre" (723 8).

In many cases the relative pronoun is entirely omitted, an infrequent usage in Modern English; some examples will best illustrate the practice.

"There is no maker can reherce the tenthe parte" (562 32); "fende hym a gyfte fhalle pleafe hym" (101 2); "a knyght wold fyghte for hym" (127 8); "found one was fair and ryche" (84 5); "for here ar no moo wille haue adoo with me" (443 5); "for there is no tonge can telle the Ioye" (708 34); "there was a monke broughte him vnto a tomb" (627 31).

*What* is sometimes used for *some* or *any*: "what by land what by water" (556 19); "delyuer hym to what poure man ye mete" (39 7).

*Each other* or *one another* occurs in the following forms:—1. "other": "they fmote other in the sheldes" (97 8); 2. "eche other," either separated or together: "eche falewed other" (659 28); "eche of hem dressid to other" (109 37); "how ij bretheren flewe eche other" (98 27); 3. "eueryche other": "wounded eueryche other dolefully" (97 21); 4. "eyther other": "wounded eyther other" (142 32); finally, 5. "to gyder": "they loued to gyder" (707 25); "they kyffed to gyder" (725 19).



*Both*, written "*bothe*," is mostly placed at the end of the sentence: "vnto my grete dommage and his bothe" (134 10); "I am fo hurte and he bothe" (134 11); "bothe his hors and he" (accusative!) (112 30); "conferue me and you bothe" (709 35).

*Al, alle* (= altogether) is used adverbially in order to give more stress; it has the sense of *entirely*: "al only" (832 16; 573 26); "al dede" (715\* 33); "tale al hole" (855\* 26); "al to long" (133 2); "alle to hewe hym" (513 9); "braft it vpon hym alle to fheuers" (554 14); "were foughten wyth al" (29 14)

The imperative is frequently followed by the pronoun.

II. The Saxon or possessive genitive is used more frequently than to-day, and with regard to things as well as to persons. There are different ways in which it occurs. 1. *s* is added to the nominative, the use of the apostrophe being entirely unknown, the *s* being considered as a remainder of the old genitive: "Lots wyf" (425 12); "Bryfens wytte" (573 34); "mans herte" (670 21); names terminating in *s* remain unchanged: "Pelles doughter" (612 11). 2. *es* is added to the nominative<sup>1</sup>: "Mordredes wyllle" (839 15); "Cadores fone" (860\* 17); "mennes bodyes" (52 22). 3. *ys (is)* is added to the nominative: "childis" (37 3); "Markys party" (463 30); "Tyrreis fhelde" (749 15); "Percyualis fyfter" (91 28). In the plural no *s* is added: "lyftes ende" (734 33); "feuen kynges Realmes" (814 14); "knyghtes names" (101 31).

A few instances occur where the *s* is omitted in the singular: "atte brydge foote" (589 17); "at the raunge ende" (573 34); and "fir Patryfe dethe" (733 13).

The plural of nouns is formed by the addition of "*s*," "*es*," and frequently "*ys*" or "*is*." Such plurals are: "handys" (61 29); "fallys" (477 5); "gatys" (459 37); "dedys" (838 13); "membrys" (649 34); "ornementys" (711 16); "complayntys" (562 31); "meanys" (840 14); "buryellys" (851 11); "lordis" (829 23); and many others.

Many abstract nouns only used in Modern English in the singular occur in the plural, such as: "valyaunces, prowesses, appertyces" (173 14); "adyfes" (308 14); "wronges" (373 12); "ententes"

---

<sup>1</sup> Cases like the following: "fowles helthe" (705 25); "worldes ende" (649 35); "woodes fyde" (745 24), cannot be enumerated here, as the *e* occurs already in the singular.

(247 26); "refcowes" (502 10); "buryels" (466 23); "myrthes" (500 1; 562 21); "lyfers" (474 35).

In other places we find the singular employed where we should expect the plural: "two *myle* hens" (267 36); "a thousand *pound*" (785 32); "fourty *pounde* a pees" (853 19); "a thre *myle* Englyfhe" (437 8); "a thyrty *couple* of houndes" (434 12). The addition of the indefinite article in the last two examples is as remarkable as in the following: "a large *amendys*" (plural!) (438 4); "a ten dayes afore" (396 13); and "fewe a *felaufhip*" (53 33).

Often the article, as well the definite as the indefinite, is omitted: "I put *caas*" (600 30; 608 17); "neuer *spak* word" (451 33); "wythin *fhort* tyme" (78 19); "in *fhort* tyme" (707 24); "for *fone*" (8 25); "at *auauntage*" (560 35); "yeue *anfuer*" (38 12); "in *deferte*" (708 17); "As *worldes* shame" (785 16); "I cast me neuer to be wedded man" (758 22).

The substantive "*heuen*" is used both with and without the article: "under *heuen*" (804 9); "toward —" (723 7); "from —" (699 1); "fader of —" (710 35); "lady of —" (273 33); on the other hand: "under *the* *heuen*" (87 14); "to *the* —" (681 11); "toward *the* —" (659 1); "up to *the* —" (659 3).

The substantive "*loue*" is treated as a masculine noun: "loue is free in hym *felfe* / and neuer wille be bounden / for where *he* is bounden," etc. (762 22).

Not unfrequently substantives are treated as adjectives: "quenes *forcereffes*" (187 27); "*traitour* knyght" (289 34); an example of the independent genitive occasionally occurs: "take that hors of *his yefte*" (841 24).

The substantive "*maner*" is used in connection with other nouns with or without "*of*": "*maner of* wyfe" (811 28); "— *of* *disportes*" (800 21); "— *of* *knoulechyng*" (733 13); "— *of* *nobleffe*" (770 36); and in other places: "ony *manere* knyghte" (762 18); "in ony *maner* wyfe" (680 21); "in this — wyfe" (74 22); "alle — *aduentures* daungerous" (803 18).

III. The adjective precedes or follows the noun, the former more frequently than the latter: "*feest* Royal" (401 4); "*leges* englyfhe" (428 35); "knyghtes *aduenturous*" (410 9); "*sege* perillous" (452 4); "table round" (429 22).

The use of two or more adjectives with a noun differs greatly from

that of Modern English. One generally precedes the noun, whereas the other follows as a sort of apposition joined by "*and*," with or without the article: "a grete wounde and a peryllous" (412 26; 442 21); "a pyteous complaynte and a dolorous" (435 7); "a horryble lybard and an old" (579 5); "a good *old* man and an *auncyent*" (616 1); "to a strong towre and an hyhe" (672 37); "a ryche kynge and a myghty" (621 1); "a *moche* man and a large" (802 16); without the article: "wylde beeftes foule and horryble" (844 6); "grete botes and fmal" (841 12); "the moost merueillous man of the world and moost aduenturous" (663 2); "in the best maner and freffheft" (773 32).

In a few cases the adjective takes an *s* in the plural, but only in words of French origin: "moost valyaunts men" (83 31); "the mefcreaunts Sarafyns" (135 30).

Sometimes the adjective is treated as a substantive: "he fhalle haue many his better" (579 32).

The comparison of adjectives is very peculiar; all, whether *mono-syllabic*, or *bi-syllabic* with the accent on the second, or terminating in *-le* with preceding consonant, or ending in *y*, indicate comparison not only by adding *er* to the comparative and *est* to the superlative, but also by putting *more* or *most* before them. Some superlatives may be found without *most*, and some comparatives without *more*: "more gladder" (218 23); "— leuer" (269 11); "— reufuller" (425 26); "— wrother" (405 2); "— rychelyer" (580 33); "— heuyer" (749 26); "— nobler" (842 24); "— hotter" (725 19); "— largelyer" (754 10); "— blacker" (651 30); etc. etc.; "moost curteyft" (394 29); "— worshipfullest" (361 35); "— mefchyeuouft" (413 32); "— profytelyeft" (733 32); "— nobleft" (747 15); quite exceptionally: "moofte noble" (367 21); "moost orgulift" (840 6); etc. etc. Without *more* or *most*: "valyaunter" (447 17); "falflyer" (520 10); "traitourlyer" (520 11); "oftyner" (566 3); "fyerfer" (181 31); "horrybleft" (296 3); "valyaunteft" (454 21); "famofeft" (278 25); "merueillouft" (278 23); "freyffheyft" (763 23); etc. etc.

*Most* is used like an adjective with nouns: "*moost* coward" (502 12); "*moost* kyng" (840 29); "*moost* vylayn" (414 35). The same is the case with *moche*: "a *moche* man" (802 16).

The negative before a comparative is *not* or *no*: "not lenger" (723 9); "noo lenger" (735 14).

Instead of the adverb *very*, adjectives and adverbs are preceded by "full," "right," "passyng," "passyngly": "ful bolde" (841 14); "ryghte parfyte" (695 34); "passyng wyfe" (35 8); "passyngly wel" (763 8).

IV. Here and there occur irregular or obsolete forms of preterites, infinitives, and past participles; these are registered in their respective places in the Glossary. Present and preterite have often the same form, e.g., "*come*," which is both present and preterite: "By than come in to the field" (57 34); "Sone come merlyn" (38 26).

The past participles generally end in *en* or *n*, as "abyden," "ryden," "comen," "holpen," etc.; some participles are, however, to be found where the final *n* is dropped: "undertake" (340 34); "ryde" (82 16); "founde" (434 34); "befalle" (420 34); "be" (147 10); [comp. "*ben*" (203 22)]; "take" (715\* 32); "difcomfyte" (766 26); "benome" (674 23); "bete" (667 8). There occur also some shortened participles; e.g., "fond" (590 18) for "founden" (246 36).

The plural of the present tense is formed in "*-eth*," but many forms of the Midland plural "*-en*" occur: "faiden" (140 29); "pleafen" (101 17); "vfen" (128 14); "fpeken" (425 27); "comen" (280 12); "bryngen" (771 4); "floryffhen" (771 4); "defyen" (632 24); "defenden" (632 25); "fygnefyen" (682 36); "repayren" (643 22); "putten" (149 10); "ben" (101 91; 1 12; 801 3; 445 1); etc. etc.

The second person of the singular has often no inflexion: "thow goo" (107 7); "thow doo" (593 30); "thow took" (111 15); "thow were" (66 15); but: "fawest thou" (66 15).

The auxiliary *to be* has the form *be* for all persons singular and plural in the present tense: "god be not thy friend" (70 28); "it be taken" (78 12); "we be not yet come therto" (704 29); "why be ye" (94 28); "ye be welcome" (89 32); "volumes be made" (3 8).

The auxiliary *to do* is not used in negative and interrogative sentences: "knew not" (100 3; 97 6); "gate ye" (41 32); "come ye" (86 12). But *to do* is used in connection with other verbs in order to increase the emphasis: "do made" (1 7); "dyd do ranfak" (174 11); "made do crye" (92 9); "dyd do calle" (180 34); "dyd do cere" (174 22).

Once "*done*" occurs as second person plural: "confyderyng the grete dedes of armes I haue fene you *done*" (444 33).

Many verbs are treated as reflexive which are no longer such now-

adays. The reflexive pronoun is not *myself*, *thyself*, *himself*, *themselves*, but "*me*," "*the*," "*hym*," and "*hem*" (*them*). Only very rarely forms with *self* are to be met. Such is, *e.g.*, the case: "hydest thow thy felf" (834 1); "fhe rofe her felf" (82 28); whereas: "he roofe *hym*" (95 35); some examples are subjoined: "I affente me" (71 12); "I compte me" (342 12); "I fhalle remembre me" (381 17); "I wyлле repose me" (417 1); "I complayne me" (650 2); "I drede me" (745 29; 767 24). Other verbs used as reflexives are: "to rest" (131 3; 183 19); "excufe" (367 30); "bethink" (239 31); "arme" (137 23; 90 33); "defende" (404 1); "drawe" (385 3); "torne" (39 35); "retorne" (46 11); "byhaue" (24 18); and many others.

Many verbs are used impersonally: "me oughte to doo" (214 16); "me femeth" (127 28); "me lyketh" (74 13); "me lyft" (90 27); "hit lyketh the" (222 10); "how lyketh yow" (215 26); "it myffortuned me" (418 17; 557 12); "hit fore forthynketh me" (643 12); "as it telleth" (64 31); "as it reherceth afore" (105 11); "hit fortuneth" (364 21); etc. etc.

The active voice is frequently used instead of the passive: "for to nouriffhe" (37 1); "herde a grete horne blowe" (529 11).

In phrases expressing a wish the pronoun generally precedes the verb: "god yow faue" (541 5); "fayre knyght god the bleffe" (745 13); "god yow blyffe" (753 21); "god me forbede" (207 8).

Many verbs are conjugated with *to be* instead of with *to have*: "were mette" (561 22); "was become" (366 15); "is become" (68 16); "was ryden" (151 7); "was arryued" (367 15); "I am come to the dethe" (706 4); etc.

The short dative is not strictly necessary after some verbs: "fente to me" (3 13); "tolde to Lucius" (11 12); "graunte to hym" (12 27); "gyuen to hym" (15 2); "tolde hym" (15 29); "graunte hem me" (213 17); etc.

*Make* in the sense of *to bid*, *to order*, is generally constructed with *to*: "made to yelde" (13 22); "made alle lordes to come in" (44 4).

V. The use of the prepositions differs greatly from that of the present day, and is arbitrary in many respects. To enumerate all the differences would take too much space, but I subjoin a few of the most noticeable examples:

*By*: "by my dayes" (842 11); "now do by me what ye lyft" (371 31).

*Of*: "defyred of" (29 18); "receyued thys fhelde of" (26 16); "fyr L. was rebuked of the quene" (24 15); "reuenge hym of his enemyes" (63 15); "praid the king of accord" (37 27); "prayed hym of his knyghthode" (767 23); "made hem clene of her lyf" (plural!) (40 15); "lyberal of his expenfe" (518 20); "haue pyte of hem" (181 31).

*Til, vntil*: "til a tree" (380 10; 389 18; 630 3); "til a frende" (385 28); "vntyl hym" (752 9).

*With*: "affayled with xij knyghtes" (18 19); "eten with Lyons" (107 3); "came with kyng Arthur," i.e., to his court (99 26); "many queftions with her" (37 9); "afhamed with hym felfe" (654 33).

*At*: "afk counceil at hem" (47 10); "come at the caftel" (37 12); "oute att wyndowes" (236 31).

*For*: "that they be content for" (134 24); "complaynyng for" (19 31).

*On*: "thynke on me" (627 12; 708 6); "troweft thou more on thy harneis than in thy maker" (710 18); "compleyned on" (10 12), comp. "for"; "kneled on his knee" (489 21); "vpon his owne knee" (524 9).

*In*: "come in the courte" (68 22); "put hem bothe in the erthe" (84 6).

Further, some phrases constructed with different prepositions: "leyd fyege vnto hym" (64 14); "on the caftel" (64 8); "aboute the toure of London" (852 7); "aboute fir L." (852 7); "blewe the felde" (490 10)<sup>1</sup>; "blewe vnto lodgyng" (549 14); "blewe to the felde" (766 8); etc.

In two passages the preposition *with* seems at first sight to be omitted, as it is generally used under similar circumstances, but such is not the case; the examples denote a sort of instrumental case: "I fhould flee the myn owne handes" (556 11); "I fhall flee the myn owne handes" (849 12).

VI. Many conjunctions have a pleonastic *that* after them, which in a few cases is used in Modern English: "after that" (23 5; 19 4);

---

<sup>1</sup> Another example where a verb governs the accusative is: "I difcharge the *this* Courte" (727 7).

“how —” (25 5; 434 31); “wherfore —” (1 6); “but —” (3 5); “by caufe —” (84 27); “why —” (114 9); “fauf —” (171 1); “though —” (77 27); “or —” (451 27); “tylle —” (690 26).

*To* with the infinitive is, with very few exceptions (33 4), generally preceded by “*for*”: see 30 22; 38 32; 567 2; 657 9; etc. etc.

*Unless* is rendered by “*but yf*”: 417 15; 514 14; 52 2; 91 18; sometimes by “*but and*”: as 61 11.

*And* replaces *if*: “and kyng Lot had ben” (87 16); “and he lyue” (92 35); “and I wold” (70 26); occasionally “*and yf*” occurs: “and yf I myght lyue” (98 8).

*As* is constantly used for *as if*: “as he hadde ben dede” (393 28); sometimes “*as though*”: “as though he had ben dede” (393 31); “as though he myght not haue gone” (253 6).

*Where* and *lyke* are often followed by “*as*”: “lyke as god wil” (395 22; 555 24); “where as came” (14 4).

*Without* stands for *unless*: “without ye doo me homage” (75 3); “without ye haue my counceyll” (85 14).

*Ne* is often used for *nor* or *neither*, and at the same time is part of the negation (compare below, No. VII.): “whos vyrgynyte ne was peryfshed ne hurte” (703 10); “I care not ne doubtte hem not” (221 5); “ne none of myn elders” (74 35).

*For* occurs sometimes in the sense of *because* or *as*: “but *for* tho aduentures were with wylde beeftes / and not in the quest of the Sangreal / therfor the tale,” etc.

VII. In this paragraph I bring together a few syntactical remarks:—

The negative is usually double, much as in French, sometimes even threefold: “It may not be by no reafon” (214 35); “there nys none other boote” (209 6); “myght not abyde no lenger” (130 38); “but in no wyfe he coude not” (377 5); “*neuer* erst *ne* myghte *no* knyghte knewe the truthe” (703 28); “*neuer* had I foo grete nede of no knyghtes helpe” (305 4); “ne lete me not be fhamed” (654 16); “but of that fhame ne reke I noughte” (684 14); “for thy pyte ne haue me not in dyspyte” (711 4). There occur a few cases where only “*ne*” is used: “that I ne lay ten tymes where” (717 11); “ne had your tydynges ben” (699 36).

Inversion is often used; regularly after *therefore* and *thenne*: “therfor cam I hydder” (735 13); “therfor fhalle I *neuer* loue the

no more" (727 6); "thenne was he not a lytel fory" (714\* 31); "thenne wote I" (571 14). In many cases, it appears, inversion is used to emphasize certain words: *e.g.*, "an holer man in his lyf was he neuer" (207 38); "as for my ladyes name that shall not ye knowe for me as at this tyme" (216 5); "and crystend wyll I be" (490 2); "and vnto the dethe he is Iuged" (753 31). A number of such examples are to be found throughout the work.

The subject is often changed and the verb omitted: "and fo she yede to the knyght that she loued / and he her ageyne" (404 25).

Occasionally the subject is entirely omitted in the second part of the sentence: "for they bare no harneis ageynft the / nor none wold bare" (825 5); "Marke euer haft thou ben a traytour / and euer wyll be" (496 11).

Direct and indirect speech occur in the same sentence: "But for her loue that gaf me this whyte shelde I shalle were the" (141 30); "ij ladyes to take the child bound in a cloth of gold / & that you delyuer hym" (39 5); "G. fente to kyng Arthur for focour and that he hye hym for I am fore wounded" (170 32); "and thenne the kyng commaunded his knyghtes to take that naked man with fayrenes / and brynge hym to my castel" (370 15-18).

*Not* is occasionally used elliptically: "and there he thoughte to affaye his armour and his spere for his hurte *or not*" (755 18).

The use of the infinitive of the perfect tense is further remarkable in sentences such as the following:—"he rode to haue foughten" (18 12); "wolde haue had Arthur to haue cryed hym mercy" (131 27); "he wende he shold haue dyed" (392 29); "for ye haue fene me thys day haue had grete traueylle" (412 15); "for ye neded not to haue doubted no knyght" (402 15).

In conclusion I shall quote some sentences which are most peculiar in their construction: "and he that was vpon hym the whiche was the nobleft hors in the world strayned hym myghtely and stably" (755 24); "There is in this Castel a gentywoman whiche we and this castel is hers and many other" (705 13); "yf ye wold afke how he lyued / he that fedde the peple of Israel with manna in deferte / foo was he fedde" (708 18); "and not foo hardy in Gawayns hede" (487 27).



LIST OF THE VARIOUS READINGS BETWEEN  
CAXTON'S AND WYNKYN DE WORDE'S EDITIONS.

**H**ERE exist differences between Caxton's text and Wynkyn de Worde's editions of 1498 and 1529. I have decided upon giving the various readings from the third edition (1529): firstly, because the lapse of time between the first and second edition is too short to allow of manifest change in the language; secondly, on account of the imperfect condition of the only known copy of the second edition; lastly and chiefly, because all later Black Letter editions, and all modern reprints, with the sole exception of Southey's and Sir E. Strachey's, can be traced back to Wynkyn de Worde's edition of 1529.

Concerning the variations between the first and third edition of Malory's "Le Morte Darthur," I may state, that they consist of alterations as well as of omissions and additions. Whether Caxton's text was purposely revised previous to the third edition being sent to press, or whether the changes were made by Wynkyn de Worde's compositors during printing,<sup>1</sup> it is obvious that the alterations were made with the intention of modernising and of rendering the text more readable, although this intention has not always been strictly carried into effect. Sometimes only the position of words in a sentence is altered; now and then a whole sentence is either entirely omitted or replaced by another one; and in many cases obsolete or difficult words are replaced by more modern ones. Sentences begin with capital letters, as do all names of persons and places. Full-stops and commas are distinguished; "þ" is throughout rendered by "y," whereas "gh" is never rendered by "3," nor "them" by "hem" or "their" by "her," &c. Occasionally I observed that some of Caxton's terms were misunderstood and wrongly rendered, but on the whole, W. de Worde's text is superior to Caxton's, both in exactness and correctness: I can hardly call to mind a misprint. If we take

---

<sup>1</sup> Observing that the variants are periodically more or less in number leads me to conclude that at least two different hands dealt with the text. In the whole 861 pages of Caxton's volume only one page (105) corresponds absolutely to Wynkyn de Worde's text.

into consideration that in those days philology did not exist, and that no one cared to reproduce a text with scrupulous exactness, the variations are rather improvements upon Caxton's text, for many errors are corrected, words, and even whole passages, often added, which, to conclude from the sense, Caxton's compositors evidently omitted. From the point of view of the modern critic it is, however, apparent that owing to these changes Caxton's text had already in 1529 lost its most characteristic peculiarities.<sup>1</sup>

The difference of orthography in both texts is so considerable, that to quote all variations in this respect would be almost equal to reproducing the whole of W. de Worde's second edition. But as W. de Worde's orthography is consistent, and all passages quoted are rendered exactly, one can easily form an opinion about his spelling.

The following list contains only the various readings of "Le Morte Darthur" itself, as the Preface of Caxton is wanting, and the Table of Contents is not complete in the Grenville copy. The Clarendon figures refer to the pages, the ordinary Roman ones to the lines. All words included in brackets are those omitted by W. de Worde. As W. de Worde prints throughout "Kyng Arthur," whereas Caxton frequently simply puts "Arthur," I have not thought it necessary to register each single case.

### Book i.

35. ¶ Here begynneth the fyrst boke of the moost noble and worthy prince kyng Arthur sometyme kyng of grete Brytayne / now called Englande whiche treateth of his noble actes and feates of armes & chyualrye / and of his noble knyghtes of the table roude and this volume is devyded in to .xxi. bokes; 2, of Englonde; 3, regned there; myghty and a noble; 4, longe tyme warre; 5, named; 7, a ryght fayre; 8, and Igrayne was her name; 9, to the; 10, bothe accorded; 11, her grete; 12, lyke as; 20, As foone; 21, wonders; 26, at your commaundement; for than haue ye; 30, wonders; 33, he had; 36, & that other hyght.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare what is said, p. 13, about Mr. Wright's characterisation of Thomas Stansby's edition. The number of variants which I quote here amounts to nearly ten thousand; I estimate that about double the amount of variants exists between Caxton's and Stansby's editions.

**36.** 2, and he put hym felfe ; 7, Igrayne kynge ; Than ; 8, to kyng ; 13, gete yow ; 27, vnto kynge ; 29, tary lōge ; 31, bounden ; 32, he faid y<sup>f</sup> he ; 34, to me.

**37.** 1, whan that is ; 3, as moche as ; 5, this nyght ye ; 10, But be ware ye make ; 12, So as they had deuyfed it was done ; 19, and begate on her Arthur the fame nyght ; 20, & or day ; 27, betwene ; 34, were accorded.

**38.** 10, vnto ; 11, Than was she ; 12, Fere ye not ; 22, fere ; 26, came ; 27, wyll ; 36, vnto me ; As.

**39.** 1, As Merlyn had deuyfed ; 4, the quene ; 6, in ryche cloth of golde & delyuer hym ; 11, owne breftes ; 15, in ; 23, moche ; 25, to L. ; And within a whyle he was passyng ; 27, there is none ; 29, loke that ye ; 30, before hym to morowe ; 34, appertenaunces ; 38, yelded.

**40.** 1, belonged vnto ; wherefore I. the quene ; 8, shold come to L. afore Xmas ; 9, that as Iefu was ; 16, to god ; 18, lyke to ; 23, a fote of heygth ; 24, and letters of golde ; 26, of E. ; 23, cōmaūde you ; 30, all the ; 31, all the states ; went for to ; 35, to be knowen.

**41.** 7, to the field ; 10, Kay ; 12, toward the I. / fyr Kay had ; 14, Arthur to ; I wyll with a good wyll ; 20, Arthur alyghted ; he went ; 23, he pulled ; 30, to fwere.

**42.** 2, fir Ector ; 7, Therwith fyr ; 9, affay you ; to ; 12, With a good wyll ; 14, Kay also and my brother ; 16, ne of ; 18, hym to ; 21, fyr E. ; 29, foftred ; 31, done fyr ; 32, whyle that ; 34, And vpon the .xij. daye ; 35, for to affay ; 37, but onely A. ; many grete l.

**43.** 2, be gouerned ; 5, both day ; 7, And at C. ; 8, but none of them ; 13, And yet ; 14, theyr kynge ; 16, purueye of the ; 17, that myght be gotten ; 18, as Kynge V. ; 20, and fyr B. ; 31, kneled doune all at ones ; 32, forgauē it ; 33, offred it vp to ; 34, and was made.

**44.** 1, to the lordes ; 6, vnto kynge A. ; 9, for to be ; 15, tyme as for the ; enemy vnto the kyng ; 18, a parte of Wales ; 19, and all through ; 21, Than the kyng ; 23, Coronacyon ; 25, vnto this ; 26, Gore whiche brought with h̄y ; 27, to this feest there came ; & with hym ; 34, Than was kyng A. glad ; 37, and fente vnto.

**45.** 2. receyue gyftes ; 4, And that ; 5, betwene ; 8, the rule ; 10, this anfwere vnto kyng Arthur ; And for this cause ; 11, men of armes ; 13, afore ; 15, Merlyns comynge ; 16, berdles boye ; 18, begoten ; 19, vpon ; wyfe of Cornewayle ; 22, Vtherpendragon ; 23, who fo euer ; 24, and or that ; 26, many moo realmes ; 31, for to come fafe and to go fafe ; 32, affurance was ; he sholde not fere ; 6, wyll not.

46. 2, vnder nethe; maylle whiche was good and fure; 4, Kay the Senefshall; 6, mette togyder; but lytel mekenes / for there was; 11, returned to; 18, vnto; 20, that ye had; 21, to y<sup>e</sup> worfste; 31, king; 33, vnder hym; 7, them backe.

47. 1, all the knyghtes; 6, to London; 9, be auenged on hym; 10, of them al; 17, and was fayre; 18, I fhall tel you fyrs; 21, vnto; 22, duke also / and but yf; 23, make hym felfe; 25, this cafe; 28, the one; 34, worfste; 35, that our kyng fende vnto the two.

48. 1, to; 4, vpon; 6, in moost pleasaunt; 15, our prifoners; 18, grete strengthe; 19, and the other two; 20, vnto; 23, at the thyrd; 25, but that he; 32, Than they; 38, delyuered them freyght.

49. 1, better; 4, taryed; 5, & had as good chere as; 8, Ha ha fayd kyng B. & B.; our; 13, to kyng; hafte they; 24, the Senefshall; 28, had waffhed & were ryfen.

50. 1, couched; 2, y<sup>t</sup> was called Ladynas; 7, And whan; he quykly horfed; 11, downe hors and man; 12, none that; 13, came in fyerfly; 20, wonders wroth; 22, to waxe; 27, to Syre G.; 28, to counseyle; 30, to bedde; 31, morowe;—and after went to.

51. 3, fared; 6, on horsbacke and on fote; 17, vnto kyng A.; 20, told them that; 26–27, where the kynges enemyes; 34, that the fyxe.

52. 3, armes whiche; 6, that he wold; 10, Than kyng Lot fwore; 13, Ewayns; 29, And foo by; 35, wonderfull.

53. 9, that they made; 11, fayre felde; 22, for than they wyll; you haue but: 25, and the barons; passyng; 26, done anone; morow; 34, fyerfly agayn; 35, well and meruaylously.

54. 2, whan; 4, to; 13, to; 14, to; 21, and fmote doune; 23, to; 32, In the meane; 34, whiche; 35, y<sup>e</sup> hors fete; 36, Cradelmont.

55. 2, an hors; 4, wonder therof; Cradelmont; 7, to; 11, kerued; 15, y<sup>t</sup> hyght; 16, fmote down; 20, vpon; 24, bothe sholder; into y<sup>e</sup> felde; 25, fyr G.; fuche rescowe; 29, fyr G.; 34 and 36, fyr L.

56. 4, trembled; 6, a stronge; 8, Vryence; 11, kyng A.; 16, fyr G.; 17, And than; 19, Cradelmans; 26, Cambenet; wyll; 27, aparte; 31, So anone they as they had; 35, the uaunt warde; two kynges.

57. 2, Cambenet; 3, on them with; 6, put backe; 7, as the men of Inde; 12, world is ioyned to; 16, by y<sup>e</sup> aduysse of; a knyght; 17, if; 18, whan it is nede; 19, may for you; 20, tyll they; 21, as a bowe shotte; 23, whiche; 25, theyr armes; 28, bothe the partyes; 32, knyght / & was but; 34, as a fyers; 35, ha ha; 36, now shall we be dyscomfyted.

58. 5, and forowe; 8, to hurtle togyder; 9, with theyr; flewe

downe ryght; pyte to; 10, and a grete multytude fledde; 11, wyth the hondred; 13, dedes of; 14, wyth; 16, smote hym a myghty froke vpon; 17, whiche astonyed; Than was king; 18, fet vpon hym; whan that other sawe that he; 22, cut in twayne; hors also; 23, with; 26, Ban with grete dylygence voyded the hors / and came and smote at the other so egrely vpon the helme; 30, By that tyme; 31, that founde; 35, no man myght; 38, therwith he.

**59.** 1, helme with fuche force; 2, cutte hym in two peces / that the one halfe fell on the one fyde / & the other on y<sup>e</sup> other fyde / & kyng A.; hors & ledde; 5, grete nede; 7, myn hurte; 11, a newe; 17, in the felde; 18, & theyr knyghtes assembled; 19, all dyscomfyted; 22, grete dedes; 23, not; vnder heuen; 30, knowe; 35, ye must take; 37, vpon.

**60.** 2, almoost; For kyng A.; 3, therefore they; 5, loke that; fuche an; 7, for to flee; 9, we be; vnto me; 15, And they swore that; the one vnto the other; 16, who that; 17, Than anone; 29, whiche; valyaunt; 32, of Gorre; 33, with grete; 34, as fast as; theyr horses; 35, good knyghtes; 37, thyckest.

**61.** 3, kyng A.'s vifage; 6, vpon; 7, to; haue ye; 8, thousand ye haue; 10, you; ye wyll; 11, yf ye tary on; 12, and theirs; 13, to; 14, rewarde well; 15, ryght well; 16, for there may; 18, this daye; 21, these thre yeres; hurte; ne greue you; 23, to kyng A.; 24, in hande; 27, these thre yeres; 28, y<sup>t</sup> ye haue goten; 29, kynges that be here; 32, at a nede; able ynough; 36, gyuen them; 38, go fe; whiche.

**62.** 4, told hym; 8, the werste; 8, caused Bleyse his mayster to wryte them; 10, caused hym; 13, stode; 15, all furred; 21, thou chorle; 22, the whiche; 23, place where as; 26, smyled at hym; 29, fporte; 36, begate vpon her; and his; 37, rounde t.; 38, ftronge warre vpon.

**63.** 1, Leodegraunce; 2, bycause; 3, the ordynaunce; 4, they all; 7, Than Kyng A.; 16, doughter vnto; [Camyllyard]; 17, and after; 18, as it shall be shewed here after; 19, these two kynges took; 20, on bothe theyr; 21, kyng A.; 22, do in these; 25, many good; malyce of; 29, not nede fayd; 31, for or .xij. monethes be past; 32, he shall; 33, haue reuenged; 34, one day; 35, as it shall be shewed here after; 36, whiche; 37, as ony be now; vnto.

**64.** 1, whiche; to; [the]; 2, Vryence lande; 5, that there was; 6, lawleffe; 19, on the water and the lande; 23, of Scotlande; 26, lordes and gentylnen; Northwales / whiche; 28, man of good men also; 30, ordynaunce that belongeth to warre for to; 31, reherceth; 33, Than after that k. B. and k. B. were departed.

**65.** 3, keft; 5, mothers; 6, she departed; Than on a tyme y<sup>e</sup>;

7, ryght fore; 10, land many; 13, domage; 14, awoke; ryght penfyfe of; 15, for to put awaye all these; 19, his hors; longe after; 25, fate there alone; 26, nombre; 30, whyle that; 34, a fote to; 36, Arthur vnto the knyght; 37, that beeft; 38, haue kyllled.

**66.** 3, that hors; 4, these .xij. monethes; eyther; 6, Kynge P.; 10, to kyng A.; 11, thy defyre is in; 12, to; 13, is myn; 16, I wolde be cōtent; 17, passed forth; 14, grete study; 19, came M.; 21, penfyf & heuy; 22, for here euen now; moost merualyest; 26, and also who; and also one whome; 32, M. departed; 34, was gladde; a ryght wyfe man; 36, kynge A.; dyuers; 38, that olde.

**67.** 3, late wherfore; 4, lyen; 12, moche shameful deth as; into; all quycke; 13, As they thus; 14, horfes; 17, hym that; 18, kynge A. faid vnto M.; 25, & all that were there myght here; 26, Beware Vlfius; 29, fyr Vlfius; for to; 30, that fayth; 31, caufe; grete warre that ye haue had; 34, ye sholde neuer haue had; halfe; whiche; 35, your grete lordes / barons and gentylnen.

**68.** 1, god and you; 2, vpon; 11, to; 13, than fyr V.; 15, that I bare; 18, kyng V.; 19, bothe his; 21, whiche; 33, hym there; 26, Myles; 27, some good; 32, done to; 36, were pyte; 37, he cometh to aege.

**69.** 2, he shall be in; 6, must graūte; 7, will my lorde; 8, body that; 10, that in the fame maner; 11, withoute any questyon or; 12, fir G.; 18, ende of his; 21, it were; dyd; 25, but of whens; 26, they ran; 27, fyr G.; 29, his spere; 33, gauē hym; 34, vpon; [and gate him wynde]; 37, where as; moone.

**70.** 2, his lyfe faued; 6, may ye; or; 8, wyll I hold; vpon; 10, shall be within these fewe dayes; 12, as wrothe as they; 14, And by and by; 16, belonged to; that it be; 17, in the mornynge afore daye; 21, whiche chafed M.; 22, them a good pace; & cryed to; 24, fled away; you; 25, crafte; 26, yf I; 27, thy deth; towarde thy d.; 29, pauylyon by it; 30, knyght fate all; 37, defende it.

**71.** 1, [anone]; 2, drewe; 3, [faid the knyght]; 6, speres ynough; 7, two good; loke one; 8, theyr myght; 9, kynge A.; 11, [ones]; good; 16, y<sup>e</sup> myddes; 17, fore angred; drewe; 22, thought it was; 23, fuche a vauntage; 24, & so alyght; dressed h̄y to kyng A.; 26, where they; 27, was all bloody; 28, to batayle; 29, two wylde bores; eyther of them; 33, to the kynge; 36, But as to.

**72.** 2, a paffynge; 8, reame in; 25, & faue one; 26, the one shall be named P. & that other L.; 27, & they shalle telle; 28, begoten son; 30, vnto an heremytage; where as was; 33, & the

kyng; 34, And fo Merlyn & he departed; 37, lake whiche; 38, a brode.

73. 2, the hande; Merlyn to the kyng; the fwerd; 4, fayd y<sup>e</sup> kyng; 8, therwith came; 9, to kyng A.; 10, the kyng; 11, whiche y<sup>e</sup> arme holdeth yonder; 12, Syr kyng; damoyfell of the lake; 14, king A.; 15, ony gyfte that; 16, vnto; 19, barge; 22, to the lande; 23, Than kyng A.; 25, for he is not; 27, gyder a grete whyle; 28, hym to; 29, It is well; 30, quod kyng A.; 34, my counfeyle is; 37, to wyfe; 38, aduylfe me.

74. 1, kyng A.; vpon; 3, king A.; 6, no bloode; 7, on to; 9, king A.; 10, and fo; 11, the kyng; 19, The meane; haftely from; 20, And he was; 28, lacked for; 30, thy; kyng A.; 32, to a; 33, for to; 35, longe he.

75. 1, I fe well; 3, homage vnto me; 6, hym well; 9, hym / and that fhall he fynde; 13, on Maye daye; 23, by caufe that; 25, what for loue.

¶ Here endyth the fyrft boke of kyng Arthur.

## Book ii.

¶ Here after foloweth the feconde boke of the noble and worthy prynce kyng Arthur.

75. 31, fone whiche; 33, kynges at y<sup>e</sup> tyme; 35, vpon.

76. 4, that; 7, Than king A. let; 9, castel thus was; 12, as them; came a damoyfell whiche; 14, told hym; 16, and she; 22, a good knyght / and; 24, [and withoute treafon]; 26, fwerd of the fcawberd; 27, for it; and it be; 35, fcawberd.

77. 4, freme; 6, but none myght; 9, kyng; 11, I am gretely; 12, It fo happened that; 15, knyghte / whiche; to; This knyght was named; 20, his herte reyfed; 21, for by caufe; 24, was there; 25, [fo departyng]; 27, to suffre; 28, be poorely; 29, other lordes; 31, but by caufe of; araye; 33, to; it is no nede; 34, ony more; befemeth; 36, not all onely; rayment.

78. 2, rayment and clothyng; trouth; 4, fcawberde; 5, vpon; 7, & many; 8, Truly; 9, best man; 11, afcheue; fayd the damoyfel / gyue; 13, by force; 15, in this; 17, to me; 22-23, as grete pite as euer I knewe; 23-24, y<sup>e</sup> gretest sorowe y<sup>t</sup> myght be; 27, I byleue; 29, myffe enformed; 31, courte with my good knyghtes; 32, that ye fhall; 33, for youre; 34, but as now at; 37, that ye wyll not; 38, all my; all that is amyffe and that.

79. 1, [grete]; 9, had promyfed; 11, whiche ye; 14, yf it; 16, & though I haue bothe theyr hedes I force not; 22, thyng of

you; 23, Lake there / by whose meanes was flayne his owne moder; 25, demaunded; 28, in the presence; 30, I was moche; 31, vnto; 32, My lord; 33, this lady; 34, & wytchecrafte.

**80.** 3, y<sup>e</sup> hafte ye; 21, full rychely buryed her; 22, was in king A.'s courte a knyght that; 24, & he was a proude; 25, best knightes; 27, accounted of more prowesse than he was; 29, kynge A.; 30, wroth with; 33, to kynge A.'s courte; 34, it was; 35, to you.

**81.** 7, her brother; 9, whiche; 10, drawe; scawberd; yf he were; 11, hardy; 14, ye do / fayd Merlyn / wolde to god; neuer; 17, wherfore it fhalle; 18, for there is not lyuynge; 19, lord kyng A.; 20, pyte it is for; 21, and as for; 25, as fast as his hors coude renne; 27, cryed to hym and fayd; 28, wyll not; 29, helpe you; that noyse; 32, am I come; 36, am comen; 37, that ye haue done.

**82.** 2, whiche; 3, of his knyghtes; fymple to me; 7, to me; for one of vs; 8, speres in all hafte they myght; 9, the kynges sone of Irlande; 10, that his spere wente alle to sheuers; 11, smote hym with fuche a myght; 12, and Balyn; 17, rydyng myght galop; 18, than she; 25, to; 26, fast / that in no wyse he myghte take the fwerde; handes; 27, but he; 28, And whan; 30, grete loue / she had vnto fyr Launceor; 34, them; a forest; 35, afpyed the; 38, fayd B.

**83.** 1, wende lytell; 3, pryfonynge; 6, And anone B.; vnto his; 7, all his; 8, how that; 10, full fore; 11, vnto yow; 12, heuy of mynde; kynge A.; 14, the erthe; 15, for kynge; atte the; 18, do so &; 19, Brother fayd B. let; 21, as fast as; 24, [it]; 26, defence; 29, loue and fauour; 31, thou wel; B. that; 36, rydyng whiche was named; 38, by one of the.

**84.** 1, kynge M.; 7, bothe theyr; [How]; 12, in doynge; [in]; 13, vnto; 14, this place; 27, dyd not faue; 29, coude not nor myght; 35, in many.

**85.** 9, for to telle; as at this; 10, fyll euyll; 11, the two; 12, but I; 34, yf he had not; 35, the kynge thus.

**86.** 5-6, what they be; 10, in the spryngynge; [thenne]; 16, vnto; 20, euer was of; 22, beholden; full euyll; 24, knowe or it be longe; 26, vpon; afore dyner; myghty hooft; 30, myghty; for he; mocke; So Nero hymfelfe; 35, he had therof worship.

**87.** 4, had grete meruayle therof; 5, that they; 10, that whyle; 11, through my; 12, is flayne many; yf we; 14, to matche vs; 16, yf kyng L.; 17, and all his people sholde haue ben destroyed and flayne; 18, knewe well that; 22, is it better; 23, the moost party; 24, vpon kynge A.; 25, for he and his men; wery of fyghtynge; 30, worft; 31, dyd grete; 33, abode & withstode; not



uer; 34, was fhold; 36, had wedded; 37, by caufe; [the whiche was Arthur's fyfter].

88. 3, [called]; 5, with his; 8, to; 10, many a; 24, and his tombe ftoode by it felfe aparte; 26, made them to be ouergylte with fyne; fygne and token; euery ymage helde a; 28, them all; 31, fayd to kynge A.; 32, the .xij. tapers; 33, of the holy; 34, fhall alfo be afcheued; tolde vnto kynge A.; 37, fyr P.

89. 1, brother Balan; 2, Now by; 4, ferre of ony; for I am; 5, to god; 7, for as I tolde you ye; as longe as; 9, afterward; 12, flayne; 14, a knyght named; 25, pauylyons dore; 26, grete forowe; 28, amende it; 33, forowe; 35, and gentylnes; that ye wylle; 37, fo rode.

90. 1, my lorde; the caufe of; 4, nedes go; 8, the good knyght B.; 9, there the damoyfell; [euen]; 13, and garde; 14, traytour knyght; the whiche; 15, where as; 16, may beft; therof I; 17, to you by my; 19, vpon; 20, & alfo how y<sup>e</sup> trechery was done by y<sup>e</sup>; 29, for I am; 32, as longe as my; 36, good knyght.

91. 2, to me; 8, to haue gone; 10, came many men; 11, And whan; 12, by caufe he; And than; 13, vp vpon the walles and lepte ouer into; 15, fayd that; 19, fyluer dyffe; 20, that there; 21, but that; 23, her lyfe; 26, all that nyght; 29, fhe dyed; 33, herd one.

92. 7, despyte that; 15, and had; 20, to a; 22, wyll I not; 26, to the; 29, faid y<sup>e</sup>.

93. 10, to hym; for to; 11, arofe vp; 23, folowed hym; 36, kyng P.

94. 13, for that froke turned hym to; 15, neuer mete more; 34, you; 36, to.

95. 11, the two; 30, this entent y<sup>t</sup> it fhold afwage; 32, that ladyes loue.

96. 1, he dressed hym from thens; that he had; 10, And therwith he; 20, [not].

97. 3, in reed; 4, And whan; 7, it fholde not be he; 8, and smote eyther other; 11, fore bryfed; 16, brake his helme; 21, eche other greuoufly; 22, to; 23, reed of theyr blode; 25, smytten eyther other; 26, the world; 33, to; 36, went; 38, bebledde.

98. 7, to the destruccion of vs bothe; 9, the ylle; 20, that place; 21, wepyng chere and fayd; 23, the sacrament and blyffed body; 29, And anone; 32, by the handes of his owne broder; 34, morowe; 35, vpon; [that].

99. 2, alfo a bedde; lye in; 6, Than M.; to handle; 12, this world; 21, and crafte; 33, meruayllouft; 35, euer; 36, as they were.

¶ Here endeth the feconde boke of kynge Arthur.

## Book iij.

¶ Here foloweth the thyrde boke of the noble and worthy prynce kynge Arthur.

100. 1, after y<sup>t</sup>; 6, but kynge A. full well; 8, moche ruled; 14, ony fayre lady; 16, Leodegraunce; Camelyarde; whiche L. holdeth; 18, gentylleft and; 25, pryuely; 32, to; 35, and of; 36, that it.

101. 5, but I lacke fyfty; 6, kynge L.; 12, he made grete ioye for theyr comynge; [and that ryche prefente]; 15, to; 16, pleasaunt; 17, Than in; 19, honourableft; 22, Merlyn made the best spede he myght and founde . xxvij . good knyghtes; coude he fynde; 24 archebyffshop; fente for 25 fyeges of this table rounde; 27, to; 30, in the fyeges; 36, to; 37, muft fo do.

102. 11, [oute]; 25, bothe daye and nyght; that he myght be made; 33, Aryes the.

103. 22, to; 26, to; 27, morowe; 31, kynge P.; 33, the fyrft that.

104. 4, ye be; 5, had; 6, & fayd; vnto; 8, fyr G.; 9, whiche; not do fo; 14, fyr G.; 18, wente vnto; 30, to kyng A.; 35, with hym by force; 36, mone; bycaufe.

106. 3, of the whyte harte; 4, fyr G.; 9, wolde haue folowed; 10, on the other; 22, helme fo harde; 25, fyr G.; 27, chaced; 28, harte that; 30, [drawe].

107. 5, y<sup>e</sup> dombe beeftes; 24, to the; 27, Me repenteth it fore; 28, to haue ftryken at the; 32, But for drede; 33, vpon; 34, behynde hym alfo.

108. 4, well thynke; 5, here aboute; 7, fayd thus; 9, Thou haft alfo; whiche is vnto the grete shame for euermore; 12, fuche a; that he had nygh felled; 15, one of them; 17, wonders; bothe flayne; 21, fyr G.; moone; 24, On the morowe erly came; 25, whiche; 28, whiche wyll; 31, or that; 32, kyng Lots fone of O.; 34, spede for; 38, the heed of the whyte herte.

109. 3, Her heed; 4, mane of his hors; And in this maner he rode forth towarde C.; 5, to y<sup>e</sup> courte; 6, & fo he was . And fhewed how he flewe; 8, to; 9, vylaynoufly flayne; 12, hym euer; 19, [Amen]; 20, and he; 21, forth his waye a good pace after; 22, whiche; 23, more than his spere; 24, In what entent doft thou fmyte my hors; 25, way said the dwarfe; but that thou fhalte fyrft iuste with yonder knyghtes that abyde in yonder paelions that thou feeft; 26, 32 & 33, fyr T.; 30, [alle]; 33, yelded.

110. 2, y<sup>e</sup> myddes; 3, lowe that it went thorough the fyde;

9, to ; that we ; 13, Langdok ; 15, to ; 16, you to gyue ; 19, hors anone ; & come on & ryde with me ; 22, through a foreft ; 24, renewed ; 25, his spere ; 26, foo came ; 27, lye therin on a payllet ; And than he ; 28, [therin] ; 29, And ther ; 30, anone the lady awoke & went ; 32, What wyll ye do ; Wyll ye take away ; 34, to this place ; 36, mette withal or it be longe / and also euyll handled ; abyde it.

111. 2, forth on ; 4, fyr T. ; 5, fuche lodgyng ; 14, and fayd ; 16, and fawe he ; 17, and armed ; 19, and smote eche other y<sup>t</sup> bothe hors and men fel to the erth ; 20, they lyghtly ; 23, & also they brake ; 25, grounde ; and they had bothe ; 28, & made hym fall to the groude ; 33, brachet & the / or els flee the.

112. 3, fyr T. ; 4, this fals ; 6, I am ryght fory and lothe ; whiche I haue graunted you ; 7, make you ; that whiche ; 8, agaynst you . He can not make amendes fayd the damoyfell ; hath slayne ; 9, [afore myn owne eyen] ; whiche was ; 10, than euer he was ; no mercy vpon hym ; in fo moche that I ; 11, whiche ; 13, as knyghtes auenturous do ; and for all that I coude do or faye / he smote of my brothers heed ; 20, for whan ; 30, fyr T. and his hors ; 32, them ; fayd he ; 33, late was ; 36, gentyll ; yf.

113. 3, gladde ; 4, but that his father ; 11, made grete ; 14, full of good ; 15, do outrage ; 22, bytwene ; 24, fake . Kynge P. wold not ; 28, And as ; [there] ; 29, laye there ; 30, with her loues fwerde ; So as ; 31, labouryng man ; 32, kyng P. ; 33, poore man ; 34, moone.

114. 2, nere cofyn ; 5, her frendes ; 6, ye ryde ; 7, them yet ; lady is in the keepyng ; 9, tyll that ; 11, rode he ; 12, fayd to her ; court of ; 14, be two ; 16, owne pleasure ; 17, them in fonder ; 18, why they ; 25, quod kyng P. ; in there all fodeynly as ; 28, you also ; 30, vnto hym ; 31, more for her ; yow bothe ; 33, knyght ; 37, [are] ; fawe ; 38, he was wroth and fyerfly and lyghtly lepte.

115. 1, and in grete haste drewe out ; 5, and therwith he ; 7, had feen ; buffet y<sup>t</sup> the other had ; 12, with a ; 13, kyng P. ; 15, I lacke ; kyng P. ; [but] ; 22, morowe ; and after ; 26, P. kyng of ; 28, man as ye be ; 29, What is now ; kyng P. ; 30, Syr fayd he ; 31, that is in that ; 35, vpon.

116. 1, 3, 4, kyng P. ; 4, gretely welcome there ; 5, also gretely ; 8, [and there] ; 9, wherwith ; 10, and anguyffhe ; of ioynt ; 12, where as ; 17, kyng P. ; 22, frō ; 26, that they ; 35, hath receyued ; 38, towarde Camelot.

117. 2, where ; 4, moone ; 5, I myghte ; 8, kyng P. ; of this lady ; 12, vnto kyng A.'s courte ; 14, and that ; 16, labour and ; 18, where ; 19, with fair ; 20, vpon ; 22, kyng A. ; glad ; 24, all

the ; 25, from the begynnyng vnto the endyng ; the quene ; 27, kyng P. ; 28, fauyng your honour ; 38, very cowarde.

**118.** 7, may well ; 8, all deftenyes ; 9, that fyr G. ; 10, fone vnto ; 14, gaue them landes that ; outrage ; 21, worldly ; ¶ Here endeth the thyrde boke of kyng Arthur and of his weddyng.

### Book iv.

¶ Here foloweth the fourth boke of the noble and worthy prynce kyng Arthur.

**118.** 24, Than after ; 25, and of ; befelle ; 27, courte with hym ; 28, whiche ; hyght Nymue ; 30, her in euery place ; 33, vpon ; vnto kyng ; 34, & that for.

**119.** 2, fwerde Excalybur ; 9, And than ; from kyng A. ; 11, fo euer ; 21, no ; 22, [fame] ; 29, peryll ; 30, And than ; 31, waye as they wente ; 36, put hym awaye.

**120.** 1, whiche ; [grete] ; 2, crafte & ; 6, And than ; and there made ; 13, to kyng A. ; flewe all that they founde afore them ; 14, grete pyte ; 19, who wylle ; 29, hardyer ; 31, fo euer ; 35, tydynges came ; to the.

**121.** 9, or it be day ; 10, fhall fo flee of ; not one ; 12, the ; 15, he and his knyghtes beyng in ; 17, the quene ; Kay ; 21, we are all ; 22, cryed he than ; 23, to kyng A. & fayd to hym ; 31, than for to ; 32, to be ; 34, [euen] ; 38, vndertake two.

**122.** 2, therwith fyr K. ; 4, fadom depe ; 6, [all] ; 8, fell downe ; 9, that he brake his necke ; 11, vpon ; to the fholders ; 14, as longe as I ; [all] ; 15, in Humber ; 16, noble dedes ; 22, kyng A. founde ; 24, let we hold vs ; [and] ; 25, hooft espye ; 26, forowe ; not be able to helpe ; 28, forowe ; 29, downe fro ; [all] ; [but] ; 30, on the right hande and on the lefte ; 33, full mekely ; 34, and she came anone ; 35, for the vyctory of that daungerous batayle.

**123.** 3, and fayd ; 4, haue knowledge ; 7, kyng A. ; 8, not past ; 9, rounde table ; 10, buylde ; 12, call it ; 15, forowe ; And whan ; 18, to ; 20, good knyghtes of the table roude ; 22, best that ; 24, bothe olde ; 26, the other half ; 32, kyng P. ; 34, [best] ; 37, wel worthy fyr Kay the Senefhall.

**124.** 5, all the dayes of ; 6, Now fayd ; 14, & that knowe I full well ; 15, and he ; 16, but he doth ; 20, And whan ; 22, as afore is reherced ; 23, wonders ; 24, was fo ; 25, Courte of kyng A. ; 26, he alyght ; 29, agayne to ; 33, tyll men ; 35, and by.

**125.** 3, moone ; 4, to ; 6, that he ; 10, courte of kyng A. ; And fo ; 12, kyng A. ; 25, harte there ; 26, kyng A. ; aboute hym ;

28, cam frayght ; 29, kyng A. ; 33, by that tyme ; 34, on all ; 35, and gaue ; [all].

**126.** 3, [ryght] ; 6, belonged ; 7, they were ; 9, [as] ; 12, [fuche] ; 14, ryche ; 15, ryght easely ; 16, all that ; 19, was aboute a two ; 20, And also ; 23, Than sayd kyng A. / what ; 27, The lord ; is named ; 32, But that ; 33, his prowesse ; 35, people & comynalte.

**127.** 1, very coward ; 4, do nothyng ; or elles ; 6, is no ; 7, that wyll ; fyr Damas ; 8, that wold ; 9, in a wayte ; to take ; 11, in to ; 16, fyr D. ; 20, [alle] ; 21, not tell ; 22, quod she ; 23, or elles ye shall neuer escape w<sup>t</sup> your lyfe ; 25, yf I may be deluyered with this and alle.

**128.** 1, kynge A. ; 2, this batayle ; 5, fyr A. ; 9, And whan ; 15, And with ; 18, fronge of herte ; to morowe ; 21, defyreth ; 22, haue ; 24, that ; 25, a ryche quene for euer ; 29, Quene Morgan ; 30, done as ; or elles ; 35, hym to.

**129.** 10, moone ; but for all ; 11, in hande ; 12, fyr A. ; 13, fyr O. ; 15, scawberde ; 16, morowe ; 17, in hande ; 18, hertely ; 19, [al] ; 20, to his ; 22, morowe ; kyng A. ; 23, go to ; 24, [and fo Arthur herd a masse] ; on ; 28, of the ; 31, was vp on ; 36, [&].

**130.** 3, theyr sheldes ; [hede] ; 4, grounde ; 5, drewe ; And in y<sup>e</sup> ; 6, thus fyghtyng ; 7, had put ; 11, to do theyr ; 12, fyr A. ; 13, fo that for ; 14, fore that he ; 15, fast frō ; 18, was fore adrad ; 20, fyr A. ; 21, to ; 24, grounde ; 27, bothe wroth ; 29, that he ; 31, a droppe of ; 37, as dyd kyng A.

**131.** 8, fyr Accolon ; brake ; 10, [sure] ; 13, began to faye thus ; 19, my lyfe lafeth ; 22, leuer fo often dye than to yelde me to the / for though I lacke wepen & am wepenles yet shall I ; 24, to thy ; 31, and worthyneffe ; 34, be fo ; 37, [alle] ; 38, and quykly gate.

**132.** 1, [al] ; he aperceyued clerely ; his good ; 4, by fyr Accolons fyde ; 8, to ; 11, and have loft ; 12, vpon ; 15, nose and mouth ; 24, quod ; 26, for than ; 33, fyr A. ; 35, And quene M.

**133.** 2, man whiche she mooft hateth in this ; 3, the mooft ; 4, as her ; 6, with her ; 9, fyr A. ; 11, for to haue ; 12, fyr A. ; 13, the trouthe ; that you wyll ; 14, 16, fyr A. ; 17, O my gracyous lorde ; 18, you not ; 22, blame the ; 24, foo be auenged ; 27, [alle] ; 30, [are] ; 31, to vs bothe ; 35, that there were ; 37, [the] ; full fore.

**134.** 1, that in all y<sup>e</sup> worlde lyueth ; our mooft fouerayne lyege lorde and kynge ; 2, grete myshappe and grete myfaunture ; 3, agaynst my kynge and ; 8, one of my owne knyghtes ; 9, to ; 10, haue ; 14, a very proude ; 15, no thyng worth of ; 17, this maner of fourme ; 20, than on ; 21, no erraūt knyghtes ; 23, kepte in

pryfon ; 24, that thou content them ; 28-29, I wyllle that in all goodly hafte ye come ; to me and to my ; 31, auauunce ; 33, as dooth your ; you of your ; 34, grete goodnes fayd fyr O. and I promyfe you that from hens forth I fhall be at ; 37, whiche ; ryght fore.

**135.** 1, Wolde god ; 5, for to ; 7, fals engyn & treason and ; 8, [euer] ; 10, youre perfone ; 11, fhort fpace ; 14, my felfe ; 16, So than ; 17, on ; 19, furgyens and leches ; 20, dayes after ; 22, So whan ; 23, on horsbacke ; to ; 25, that I ; 27, that kynge ; 29, how he lay ; 30, damoyfell.

**136.** 1, Ewayne ; 2, wakened ; 5, her his ; 6, the fwerde vnto M. ; 7, & fhe ; drewe ; 10, for to ; 15, fayd Morgan haue ; 20, therto I ; 21, fyr A. ; 22, to ; 24, fyr A. ; 27, countenaunce outwarde ; 28, and yf fhe ; 29, faue her lyfe ; 34, quene G.

**137.** 2, the moofte ; 4, Arthur laye ; that he ; 5, answered her and fayd that he had layde hym downe ; 8, tyll I awake hym my felfe ; fro her ; 17, wonders wroth ; and he ; 22, hors that ; 25, And as they rode they ; 27, lady late ; 30, faft after ; 31, of her ; 32, And whan ; 37, fo heuy.

**138.** 2, nedes be ; 3, So anone [with al] ; 9, that he came ; [So] ; 11, wyll / for my brother A. is gone ; 12, my brother fyr A. ; 16, you well ; 17, with a ; 19, that knyght ; what he wolde do ; 21, fayd fhe ; 25, of me ; 35, Tell hym not that . . . but for the loue of ; 37, hym that.

**139.** 6, kynge A. ; to ; 11, to the ; 14, morowe ; 16, in that ; 17, one by another ; 27, vpon ; 32, fayd fhe ; 34, man.

**140.** 2, wonders ; 7, fyr A. ; 11, Ewayne was charged ; 13, cofyn Ewayne ; 18, fyr Gaherys ; 20, tyll they ; 23, vpon two grete horses ; 26, vpon it ; 35, & alfo ; fomme caufe.

**141.** 5, Ewayne ; 6, is lyuyng ; 7, Iuftynge ; 15, vpon ; 21, fyr M. ; 22, [and the hors back] ; 24, fyr M. ; 30, myn here in y<sup>e</sup> ftede ; 31, And than ; 34, feke ; a knyght auenturous.

**142.** 2, to ; 4, in this worlde ; vs two ; fholde matche ; 6, yf he were ; 8, more weyker ; ye are ; 18, two fheldes that ; 20, arofe vpon ; 21, drewe ; 22, drewe ; 26, not accordynge for ; 29, to ; 38, euenfonge tyme ; febled fore.

**143.** 2, waxed than ; 6, I perceyue ; 8, wordes ; 12, Marhaus place ; 13, I merueylle ; 15, nor gentylwomen ; 16, [tho] ; it is the ; 19, wythes and enchaütereffes ; the mooft parte of them ; 20, ony man ; 24, And as y<sup>e</sup> frenffhe book reherfeth ; 26, as fyr L. ; 27, Bors de Gaule ; [fyr Pellias] ; 28, fyue knyghtes ; 29, [lytel] ; 30, [the] ; 32, had [all thre] there.

**144.** 6, So longe they rode tyll they ; 7, and aboue ; 20, [be] ;

[one]; 24, god spare; 27, shall we chofe eueryche; 31, Than fayd; 33, Than fayd.

**145.** 1, them to; 3, monethes; [and]; 4, eche knyght; 9, where as; 12, morowe; 16, moone; 18, to god; 20, to you; 22, to that one; 24, G. fawe x knyghtes; 25, made; 30, & fmote them downe bothe; 31, And whan.

**146.** 4, veryly fayd; and yf that he; 6, that hit; and honour to; 8, wolde be gladde to; 10, me femeth; Ryght thus; 11, that other; 12, on that; of the launde ther; 14, dwarfe whan he came nyghe to the knyght fayd; 19, put it to his iudgemēt; 20, euen fo be it; And than; 21, they two; 22, in to my handes; ye fyr; 24, bytwene; 25, And fo whan the damoyfell was; 33, vnto.

**147.** 1, go our way; 3, they were bothe accorded; 5, demaūded; 7, bothe hand and; 10, euen now more; 11, he is named; 15, and also the; 18, at thofe; 21, but y<sup>t</sup> he; 22, the thre; 25, was there; 31, by caufe; 38, to the worfte.

**148.** 4, somtyme; 6, alle this; [hyt]; 11, nyghte in the mornynge; goo feke; 12, that I can; 23, that grete; 27, moone; and; 31, A my good frende; 32, that ye wyll tell me; 34, and am.

**149.** 2, therfor I praye the; 5, vnto; 6, do suffre; for to take; 8, afore this tyme; I neuer one fayre worde; 10, that euer she may; her knyghtes take me and; 12, for to be; but fo; 13, not take me; 18, to her; 20, haue her loue; 21, [all]; 22, Whan they . . . y<sup>e</sup> one to the other / they chaunged; 27, [in]; Than fyr G.; 31, [foo]; 32, to alyght; 33, [her]; 34, fyr G. told; that his; 35, fyfters.

**150.** 2, for that ye; 3, [to]; may; 16, And than it was; 18, bedde made; 23, agaynst y<sup>e</sup> faythfull promesse that he made to fyr P.; 24, had not; 31, theyr beddes; 33, went; 34, in a; 36, herte almoost; 38, lenger abyde.

**151.** 2, [faste]; 4, thus to; 5, not flee; 6, and left them fleepyng; 9, ony man; might make; 10, to; 11, ftreight to; where as they; 12, grete shame for hym; 13, and than he; 14, forth his; 17, and faythfull feruyce that; 19, I be; 20, [oute]; 21, vnto her; 23, to his; 24, the gretest forowe that euer man herde; 25, And than; the lady E.; wakened out of; 27, that it was; 28, fyr P. also; 29, me y<sup>t</sup>; 36, [his]; 37, moone; caufe of his forowe; 38, Than the; how that.

**152.** 2, wolde; he were; 3, [fayd she]; that he; 5, euyl a; is now or; 6, presumptuous lady; 7, his lorde and mayfter; 8, fo lyenge; 9, had neuer feen; 10, And in the meane whyle; 11, to; that no; 15, [for]; she keft; 16, hym out of meafure; 18, [vnto]; now loue; 19, whiche I tofore moost hated of all men luyng;

This is ; 21, the lady E. ; 23, Go thy waye hens thou ; no more ; 32, fente fuche ; 34, lorde god.

**153.** 5, theyr lyues ; 6, returne ; 11, vnto a ; demaunded ; 12, not herborowe ; treatynge ; 17, fo euer ; 18, and my ; 22, and forthwith he shewed to ; 24, come in ; happen that they ; 25, here in this castell ; 30, how he hyght ; 31, with what man ; 32, said he ; 33, I am borne ; 34, to.

**154.** 1, of all thy ; 2, for to morrow ; 3, with the ; none other ; 6, encountre ; 7, neuer noo ; 9, wolde reuenge the deth of my . vij . fones ; 10, Syr I requyre you sayd fyr M. ; 11, ye ; 14, and vnto ; 17, the ; to thy chambre where thou ; 23, where they ; 30, fones of the duke ; 31, dyd not touche them.

**155.** 3, sayd fyr M. ; 4, Than whan ; 6, vnto fyr ; 7, vnto fyr M. ; 8, [vp] ; 9, by a comyn ; 10, Pentecost ; 11, he to come ; his fyxe ; 16, renomd to haue smytten downe ; 19, dayes ; 20, whose name was called F. ; whiche ; 22, comen to ; 28, sayd fyr M. / vfeth he to ; 30, bere hym he is fo grete ; 33, was ware of hym ; holy tree ; 36, clubbe of yren [in his hande] & came agaynst fyr M. as fast as he myght dryue ; 37, al to peces & lyght on a stone & al to fruffhed it in to y<sup>e</sup> erth & there.

**156.** 3, [in] ; 4, coude not ; 5, [hym] ; 6, he gaue ; many a ; 7, to fall ; in y<sup>e</sup> ; 10, [grete] ; 11, all the ; 12, man after ; 13, gretely thanked ; 19, Ofanna ; 24, whiche ; 28, wherfore ; the pryce was ; 29, and the pryce was a Ierfawcon ; 31, that went with hym ; 32, to a ; [the] ; 33, a full curteys lady.

**157.** 3, fyr Ewayne was ; 4, vnto ; 15, the lady ; foo many ; 16, to ; neyther vpon ; nor ; 17, [no] ; to speke ; 21, vpon your bodyes ; wronge and extorcyon vnto this lady ; the two bretherne ; 24, affygne vs ; playne batayle ; 26, morow ; 28, bothe the ; 32, and after rode ; 34, Than rode they.

**158.** 2, horfe tayle ; and yet brake not his spere ; 6, auoyded fodeynly ; 8, grete strokes ; 9, passynge fore ; 10, that he ; fought they ; 11, enraged and without reafon ; 15, And whan fyr H. sawe that ; 16, vnto ; 19, and fyr H. made grete moone ; 20, vnto her landes ; 24, And than whan it ; 25, [fyr Marhaus and fyre Vwayne] ; 30, And ryght at ; 32, Gawayn had with hym.

**159.** 2, whiche had ; 4, yf that ; 7, vnto kyng A.'s courte ; 9, were all they of the ; 14, than luyng ; 22, had ben flayne in thofe . xij . monethes ; 24, fyr P. ; 25, but that ; 27, fo it is ; Frenfhe boke ; 30, and fire T. was fore ; 35, where as ; 36, to be ; 37, on fyr L.'s fyde . ¶ Thus endeth the fourth boke of this present volume.



## Book v.

¶ Here foloweth the fyfth boke of the noble and worthy prynce kynge Arthur.

160. 1, had rested a whyle after ; 11, vnto ; 13, vnto the ; 16, as it is ; 17, as a ; 22, and thy ; 30, fet vpon ; them for ; 31, vnto.

161. 9, them for to ; 25, in all chrestendom.

162. 3, Yder ; [promysed to brynge] ; 8, y<sup>t</sup> they sholde here theyr ; his noble ; 13, creature nor prynce ; 18, to ; 30, tofore ye ; 35, fo to do ; 36, we do you to wyte ; 37, his chere and ; that ye haue.

163. 1, an other maner man ; 4, his grete ; 5, fawe in our dayes ; 9, and he ; 12, wayes in the ; 15, of his ; Geneweys ; 24, to Turkye ; 27, Than all ; 31, And also he ; 35, mountaynes of Sauoye.

164. 9, concluded that . . . shold be arested ; 20, la beale.

165. 2, in to ; 3, drowned ; 13, was ; 15, to the bore ; 20, a might ; 25, hym to ; 28, your realmes ; whiche ye haue ; 32, ye are ; 33, right horryble.

166. 1, ye ; 2, cōquerour cōfort ; foone after ; 3, Bireflete ; 20, the whiche was full nygh of your blode ; 21, ye ; 22, a valyaunt ; 28, ye fe ; 29, there shall ye not fayle to ; 30, as I ; the realme of F. ; kynge A. ; 32, and called vnto ; 34, and for.

167. 1, them ; 2, them ; theyr ; 4, [euer] ; vnto the forlonge ; 6, and sayd he wold ; [in] ; 7, vp the mounte ; 11, vnto whome ; 16, deed [the] ; 17, vnto ; 18, [duc] ; 20, from the grete ; 22, sayd the wydowe ; nought by ; 25, hath ouer comen &.

168. 4, [murthred] ; 6, handes ; Than anone ; 11, with grete anguyfhe threwe ; clubbe of yren ; 12, thre damoyfels ; 13, vnto our lorde Ihesu Chryft ; of the noble kynge A. ; 14, was one ; 15, whyle aboue ; 17, [euer] ; fo tombeled & weltred ; 18, vnto ; 19, y<sup>t</sup> kepte ; 27, and also the grete ; take it to you ; 28, fo that I haue his ; 33, vnto.

169. 1, vpon ; 2, morowe after the noble kynge A. ; grete hooft ; 3, countye of ; [and] ; 4, paulyons ; 7, parte therof ; 8, made a ; 11, kynge A. ; 13, to L. the Emperour ; [ye] ; 17, on horfbacke ; 18, pyght in a medowe many ; 20, towarde whiche paulyon ; 25, or elles ; 27, [ye] ; 28, fore an angred ; 34, was fyr G.

170. 1, drewe ; 2, And anone ; 6, & than ; 8, starke dede on the grounde ; came there ; 12, grounde ; 15, came vnto ; 16, vnto ; downe right ; 25, drewe ; 30, passyng grete ; & oure ; 31, vnto ; 32, and hurte ; 34, vnto.

171. 6, fame nyghte ; 7, morowe ; 8, Launcelot and fyr Cador /

with ; 13, thre score thoufande ; 15, fyr L. ; 23, goodly araye ; 24, manfully ; detrenched ; 26, [of the party] ; farafyns partye ; 29, where fo euer ; 30, & his myght ; 33, flyght that ; 34, apparayled ; 35, how his knyghtes.

**172.** 3, [fauf my felf] ; 4, knyghtes as I haue ; fyr C. ; 7, this daye ; 14, fyr L. ; 16, of the noble kynge A. and of ; 18, Senatoure that ; 20, [for] ; 24, [for] ; 26, Than anone ; 27, afore ; 28, haftely folowe ; Than was kynge A. pryuely warned ; 30, kynge A. ; 34, the noble.

**173.** 1, Soyffons ; 2, baners ; 3, and fawe that he was befette ; 5, to ; 9, And he therwith commaüded ; 13, men were ; 14, [apper-tyces] feates of warre ; 17, in all efpecyall of them ; in to ; 18, he hymfelfe ; 19, as it ; 20, his good ; [as] ; 23, there he ; 24, meruay- lous quantite ; 27, heed / & the body flewe . vj . farafyns in the fallynge downe ; 28, [fo dyd] ; 29, table dyd full nobly ; batayle endured long ; 31, that ; 32, oftentymes ; 33, longe fo ; 34, and at the ; [themperour] ; 37, ouerthwart.

**174.** 2, his helme ; 3, he his ; 4, Than whan ; 8, vnto the noble conquerour ; 9, [& the trumphe] ; 13, thofe that ; caufed ; 14, to ferche ; all theyr ; 18, & the kyng of Etyope ; 19, dyuers other ; 20, thre fcore ; 21, noble kynge A. ; 22, aromatyke gommes ; he dyd ; thre fcore folde ; 23, & than ; 25, bodyes were fette ; 27, that were ; vnto ; 33, of me ony ; that you ; 34, vnto ; 35, vnto.

**175.** 1, fhold fuffyfe ; 4, nor afke of me ne of my landes ony trybute ; 7, Lucius lyenge ; 14, [no] ; 16, feynge ; 18, to ; 20, Brabande ; 11, hye Almayn ; 23, maner wyfe ; 24, the noble ; full longe ; 27, tolde hym ; 31, Wycharde ; 32, and alfo ; 33, ye may gete there.

**176.** 3, on the nexte morowe ; 4, aduentures ; 5, knight armed ; 6, vnto ; 7, faue onely ; 11, vnto ; from whens [that] ; 23, drewe ; 25, fmote hym ; 28, Than that ; 31, bled faft ; 32, thy blode ; 34, all the leches.

**177.** 1, fyr G. ; 5, I wyll ; 9, fyr G. ; 16, Alexandrye ; 17, the lord ; 24, arte / & of thy beinge ; fyr G. ; 25, pr̄yce kynge ; 26, for to ; 27, At Chryftmasfe ; 33, knyght or knaue ; [thou] ; 34, tell the trouth ; 35, noble courte ; 37, his owne ; 38, fortunèd & comen.

**178.** 2, than yf ; 3, prouynce of Parys ; 4, fholde haue ; 7, and hath ; of armes of all D. ; 9, to the nombre of thre score thoufande ; men of warre ; 10, flee & hye vs faft fro hens ; wyll do ; to vs ; 11, he blowe no ; 12, here faft ; 13, vpon ; the ones ; 14, nor ; 15, hymfelfe ; 16, after hym ; fo they ; 17, that ; where as ; 20, who it was that had fo hurte & wounded hym ; fyr G. ; 26, hote blood ranne downe ; 32, [vnto] ; 34, many a thoufand ; 35, fayd fyr.

179. 9, with them; 14, lepyng; 15, wherfore he; 20, vpon the colde; 23, grete; 27, toward them; 30, many a; 34, fyerfly with.

180. 1, And than; 3, gyue backe & flee; 4, well my; 6, a gyaunt named I.; 14, quytte them fo well; 15, [and ward]; 16, flayne of fyr G.; 23, hym theyr; and tolde to hym; 26, [noble]; 28, fyr G.; 30, he ben; 34, by his; 36, do make.

181. 3, the kyng [Arthur] and requyryng; 7, ne none of your damoyfelles; 13, [for]; 19, [there] a; femed it was mooft best; 22, fo wanne; & after they wanne; 23, kyng A.; 24, vpon; by the; 25, wonne & goten; fent a cōmaundement; 27, through & came to the; and there; 28, in heuynesse; a knyght of his owne coundree to be capytayne; 29, the foresayd; 30, vnto kyng A.; 31, vpon them; 32, his true; 33, and of Pauye; 34, Than king A. rode; 35, there he wanne; 36, all that he foude; wolde; as fo went to; 38, of Rome; for to.

182. 1, lord & chefe gouernour or not; vpon; 3, whiche at that tyme; within the Cite of; 4, and they all; largely goodes; 5, they all; 6, Barony of the R.; 7, hym as; holy creme; to fuche an hygh and noble estate; 8, vnto you fayd kyng A.; 10, there as; 11, crownacyon; 12, the Romayns tell; there he was; 13, solempnyte; 14, certayne tyme; 15, vnto F.; he gaue; 16, deseruyng; 17, none of them; neyther ryche nor; 18, vnto; 19, that he; and be his true subgette al the; 20, that he made; and cōfytued his men vnto grete rycheffe and honour; 21, and all the grete men of estate; togyder afore the tryumphaut conquerour kyng A.; 22, Noble Emperour blyffed be the eternall god; mortal warre; is all; 23, conquest is; 24, make ony; 25, and hertely praye your noble grace; and also we praye you to gyue; for to; 26, a longe feafon; 27, for to; with grete; 28, kyng A. vnto them; 30, was there; 31, of other baggage & had; 32, kyng A. returned; 33, [not]; [ne take] by the waye neyther take vytayle ne none; 34, truly paye; 36, [his wyf]; with hym.

¶ Thus endeth the fyfth boke of the conquest that kyng Arthur had agaynst Lucius the Emperour of Rome ¶ And here foloweth the fyxth boke whiche speketh of fyr Launcelot du lake.

## Book vi.

¶ Here foloweth the fyxth boke of the noble and worthy prynce kyng Arthur.

183. 1, Anone; the noble and worthy; 2, [thenne]; 4, [but];

good knyghtes; 10, [other]; 13, wherfore he is; 14, after that; 16, certaynly; 17, ladyes and; all the dayes of his lyfe; 18, grete; 19, a longe whyle; 21, his brother fyr L.; 22, [for]; 23, vpon; all poyntes; 24, a grete playne; 28, vs &; 29, for of all this feuen yere; 30, there &; 32, layde his.

**184.** 1, flepte; 4, after those thre; 5, behelde; that he had neuer seen; 7, at all poyntes; 8, these thre knyghtes that fledde; [he]; 9, downe to; groūde; 10, suche a stroke; hors and man; 11, vnto the erthe; than he rode; vnto; 12, more than the length of a spere; 13, and reyned; 15, And whan; 17, [for]; his brother fyr; And fo; 18, and had ouertakē; [&]; 20, and than he; [doun]; 23, he vnarmed them; 29, that was; 31, which; 32, [by]; 36, hangeth; that belōged; vnto.

**185.** 1, ende of; 3, ony knyght had; 4, and fo he; 8, and there he; 9, brother fyr L.; And anone; bete vpon; 11, Anon there; 13, & fewtred his; 17, and caught; 18, and fo; [owne]; 23, all y<sup>e</sup> dayes of; 26, he toke; [garte to] vnarmed hym; sharpe thornes; 27, and after; in to; 31, a flepe; 32, whan I went frō; 35, fyr T.

**186.** 3, heet of y<sup>e</sup> fonne; 6, canape of; 9, and than; 12, [for] to; eche of them fayd she; 13, vnto; 23, colde chambre; 28, fayd the damoyfell; 31, [fayre damoyfel]; 33, ony perfone.

**187.** 1, that ye are; 2, that is now; 6, is also; 8, ye one; ye wyll; 9, vnto your; yf ye wyll not do thus / here shall ye abyde; 10, tyll that ye dye; 13, be ye; 14, haue none; 16, vpon; 17, lyuyng vnto; 21, [the]; to; that brought hym his; 23, in all; 24, fayd she; 27, am aferde; quenes wytyches; 30, that your; 31, of all the; that ben lyuyng; 33, me for to.

**188.** 1, laft past; 3, yf ye; vpon; 4, morowe; 7, 11, fayd the damoyfell; 14, [be she that shall]; 15, and there; to abyde me; 20, and arayed; 21, vnto his; 24, & in no wyfe; 25, ony hyghe; 29, and fo; 30, and founde there; 31, [fadly]; 32, [there]; 33, belonged the.

**189.** 2, lyghtly out; 3, lepte after; 6, flade; 7, And fyr L. toke hym to his mercy; 10, my loue & lady; 12, fyr L.; was fore; 13, lately; 17, [al]; whiche; 18, fyr B.; 19, fo fore; 20, moone; 21, fyr B.; a very; 23, he goodly; and toke me to his mercy; 25, you; are; 28, often tymes; 30, fyr B.; 36, all my; yf ye; or myghty of; 37, than ye; 38, stode thus talkyng; daye appered.

**190.** 2, shewed hym; towarde the; 4, As foone; 5, kyng B. doughter; 6, than she; wente; 7, that it was fyr L.; 8, hastely; [from hym]; [lete]; 10, there he; 11, fyr L.; 12, that was; 16, fro his hors; he wente; 22, wyft; whether; 23, wherfore shall

whyle; 24, frendes & kynrede; 25, now on; 26, vnto my; 30, that foule fared with; 32, [here]; 34, trust best; 35, payntyng.

**191.** 2, fo I fhall; 7, and [to]; 21, with that falle; 23, A.'s courte; 26, out of ioynte; fyr M.; 29, his spere; 31, helme pyght; 34, [grete]; fyr L.; all y<sup>e</sup>; 35, all to brake.

**192.** 1, drewe out; 2, gaue eche other; 4, nose and his mouth; on bledynge; and his eeres also; 5, [therwith] his hors; 10, he was hytte; 14, [there]; 18, they promysed; 20, kyng B.; goo feke; 24, knowlege therof; 27, with a; 30, fayd the; 32, as for; 33, fayd the damoyfell; a ryght; 35, as the best knyght is; 36, name is; and of what courte and.

**193.** 2, that I; 6, done this; 8, and [to]; [dayly]; 9, and defyre damoyfel; 10, to; 12, and vnto; wheron the bacyn henge; 14, ende of; and with suche a myght that he made the bottom fall out; 16, well nygh; 21, fyr G.'s; 26, the better in his; 31, from the; 32, and than; strength togyder; 33, and shewed me; 35, the now shortly; fyr T.

**194.** 1, in theyr; 2, as it was poffyble for them to ren; 3, in the; 4, wherof y<sup>e</sup>; 8, grete strokes; 9, holde theyr dyntes; 12, [Thenne]; were bothe; 15, Saye on fayd fyr Launcelot; 16, art fayd fir T.; 17, one a; 18, fo y<sup>t</sup> thou be not he; 21, neuer [to]; [that]; 24, Truly; 26, whiche was; 27, than lyuyng; 28, for and; 29, of an other; to that I; 31, haue vtterly; after myght; 33, I haue.

**195\*.** 1, [that]; be bytwene; 4, [very]; table round; [and]; 6, was ony; 7, And than hurtled; 13, besperpled; 15, [a]; full lowe; 16, That soone; 17, as a lyon; & fo he; 18, and than he; afonder; 20, than he went; 22, take ye . . . fayd the damoyfell; ye this; 23, to go & delyuer; 24, And fo; fyr G.; 25, lende; 26, fyr G.; 30, excepte your selfe; 34, [owne]; [that].

**196\*.** 1, fyr Kays; 6, fay to them that; 8, [that]; 9, hygh feeft; I thynke to be; 11, went; 12, [ther]; 13, And forthwith; porter agaynst; 14, that his eyen starte out of his heed; [hastely he]; 15, [dore]; 16, eueryche; 18, bycause he was wounded that he had slayne fyr Turquyne; fyr G.; fyr L.; 20, well all; 22, fyr E.; 28, [euer] belonged; 29, [fatte]; 31, one good; 34, for to.

**197.** 7, to his; 8, yourselfe alone before; 11, damoyfell; 13, [oute]; 22, longe haft; 24, as T.; 27, du forest; 29, fayd she; 30, go or ryde; 32, But fyr; that ye.

**198.** 1, this countree; 3, what fo euer; But to be; 4, neuer to be / for yf I were than shold I be boude to tary w<sup>t</sup> my wyfe; 9, in y<sup>e</sup> warres; 10, Or els; 14, rode he; 15, in to; 16, grete longe;

21, a myghty ; 22, full of pynnes of yren ; 23, vnto the nauyll ; 25, [men and wymmen] ; 28, wente strayght.

**199.** 6, of that ; froke ; 7, fyr L. ; ran after ; as fast as he myght ; 8, to the foundement ; 14, [knyzte] ; 15, thou were ; dede of worship ; 16, ony knyght dyd ; and therof ; 19, sayd he ; [fyr] 20, [al] ; 21, no knyght ; 23, theyr lyues / & alfo many ; 27, in to ; 29, is the ; 30, as his ryght and appertenance ; 32, & after V.

**200.** 2, it happened hym ; 4, with a ; 5, he & his hors were well chered ; 12, that came ; 13, vpon ; with theyr ; 14, hymselfe ; 16, I fholde be ; 25, and therefore ; 27, [for] ; 35, were we ; 38, fyr L.

**201.** 1, or els not ; 2, sayd they / than ; 3, as ye ; 4, vpon ; 7, for to be ; 9, knyght fwoore vpon theyr ; 12, fo in ; 15, chambre wyndowe for to ; 16, in the ; 19, sayd he ; haue done ; that I ; [for] ; 21, [shall ye repose yow] ; ye take your rest ; 22, and anone there ; brought hym ; 24, morowe ; 31, kynge A.'s courte.

**202.** 1, had longe ; 13, whose name ; 14, [that] ; 23, on the ; one to another ; 29, ynough ado to ; 30, [euer] ; 32, Anone they ; 37, my herte ryfeth.

**203.** 3, myght ; 7, whiche ful ; 11, at the ; 19, fo that we ; 20, well ye ; 25, and the thre.

**204.** 2, [bothe] ; 3, sayd fyr Ector ; 11, [al] ; 14, [that he was afonyed] that of a grete whyle ; 15, I wel fe ; 16, and fo he ; 19, horfes ren as fast as ; 20, theyr sheldes ; brake ; 27, [al] ; 30, of grete ; my lyfe ; 34, Now let vs speke of.

**205.** 9, in to y<sup>e</sup> myddes ; 21, [called] ; 25, that knewe ; 26, w<sup>t</sup> a loude voyce ; 27, you of your ; to helpe ; 29, fought he ; 32, tyl that.

**206.** 1, logres ; 4, [euen] ; 6, hyther ; yf you ; 10, to a lytell ; 14, sawe ftande by h<sup>y</sup>. xxx. ; 16, grynnded ; 17, them fore ; 18, redy to do ; 21, through them ; 25, couerd w<sup>t</sup> ; 28, wherof he was aferde ; 30, As soone as he was ; 35, Therwith ; [out].

**207.** 3, I wyll not leue it ; 4, ye dyd leue ; 6, fyr L. ; 8, [me] ; 10, sayd she ; 13, whiche there lyeth ; 14, fyr G. the bastardes lyfte hand ; 15, that I ; 18, body alyue ; 19, haue had ; I wolde ; 24, [foo] ; 27, Nigramus ; 30, to ; 31, fyr M. laye ; [And] ; 32, [paf-fynge] ; [the] ; 35, went vnto ; 38, a holer ; was there.

**208.** 3, to kynge A.'s courte ; 7, [And] ; 10, two lytell ; 11, y<sup>t</sup> came ; 13, [aboute] ; 14, as she wold ; henge fast ; 16, In the meane ; 18, of y<sup>e</sup> worlde ; 20, flypte awaye ; 21, knowe it ; 23, to y<sup>e</sup> ; 24, [wel] ; lady sayd fyr L. ; 26, that I may ; 32, clymmed ; 33, rotten braūche ; doune with the braūche ; 34, with her.

**209.** 1, [and] ; 2, fyr L. ; 3, wolde haue the ; 5, [but] as I

commaunded her sayd fyr Phelot; 7, [vnto the]; that an armed . . . shold; 11, other wyse; 15, the therfro; 16, euer ony; 17, loked aboue; 18, [ther with]; 19, body of y<sup>e</sup> tree; 25, Than fyr L.; 32, coudé; 33, [foo]; 34, And as foone as; 35, thens & thanked; oure lord god.

210. 1, [out]; 2, many other wayes; 8, why wylte; to; 11, [two]; 16, tofore god; there; 18, named; 19, to kepe me; 21, fyr L.; 23, & the lady; 24, other fyde; but that y<sup>e</sup>; 25, [fyre]; 26, rydyng after vs; [foo]; 28, ftroke; 30, [he sayd and]; 32, from his; drewe; 33, [al]; caught fyr L.; 36, wyll not; 38, fyr L.

211. 1, in my; 3, neuer doo; 6, vnto; 7, fyr L.; 8, me thy name; 9, fyr L.; 13, a fore; for fyr L.; 14, [many]; 21, and as the freuffhe boke sayth; 22, to; 28, full glad of; 30, fyr K.; 33, now and than; 34, had taken.

212. 6, when he was in daüger to haue ben slayne; 11, Than anone; [ther] came; 16, they vnderstode; Than fyr M.; 18, all the; 20, by y<sup>e</sup> daughter of; 22, [for]; 24, Gahalatyne tolde; 25, they thre; [fame]; 26, [that]; 30, bothe of. ¶ Thus endeth the, etc. ¶ Here after foloweth the story; whiche was called, etc.

### Book vii.

¶ Here foloweth the feuenth boke of the noble and worthy prynce kyng Arthur.

213. 1, plenare; 3, folempne & hygh; 6, had euer; 7, all other hygh; 9, some grete aduenture or; 11, before; 17, at [the]; 19, faue thofe; 20, an encountre; 22, accomplifshed; 25, [al]; 29, fcyllence & roume; 30, went; 31, bygge yonge; drewe; 32, to kyng; 33, blyffe you; 35, for to; [and requyre you]; 37, to me.

214. 1, ne loffe; And as for the fyrst gyfte; 2, this fame; 3, that ye; 4, your petycyon; 5, sayd he / this; 6, to me; these; 11, conceyte; 12, sayd he / as for that be it may be; 15, nor my; I wolde fayne knowe; 16, That haue I meruayle of; 17, thy owne; one of the; 18, [one]; noble kyng A.; vnto the stewarde fyr K.; 21, haue; 24, had ben comen; 25, and harneys; [fo] he hath asked; 27, that is to faye; 30, men that had brought hym; 37, fyr B.

215. 3, [& brothe vpon]; 4, brought vp & fostred; 15, nerer; 16, [as] fyr L.; 18, euery nyght; 19, alle thofe; 21, knewe of ony; 24, where as were; 25, y<sup>e</sup> barre ne; 27, Pentecoft; 29, yerely he; 30, on; 31, had herde of; And than came; 34, came in; 35, [in to the halle].

**216.** 1, that here in your courte ; 3, What call ye ; 5, fayd she ; not be knowen ; 16, that bē here ; 18, Than with thefe ; 26, fyr L. ; 34, that his hors.

**217.** 2, [as] ; 3, of fyr ; 4, hym that ; [al] openly ; 9, of the kechyn ; for to ; 11, fayd / yet ; 14, what fyr B. ; 15, that it ; 19, to hym ; 21, the spere ; 28, [they] ; 30, to auoyde his ; 31, put his.

**218.** 9, the vttermest ; 13, [fo] ; 19, I fhall tell you ; 21, fayd he ; 23, fir L. ; now more ; 25, nor drynke ; 27, go on his iourney ; 31, alfo fyr L. ; that it ; 32, what kynne ; 33, vnto.

**219.** 1, haft gotten in ; 3, haft flayne ; 6, waffher of dyffhes ; 7, fyr B. ; ye lyft ; 9, of kyng ; [fo] ; 10, or I fhall ; 14, So as they thus ; 15, [euer] ; 20, as the knyghte was bounden ; 21, vnto the theues one at the fyrft froke ; 25, & than ; 29, fyr B. ; 30, of the ; 35, done is but.

**220.** 2, tofore ; 3, for to ; 5, of her ; 9, morowe ; 18, [vpon other] ; 19, eche at other egrely ; 21, in to ; [he] ; 22, vnto the lande ; 30, knightes hors ; 32, and myght ; 33, shamefully.

**221.** 4, fayre language ; 7, for yf thou ; 10, that ye ; 11, So thus ; 12, the chode ; 16, by it ; 18, Whan the damoyfell fawe ; the blacke knyght ; 20, the valey ; I thanke you ; 22, came to the damoyfell and fayd ; 25, has ben fedde ; 26, Wherfore cometh he in ; 29, wold god that ye wold ; or elles ; yf ; 31, to daye ; for I ; 34, the whiche is ; 35, Syr they ; 36, [for] ; [that].

**222.** 1, well be ; 2, neuertheleffe how ; [as] ; he is ; 5, his fete ; 6, his harneys ; 14, fro the lyghtly ; not a ; 16, thou arte ; 17, vpon ; 19, fyr B. ; 21, facke ; 23, fyr B. ; 25, in a ; 26, dyed forthwith ; And whan fyr B. ; 27, [thenne] ; 29, nyghe her ; to hym . Awaye ; 30, go oute ; 32, as thou haft flayne ; 33, through thyn ; is a knyght that ; 34, flee backe ; 35, fyr B. ; 36, away for hym ; 37, wyll flee me.

**223.** 2, than thus to rebuke me aldaye ; 3, I fele ; 4, or truly ; 7, dryuynge ; 9, of her ; 10, fayd she ; 14, [that] ; 17, fyr B. ; 20, notes ; 21, that lightly ; 24, anone they ; out their ; 26, fyr B.'s hors ; 28, groūde ; lightly auoyded ; 29, his fete ; fyr B. ; 30, [al] ; 31, champyons ; bledde fore ; 33, why flāde ; 35, for to fe ; fuche a ftynkynge boye [fo] ; a valyaunt.

**224.** 1, [the wede ouer grewe the corne] ; The grene knyght herynge thefe wordes was afhamed / & incōtynent he gauē fyr B. a myghty froke ; 3, through out ; fyr B. ; 4, of the damoyfels language ; 6, fyr B. threwe hym downe ; 7, And incontyent ; 8, fyr B. mercy ; 9, graunte hym his lyfe ; 10, fyr B. ; 11, whiche is comen ; 12, haue flayne ; [falle] ; 13, thou kechyn page ; 15, fyr B. ; 17, my lyfe ; O fayre ; 23, [the] not ; 26, for yf ; 35, grete nede ; I am fore adradde ; 37, morowe.



**225.** 1, vnto; 2, alwayes the damoyfell; 3, [as]; 4, and fet hym at a; Me thynketh meruayle; 5, why that; 16, went vnto theyr rest; 18, fyr B.; 19, morowe; 24, commaüdemēt; 25, and where fo euer; 26, fyr B.; and whan I; 27, [that]; 31, Than departed; 34, the yet / and flee away.

**226.** 5, thou shalte; thou; 12, in pauylons & vpon skaffoldes; 13, at that castell; 14, and there he fawe; a page and; 17, fo anone he armed hym / and toke his hors hastely; 18, whiche was all reed; 19, belonged vnto hym; 20, [that]; nyghe fyr B.; 22, here is; 23, not your brother; whiche has ben; 26, vnhappy knaue; flayne your; 27, and [this]; 28, fawe hym ouercome; 29, with his owne; 30, I can not be; 31, And with this; bothe the; 34, to other; 35, as now here; and; 37, the damoyfell cryed out.

**227.** 4, fyr B.; wonders fore fo; 5, and grete meruayle it was to beholde; 8, vnto the; 9, [with me]; 17, thanke ye now; 18, all that; 19, And fo; [thenne]; 21, fyr B.; 24, morowe; 25, [dyned] brake theyr faste; fyr B.; 28, fyr B.; 32, fyr B. and the damoyfel departed.

**228.** 1, fyr B.; 8, you to wyte; 9, yf I; 11, mete with the; 12, man of moost; in y<sup>e</sup>; 13, it well; 14, it be; 15, within a whyle they; before; a fayre cite; 18, goodly to; 19, is fuche / that whan; 20, he lyeth; for to; 21, and all gentylmen; 23, or thynke; fyr B.; 26, there he; 27, [there]; 28, bothe men; 34, fyr B.; 36, for yf.

**229.** 1, fayle hym; 3, sayd fir B.; 8, I well; 11, myle hens; 13, or domage; 15, that this; nor of; 16, hath layde; 18, this good; 19, it were grete fhamme to me yf I withdrewe me now; 24, I haue meruayle; of man; 26, for more fouler nor more; 27, rule nor rebuke; 34, batayles; 37, [it].

**230.** 3, you or; 4, sayd she; 6, sayd fyr B.; 7, as ye ought to; 8, fyr B.; speke thus; 9, fayre to me; gretely myne herte; 13, to knowe whether; 14, vnto; fyr B.; 17, wel sayd he / than; 18, vttermest; 19, And whan fyr B.; 20, all the myght that; [euer]; brake; 24, gaue eche other; 25, they fo; fell bothe; 27, many places; 31, [though hym lothe were] fyr B. [aboue]; ouerthwarte vpon hym; 33, for to.

**231.** 1, knowe well; knyghte my broder; 6, these knyghtes; 34, morowe.

**232.** 1, On the morowe; 3, fyr P.; awaye; 4, sayd she; 5, fyr P.; 6, laundes; 9, fyr B.; 12, lady is; 20, And for this cause he taryeth; 25, fyr B.; 31, fyr L.

**233.** 3, fyr B., haue a good; [and]; 4 cam of; 8 [thenne]; 9, fyr G.; 13, knoweth not; 15, and brought a; 17, lady dame Lyones; 20, the lady; 23, du lake was; 26, sayd he; 27, shold

do; 28, fayd the lady; were stronge; 29, de brewse & that; 30 was called.

**234.** 1, [to fore]; 2, erth; 6, here befyde; and thyder; 11, & whan thou haft thus done / go to; 13, [to] drynke; 17, & good courage; 19, none other thyng; 25, waye; betoke; 26, vnto; 34, [but]; 36, and fyr G.

**235.** 6, in scorne; 7, not for hym; reed knight; 8, and yf fo be that I; 12, we of; 13, fyr B.; 14, on the; there a masse; 16, vnto a; 17, as were; 23, henge shamefully nyghe; [ful]; 27, vnto this; 32, fyr B.; 33, I thus.

**236.** 1, [for]; for in; 5, fyr B.; 9, vnto the; 10, stronge walles; 12, bette vpon; 18, vnto hym; 19, batayle with hym; 21, whiche as; 25, wyll I worfhipfully wynne; 26, vnto; 27, fo egrely; 28, knyghtes lepte there out; 30, that were.

**237.** 2, mery and; 5, fyr B.; 7, fayd he; [for]; 9, glad chere; 11, grounde; her; 15, fyr B.; 17, it is a grete; 18, for yf; 21, company; 23, els dye in the quarell; 25, yonder grete elmes; Fye fye for; fyr B.; 26, and fuche shamefulnes; 27, & the ordre of; 28, thy detestable; 30, me and make me agast; 32, And yf; thou be; 33, all the myght they had.

**238.** 1, in the; 3, bothe to the groude; with the reynes; 7, that the; 10, they lyghtly; 13, reled bothe; 18, wolde not; 19, bothe wynde; stakerynge; pantyng; 20, fo that; 21, and whā; 22, went; 23, [at]; 24, two wylde; [fometyme]; 25, grounde grouelynge; at; 26, of theyr owne; 28, lykelyeft; 29, fore hewen; 33, but full fore he bought or espyed; 35, eche other; a whyle.

**239.** 4, for them to; it on; 6, vnto the; 8, and ioyfull; 9, he sterte vp fodeynly and badde; [of the reed laundes]; redy to doo; 11, the reed; 12, fyerfly; 16, on; fell downe; 18, damoyfel; 20, fo that; And whan; 21, arofe vp; 23, caught; 24, togyder a newe; 26, out of the reed knyghtes; 28, groude; 29, for to; and than the reed; 32, hanged fo; 34, fo many; 35, [ful]; 36, ye your.

**240.** 2, [els]; that as; 4, vnto the tyme that I had; 8, alle this; 13, prayed fyr B.; 14, [to your]; 16, all fayd; better to take homage; 18, [for]; for by; 20, al y<sup>t</sup> be here; 22, fyr B.; 24, as al; 25, [that he] &; 28, that he; 31, he aske; 32, that he hath had; 35, And than whan.

**241.** 2, damoyfel L.; vnto; 5, and fo; 9, in the lady Lyones grace; 16, to the; 18, a full noble; 29, whiche; 32, hym at al poyntes.

**242.** 2, entre in; 6, in armes worfhipfully; 9, this / that ye;

[and]; 10, haue had; 11, and kyndnes; that I haue; 18, and honour; and also; 19, be / soone gone; you me; 20, vnto you; shall neuer; 21, vnto; 23, moone & forowe; 24, whether he rode; 27, coude haue no; 28, so on the; 29, and his armure and rode tyll it was noone; 30, vnto a; 34, fyr B.; 37, haue hym in a wayte.

**243.** 2, haue your watche; wyfe ye; 3, from hym; [ye]; 5, that the dwarfe; 6, name is; 8, this dwarf; 9, to your; 10, [that]; 11, name is; or els I shall; 13, as ye haue defyred; 14, departed and rode bothe daye and; 15, flepyng by a water fyde; and had layde; 16, [for to flepe]; fawe y<sup>t</sup>; 18, toke hym; 20, armure and alle that to hym belonged; was; 22, of helpe; 23, therwithall; fyr B. awoke; 24, fyr G.; 31, nexte waye.

**244.** 2, and a; 3, the poore; passed by me; a knyght that is called; 5, but I couſeyle you that ye folowe hym not; 7, within these two; & therefore; after hym; 8, to hym; Leue we now to speke of; 10, of the; 12, was borne; 13, that he was; [yf]; me the trouthe; 14, for euer; 17, vnto; 18, vnto the; [of]; 19, [and] now; 20, now I praye; agayne vnto; 21, tyll he; 23, or [that]; you moche; 29, in hym; 30, a curteis and mylde man / the; 31, well faye; 33, as I haue reuyled hym; 35, fyr B.; [in]; 37, sayeng thou.

**245.** 10, not he; 15, aboue all other knyghtes; 16, wold I; 19, [ryght]; 21, agaynst your persone; owne will; 23, here in this; I than; 28, down from his hors; 29, many euyll; 31, and there was fyr G.'s wyfe.

**246.** 1, there came forth in to the hall; 5, tyme thought in hymselfe . Ihesu wolde to god; 6, she is; 7, bothe of; 9, his vnderstandynge; 10, went to; 12, fyr G. espyed; [thenne]; 15, that he; 17, to hym; ye be; 18, bestowed; 28, sholde not lyue; 29, to my; 34, my lorde kyng A.; 36, be gretely; 38, vnto [the].

**247.** 2, faythfully to; neuer none; 3, And than; 6, how that; 10, damoyfel L. whiche; 12, plyght theyr trouthe vnto; 19, was knowen; 22, in that thyng / as that; 26, entent; the one with the other; tyll; 27, [At]; 29, to his; sayd he; 35, And anone he; 36, [there he]; 37, comynge towarde hym; a grete lyght.

**248.** 3, a grymme; 5, fwerde in his; went; 8, the fame; 9, [al]; 11, to the erth; fyr G. lepte; 12, and quykly; [fro the body]; 13, stande on his fete; [foo]; 15, And than; 16, Than came he; fawe that; 18, dyshonoured; 19, vnto his fyfter dame Lyones; 20, so fore; sayd dame L.; 22, [my]; 23, I am not afhamed; 25, [it]; fyr G. also; 26, ne by my; 27, is done; And than anone; 29, with [al]; 30, heed of the deed knyght; 32, heed stode; 33, it was;

it was afore; 34, the fame knyght; [vp]; 35, ledde hym; with her.

**249.** 2, the damoyfell L.; 3, and also to; 7, that at the; 8, [that]; 11, she hadde; 15, armed anone; and than; 17, to the; 18, strayed so hymself; [soo]; 19, brafte out; 24, and whan he had thus done; 25, And whan he was; 27, so loude; 28, herd her; 30, but the grete; 31, [there] no tongue may; 32, as though she; 33, the damoyfel; 34, gobbettes.

**250.** 1, whiche ye; 2, fayd the damoyfell L.; done; auowe it; 3, for your; 4, for vs; 5, man on lyue; 7, Now leue; 11, and they all yelded; And after; 14, vnto the other two; 15, & they all; [and]; 16, fyr P.; 24, [Soo]; kyng A.; 27, [with hym]; 29, What is your wyll; 30, fayd he; I am called; 32, ye shall wyte; 33, whiche is; 35, [that euer had the better of me]; 36, and he charged and; vnto your grace and wyll.

**251.** 3, as moche as lyeth; 6, [And as to the]; 8, [And]; 9, rounde table; 11, [more]; a custome; 12, I haue; it at; 15, that I had; them that; 16, [al]; [of] fyr; 17, ye may; 18, vnto; 20, of the euyll wyll & enmyte that he had comysed agaynst them bothe; 24, for all; 25, [one]; 33, euer ben; 35, kyng A.

**252.** 3, Perearde; 4, kyng A.; 5, in kyng A.'s courte; 7, table round; fyr P.; 8, vnto; 11, two manly; 16, to theyr; 17, at theyr; 18, with a grete nombre of; 21, in the space of . xv . yeres; 25, is a grete; 28, me now fore.

**253.** 2, feke a; 4, yf I; 10, monethes after; 15, & therefore; 17, vnto her brother Kyng A.; 19, of his; grete plente for to; 20, well be; 24, had all; we all; 25, of grete; 26, that he; 29, mocke &; 36, is to me grete ioye.

**254.** 2, go feke; 7, & I doubte not but that she; 8, as ye; 9, quod kyng A.; 10, & in all haste a messenger was; that rode bothe nyghte; 14, the messenger to ryde; 15, y<sup>e</sup> haste possyble; 19, shall I rule myselfe; 21, maner wyfe; 23, as I wote; 24, my lord the; 29, yf it; 31, valure; 32, Than dame; vnto; 38, be thus.

**255.** 4, fro thens; for that; 6, where as; 7, & than she; 9, so fore; 11, as a knyghte sholde do; well hole; 17, commaūde; 24, than answered; 26, at kyng A.'s courte; with fyr; 35, as we; 36; quod fyr P.; 37, in all E.

**256.** 4, [ther]; 10, on the fyde; 15, yles; grūmurfum; 18, Gaunter; 20, [this] fyr T.; 21, tyme was not; 26, knyghtes dyd; 28, fyr G. & his two bretherne fyr A. & fyr G.; 35, and also fyr S.

**257.** 1, [al]; 7, many other; 9, and fyr G.; 10, the noble; many moo / whiche were to longe to reherse; 11, to speke of; 20,

his dukes / his erles / his barons / & all his ; 21, and fyr Ironfyde ; 22, of ynde ; 23, maner of wyfe ; [not] ; 25, neyther of ; 26, nor of ; nor at the ; 30, of it self ; 31, And this is ; 32, turne it vnto ; in to the lykenes of.

**258.** 6, vnto ; 8, and al maner of mynstralsye ; 10, on the daye of y<sup>e</sup> ; 11, was done ; 12, vnto ; 13, anone there ; 17, fyr G. ; 24, fyr A. ; 34, fyr Lamoracke ; whiche.

**259.** 1, eyther of them ; 2, & fyr L. ; 3, [and alle] ; 5, Gaunter ; 7, vnto ; 13, fyr Ewayne ; 16, fyr P. and his ; [and man] ; 17, came in ; out of the ; 20, of noble ; them ; 22, reed ; whiche ; 27, them two ; 28, eche other ; 30, Bleoberis ; 31, that grete ; Bleoberis ; groūde ; 33, vnto the.

**260.** 3, [redy] ; 4, nor knowlege of ; kyng A. of Irlande ; 9, there came ; kyng B. ; 10, groūde ; 11, and kyng B. ; 15, herde that ; [and] ; gate hym ; 20, [fame] ; 23, fyr L. ; [for] ; 25, [vpon] ; 33, yet I wolde not do it ; 35, [thenne] ; a grete.

**261.** 3, was a ; 4, fyr B. ; [there] ; 5, mette to gyder ; 6, worst ; 8, hym ageyn ; 9, came there ; 12, [And thenne came in fyr G. ; and knewe that it was fir L.] du lake that ; 16, L. du lake ; whiche demed ; 21, worfte ; 26, vnto ; 28, whiche ; 29, fyr T. ; 32, loueth hym agayne ryght hertely ; 38, vnto.

**262.** 2, fayd they ; 3, mocke y<sup>e</sup> ; 9, [that] ye ; put on ; 13, all the people fawe ; 21, maner of ; asked of ; 22, on ; 23, as nygh fyr G. ; 25, [helme] is ; 27, wherby all ; 28, of king A.'s partye ; for hym / and ; they preced ; 31, began to double ; 34, fyr G. herde ; 35, and than he.

**263.** 7, of his best ; 9, That is well ; 12, tell her ; and that I ; 13, vnto her ; 14, ye haue ; 16, lorde fyr ; 19, to rest hym ; 21, haue gone ; 22, as well his hors as hymselfe ; [So this] ; 24, that wonder it was to fe ; 26, wayters ; 27, streight vnto ; 29, answered hym ; 30, fayd he say ; 32, A.'s loue ; 34, that wolde ; 37, And than the duchesse went vp ; 38, fawe the.

**264.** 5, the duchesse ; 10, this maner & forme ; by frete or by way ; 11, vnto ; 14, that in ; 15, [vnto hym and] ; so that ; 16, I maye knowe ; yf I may ; 17, than wyll I ; 18, with my ; ryght well ; 23, lyghtly redy ; 24, to his ; 26, some of them ; 27, fawe neuer ; 28, chere al ; 32, of her ; 33, fayd he ; 35, and than fir ; 36, vp vnto a.

**265.** 3, vnto ; 4, wolde fayne ; 5, vnto ; 6, & than ; and his ; 9, but onely ; 10, all brake ; 11, lyke a noble ; 14, [in] ; 15, full harde ; 16, [dyd] recouered after ; 18, and than ; 19, which was ; 25, whiche ; 30, where as ; knyght came ; 31, is he comynge ; 36, rest hym there.

**266.** 4, all but; 6, moone and; 10, your commaüement; 12, whiche fayd; 17, the fame proude; 19, with the; 23, he alyghted; [they]; a grete; 24, that lafted more; 27, vnto my lord kyng A.

**267.** 1, on; 5, on euery fyde; 8, amelynge; 12, and after; 15, fyr G.; 18, eche other; 20, was many; 21, a kynde; them bothe; 22, I ought; 24, [me]; hym moo; 27, rode longe tyme with; 28, [dyd]; ftaunched; 30, knowledge; 31, bere you; 34, befallen to me here; 35, fhe; vnto.

**268.** 1, Than was there; 10, vnto fyr G.; 12, and as; 13, hyr fone fyr G.; 16, fuche a; 19, [ryght], his neuewe; was it; 30, Than go; 32, to be done; 34, make; redy fhe dyd; 36, [fo].

**269.** 1, [And] amonge; 3, many goodly lokes; 5, quene G.; 10, vnto her what; 12, [that is]; 23, dyftrefse [hit]; [And] alfo; 26, was there; 28, [nexte] folowyng; 29, is a; [the]; 31, meffengers vnto; 32, at the day of his; 36, payre of bedes of.

**270.** 3, in the way; 4, [Lord]; of Orkeney; L. du lake; 6, du lake; 10, and vnmercyable; and treafon; 15, the gudyng of; 16, on; 17, archebyffhop; 19, fyr G.; 24, vnto; 31, [this].

**271.** 2, euermore; than he; 3, chefe fewer; 4, came in; 8, at the; 9, moche better; 12, to fyr G.; 19, had delyuerd; 24, was all; 25, reuelles and; 28, [as]; 29, none of them; 31, and he; 34, vnto; 35, fyr T.; 36, and he dyd; 37, made fir; 38, vnto.

**272.** 4, had grete wonder of his noble dedes; 10, a ful noble; the hystory; the noble kyng A.

## Book viij.

¶ Here begynneth the eyght boke of the noble and worthy prynce kyng Arthur.

**273.** 1, There was; 3, this kyng M.; was as; lykely a man; 6, and fhe was a ryght fayre lady and good; 7, all hole; 8, Wales and Irlande / and alfo of Scotlande; 14, And fo; 17, a certayne time; 21, no maner meanes; coude neuer; 22, a day fhe let; ordeyne for hym as he rode on; 23, hunter; 27, wyfe myffed; 28, [alfo as]; 29, ftreight vnto the; for to; 30, ferre within; 31, faft to; trauayle; 32, and her; 35, [the]; that the depe; none other bote.

**274.** 1, there was; 2, that; moone and forowe; [here]; 8, good frende vnto; me fe I praye you my; 14, befeche; 15, whan my fone fhall be chryftened / let hym be named; 16, as [a]; therwithall; 17, vp her; in the fame place . Than; 18, the shadowe of; 19, fo forthwithall; 27, grete barons & lordes; 28, and grete

moone; [Thenne]; 29, the meane; 30, morowe; 33, no tong can telle it; 34, bury; her full; 35, he let the chyld be christened.

**275.** 3, the yonge T. was well; 4, vpon a tyme; 9, to be put; in to a; 11, to the; 16, [al]; & dyed; 17, [Melyodas]; 18, paffynge heuy; kyng M.; 22, y<sup>e</sup> wyne; where as the; was in; 23, was mooft; therof; 29, thus sayd; 34, that she; 35, the land; [the].

**276.** 1, downe; his father; 2, [ageyne]; 4, sayd his father kyng M.; 11, I praye; 13, [thenne said the kyng] and; 15, So yonge T.; 18, and at; 20, T. his sone; 23, his sone yonge T.; 26, coude well; 34, that we neuer rede of no.

**277.** 1, that fo vfed hÿfelfe therin; 2, [beeftes of]; 9, shalle vse vnto the worldes ende; 11, that is of gentyll blode; 13, yonge T. continued in; 15, M. his father; 17, [fyre]; 18, she neuer hated; 19, [Tryfram] hym; and euery; 20, someuer he; 22, to; 23, whiche; wynters afore tyme; 26, this answere and sayd; 28, that we.

**278.** 2, round table; 3, fyr M.; 4, vnto hym; 6, we of; 9, fyr M.; 10, the rounde; 11, dedes ben; 13, to this; 17, fo whan; 18, that there was; Irland the noble knyght fyr M.; 19, [kyng Marke] he; moone & sorowe; *line 20 omitted*; 21, he knewe; 22, that feafon; 24, ftyll in his shyppe on; 25, whiche; 29, many cryes; 31, foo be; [terme] as longe as he lyued; 32, of Cornewayle sayd; 33, vnto; 34, at that; 35, called the; of alle the; 37, it were labour loft.

**279.** 7, [that]; 8, the castel of T.; 9, [of] this; 12, fyr T.; 14, the coutree of C.; 18, my sone; 20, the rounde; 25, fyr T.; to gyue; vnto; 29, And than; and fo; 31, from the doughter of; whiche; 33, & in the lettres.

**280.** 2, doughter of the kyng of Fraunce; 4, for pure; 6, here after in y<sup>e</sup> hyftory; 7, vncl; 9, And fo Trystrā went vnto; 11, to the vttermost with; M. of Irland; 12, come ye; 14, & wyte ye well that; 16, made of body and; 18, are ye; [ageyne]; 20, [yf]; 22, [fyr] T.; 23, [But] And; And forthwith whan he; 25, whiche; thus; 26, [for]; vnto the; 27, tell vnto; 28, that I; but yf; 30, or els of a; 33, fyr T. sayd; [that]; 34, knowe; bothe of; and of; 35, [fyre]; 38, ryght hertely welcome.

**281.** 1, vnto me; And than; 5, that his name was; 9, [of] fyr; 11, yonge fyr T.; 12, lytell vessell; he and his; vnto hym; 13, fo that fyr T.; 14, maner of thyng; 16, wyte ye well there; 17, for to; and to; 20, For to make shorte; that whan; 26, for to; 27, [thenne]; 31, his seruauant G.; 32, shadowe; vpon; 34, [the noble knyghte]; 35, And than he.

**282.** 1, [ageyne]; 2, vncl; 3, bury my; 4, that I; for no;

10, And fo; 13, thus vnto hym; 16, handes; 18, thy fhyppe; [And]; 22, haue I; 23, at my vnclcs; 24, & to; 25, [And]; ye; 26, that ye; for to; 27, with you / for ye; of the beft; 29, ye haue it wyll doo me good to haue adoo; 30, fyth y<sup>t</sup> I was borne of my mother was I; and alfo fyth; 31, I haue taken the hygh ordre; ryght wel; 32, as ye are; 33, ye well; M. of Irlande; 34, to wynne; 36, for to; Cornewayle for euer.

**283.** 1, And whan the good knyght fyr M.; 2, hym lyft; than fayd he thus; 3, the for to; 4, that no worshyp; [none]; 5, that for; 7, the rounde; And than; 9, all to the erthe; 11, drewe; anone and keft theyr; 13, as it had ben two wylde bores that ben couragyouys; 14, a longe whyle; 15, of theyr strokes; brestes; 16, fawe it myght; 17, lyke two; 18, and were bothe fore; 19, [frefshly] on euery fyde; 26, [euer]; 27, vpon his; and the; fyr T.; 28, abode styll in; arofe vp & threwe his; 30, vnto; 31, euer styll his owne; 33, dooft thou withdrawe y<sup>e</sup>; 37, fayd no; went.

**284.** 4, Than anone; and wente towarde; 5, vnto; 16, his feruaunt; 18, to the; 21, were his woundes; 22, wepte right; 25, [euer he]; 26, to haue dyed of the; had gyuen h̄y fyrft; 27, with his; 28, hole therof; 31, So the kyng; 34, warraunt hym his; whiche was a full; 35, and vnto; vnto alle.

**285.** 1, in to the; 3, [Thus faid the lady vnto the Kyng]; 4, had well herde what the lady fayd; forthwith he let; 5, and well; 8, in to; 9, quene were; 10, arryuyng; 11, had they neuer herde in I.; 14, wounde; he asked; 15, [then]; 16, fyr T.; have ben thus; 19, [here]; that in; I haue had; 21, fyr M.; [ful]; 22, the round; 28, fo whan; his wounde [hym]; 29, that there was; 30, And within a; 32, [mayde and]; fyr T.; 33, a grete; 34, vnto fir T.; 35, was wel; bothe of the.

**286.** 1, this fyr; 2, many grete; 3, ryght well fyr T.; 5, well that; 6, fyr T.; fyr P.; 8, fyr T.; 12, y<sup>t</sup> sholde wynne her / sholde wedde; 22, wyll be; [to]; fyr T.; 23, [for]; 24, fyr T.; 34, [faid la beale I.].

**287.** 3, Gunret; 8, vnto fyr T.; 9, fayd he; 16, Hebes; 19, that countree; 20, fayd he; 21, that of; 22, on me; morowe; 24, fyr T.; 31, all in whyte both; 33, as whyte as it; 35, and fyr T. to hym ageyne.

**288.** 4, that la; 7, And than was there none that wold; with fyr Triftram; 8, forfoke fyr T.; 9, Hebes; 11, and fo after; 14, and anone; 20, And then fyr T.; 22, And whan; 23, fore his; hym all; 24, fir T. vnto hym; 26, and alfo; [not] vnto; 28, nor in lyke wyfe; 29, fyr P.; now am I; 30, And than; 32, threwe it; 33, vnto the; Ifoud was; 35, whiche; garde fo.



**289.** 2, or not; 3, world that; 4, fyr L. du lake; 9, that she had neuer seen; 10, [thenne]; 13, where la beale I. kepte hym; 14, full good; 18, and fet by more; 23, her doughter la beale I.; 29, [there]; 33, [thenne]; 35, vncl.

**290.** 1, for she loued fyr T.; 2, ryght well; 3, [alle]; in all the hafte that she myghte; 4, and than she fought in her cofre that she had; founde and toke; 5, was taken; her brothers heed fyr M.; 6, And than anone; 7, vnto fyr T.'s swerde whiche; [fo]; 8, the fame pyece; vnto the same sward; 9, than as mete as euer; was first; And so forthwith; 10, caught that; 11, vnto T.; 14, [Thenne]; to [the]; 16, fell on her knees tofore hym / sayenge; & husbande; 20, hath heled; 21, [the] kynge A.; 25, that than was; 28, to mounte on; 29, [the] agaynst; 30, wyll I; 32, [for]; 33, fo that thou; 35, my broder fyr M.

**291.** 1, shall I; 2, [fir]; 11, fyr T.; 17, as a good; 18, shold do; 19, sholde do; 21, fyr T.; 22, your goodnes; 23, that my; 24, [fo]; 27, the goodnes of your lordship; 33, and [at].

**292.** 3, of your; neuer yet; 4, vnto; 9, there agaynst I; [feythfully]; 11, [to]; 14, full grete moone; 17, all he sayd; 20, let hym; or [that euer]; from hens; 22, whiche; 26, whiche; 32, wherof; was passyng; 37, So than by.

**293.** 8, well fir T.; Whan kynge M.; 9, he was anone stryken with ieaoufy; 11, badde hym faye that as; 12, nexte nyght; and charge hym that he come not to me but yf he be; 15, & sayd; 16, y<sup>t</sup> I; at the tyme she; 18, had ben with; 19, on; from fyr S.; than sent; 22, to fyr T.; 26, the tyme was; 29, [vpon] fir; 30, on his; 31, fodeynly kynge M.; 34, vpon the; 36, fuche a stroke; hym fore that; 37, was longe; [euer].

**294.** 2, bothe to; [cold]; 3, [alle]; 4, lady fore; 6, she full fayre welcomed; 7, armes swetely; 9, they lyghtly; 10, pleasure; 12, nether shete; 15, and forthwith he; 16, fyr S.; 19, fawe he; 20, sayd he than; 21, [alle]; drewe out his; 22, shalt thou; 24, [alle]; fyr S.; Tell me; 25, [to me]; 26, towarde me; 27, fyr S.; 28, sayd she; 29, fyr S.; 33, Than anone fyr T.; 34, [al]; fyr S.; 35, to brake in peces.

**295.** 1, drewe; [fast]; 2, full fore strokes; Syr; 5, fyr S.; 6, spurred his; 7, ryght fyersly; 13, and whan they fawe hym lye fo / they toke hym vp and brought; 14, vpon; or [that] he was; 15, Marke also; 17, wyft not that it had ben kynge M. that had; 20, neuer after loued; 21, moche fayre; yet loue; 22, past on; 24, no more haue; 26, slyppe ouer; 29, fyr B.; vnto fyr B.; 31, And this fyr B.; vnto kynge Markes courte; 33, [that]; 34, And whan; faye fo.

**296.** 3, to kyng M. ; 4, the whiche me ; 6, And than fyr B. chofe ; 7-8, and anone he fet her vpon horfbacke behynde his fquyer / and fo he toke his hors & rode forth on his way . Whan ; 11, than anone he ; 12, his wyfe ; fyr B. ; 13, were wroth ; was thus gone ; 16, And than ; 17, a domoyfell that ; in y<sup>e</sup> mooft foul-est maner ; 19, [be] ; 21, herte longe tyme ; 22, her in this wyfe ; 23, here prefent ; [And] ; 26, that fir S. ; than it ; 27, [good] ; [euer] ; 28, out of this ; Soo within ; 30, fore beten ; and in poynte of ; for as he ; 32, hath fore ; [heuy] ; 33, courte ryght heuy ther-of ; And whan ; 36, his fperre ; [faft] ; 37, the whiche ; 38, [forth] ; [euer].

**297.** 1, through y<sup>e</sup> ; 4, it was ; me than now ; 6, the one ; 10, of whome the one ; 11, fyr S. ; fyr D. ; 13, [hem] ; 14, the two ; 15, not to ; 20, And anone ; [alle] ; 23, fayd to hym agayne ; 25, [hit] ; is but ; 27, your ; 29, on the ; 30, hanfell ; 31, [fo] ; [that] ; 32, wyll or not.

**298.** 6, than he ; [he] ; 8, as [the] ; 9, a grete buffet ; 12, Are there ; kyng A.'s courte ; 13, grete fhame ; fay dyshonour ; 15, you bothe ; It is fo fayd ; and that ; 16, you ; 17, vnto ; 22, glad that ; 23, fyr T. ; 26, fir D. ; So fyr T. ; 27, [on ward] ; 28, B. rode with ; 29, wyfe ; 31, tyll [that] ; 32, ouertaken fir B. ; 33, [he faid] fyr knyght ; 34, [doo neyther] not ; fir B.

**299.** 2, [fame] ; 3, myle two knyghtes ; 4, [euer] ; 5, fyr B. ; 6, The one told ; that he hyght ; 7, that other told me he hyght fyr D. ; 9, good men ; 10, [grete] ; 11, but for all that it be fo that ; 12, or that ye ; 13, [Thenne] ; you than ; 16, myghtyly with theyr ; 20, [de ganys] ; 21, vnto fyr T. ; 22, vs two ; Saye on [what ye wille] ; 23, I fhall anfwere you agayn ; 24, 28, fir B. ; 29, fyr M. ; 30, good knyght ; 33, Now fo god ; 35, [that] ; 38, ben fyfters ; whiche is called.

**300.** 4, that I haue vnto ; 5, fyr B. ; 9, and vnto ; [that] ; 10, fyr T. ; 12, fyr B. ; 15, thou were ; 17, other ladyes ; 18, no femblaunt to ; 22, [alle] ; 32, me agayne ; fayd she ; 33, ye were ; 35, [euer].

**301.** 1, where my ; 2, fyr B. ; 7, to her ; 9, her fake I fhall ; 10, [a] lady ; 13, [fythen] she hath refused me / and as ; 14, knowe her ; 15, and departed one from an other ; And [foo] fir ; 22, And thefe ; 23, of alle the ; 33, that fyr T. fhoulde be flayne.

**302.** 13, and that other was ; 19, them fore ; 24, for grete ; 26, fyr B. de Ganys and ; 27, his brother ; 31, [by].

**303\*.** 4, fyr B. ; 8, fommonyng ; or [that] ; 10, had herde ; 11, but for ; 12, and yf ony ; 13, murther or treafon ; 15, was in thofe ; And whan ; 17, knewe well that ; [that he] ; 18, and was alfo comen

of; Than was; 21, and wente vnto; 22, going by fir T.'s pauylyon; moone; 24, [that]; 28, [my]; 31, therwith fyr T.; 34, turne.

**304\***. 2, with his; 3, downe to the groūde; 4, [thenne] Come on thy; 7, And he fayd; 8, faūce; 10, And than fyr; 11, repented; enemye; 14, [that]; 15, come there; and how; 16, of Irlande was; 23, charge the to brynge me; 24, And fo G.; 27, whiche; 29, Lyones; 30, that ye; he wyll; 31, on good; 32, [anone]; 33, but a lytell company; 35, kyng A.; 36, But anone; 38, that ye shewed.

**305\***. 2, do you feruyce; 3, A worshypfull knyght; 4, for neuer; 6, kyng A.; 9, or elles to; 10, wote well; 11, that all these; 12, [for]; 13, in fyght or batayle; 14, grete goodnes that ye; to me; 16, in hande for; 17, [that] ye; is this that; 18, be sworne vnto me; 25, were redy; 26, rather dye; 31, fyr B.; 32, vnto; 34, fyr B.; 35, yf he were.

**306\***. 2, and wente vnto; and other; 4, And than; 5, T. de Lyones; 6, theyr charge; And fo; 7, whiche behelde; 8, had flayne; 9, and also; he had; the noble knyght fir P.; 11, for to; 12, vnto his; [dere]; 13, that we are; maner a man that fyr L. du lake is; 15, kynrede; 16, in ony; for to be; 17, fyr B.; 20, one of the best of; 21, but well may it; hym to; 23, me vnto hym; fyr B.; 25, and that knowe I ryght well for; 26, be my spede; fyr B.; 30, his grete; 31, And anone; 32, drewe; and put his.

**307.** 1, lyke two wyld; 6, [there]; 11, out of hande; erth; 16, And whan; 19, on that other; 22, whiche; 25 [my]; 27, may well here that; 29, I do this batayle; 31, this good; 32, to fyr T.

**308.** 2, in to theyr; than the; whiche; 4, fyr B.; 5, well faye; 6, [and]; 8, fyr B.; 9, oute of hande; 10, his aduerse partye; 11, fyr B.; 17, eche other and; 18, eche other; the two bretherne made; 19, of them fyghte; 22, euermore; 27, And than; 28, all the estates that; as moche of hym as euer they myghte make; 32, on a.

**309.** 2, of you that; 4, vnto his; 5, [that]; 6, that ye; Syre fayd fyr T. / yf I dyd fo than were I; 7, and sholde be false of; 8, and therefore; 9, ye haue; let me haue la; 10, for to; 11, vnto myne vncl; 13, someuer it shall; [for]; 14, were me; 15, that may be in; 16, So for to; a shorte; 18, And than; 19, la beale I.'s mother; [to her and] vnto; 23, drynke vnto; 25, to G. and to dame B.; 26, fyr T. and la beale I. toke; 31, So fyr T.; 33, whiche; 34, And than they.

**310.** 1, eche other; loue neuer; 2, wele nor woo; [it]; 4, And fo longe; 6, [by]; rest; 10, lorde of that castell whiche; 11, yf fo

[it] were ; y<sup>t</sup> the same fyr B. ; 12, y<sup>e</sup> straūge knyght and his lady to be put to ; 13, fo euer ; 15, lady dye [bothe] ; 18, that a ; to them ; 19, cheryffhe ; haue grete ; fyr T. ; 20, that the lord ; 21, here in ; 24, ben theyr gestes / it is a full euyll custome ; 25, whan ony ; 26, lord of this castell ; the weykest ; 28, with h̄y be ; 29, lady is ; 30, Now fo ; 31, a ryght foule and.

**311.** 2, in a ; 4, for to tell ; morowe ; 5, to batayle ; 6 fayd the ; 9, lacke ; 10, belongeth ; 11, vnto ; 12, and put hym & ; out of pryson ; 13, whiche was ; 15, there all ; 16, holdyng ; 17, by the hande all muffed ; 18, lady was ; 20, than thyn ; 21, yf that ; 22, Syr knight fayd fyr T. ; 23, horryble custome ; 24, to lese myne owne heed ; 28, ryghtfull ; 30, with myne owne handes ; 31, vpon his ; 32, therwithall ; 33, drawen in ; 34, he turned his lady aboute in ; 36, neuer fawe ; 37, smytten of.

**312.** 4, that thou and thy lady ; 6, and for ; 8, trouthe ; 9, all the ; for of ; 10, neuer none ; yf thou ; 14, vnto ; yf she ; 15, of thyne ; fyr T. ; 17, [clene] ; 19, fyth I haue loft my ; 21, as fast as theyr horfes myght renne ; 22, [clene] ; 24, reled here ; 25, the erth ; 27, nymble ; [euer] ; 28, coude ; 30, full myghtyly ; 34, hurtlyng.

**313.** 1, wouēd other full fore ; 3, as than fyr T. was ; 4, and the byggest ; 13, that was ; 19, they wente to horfbacke with grete ; 20, [Thenne] ; 21, fo myghtyly ; 22, groūde ; lyghtly as ; 26, & thus ; 32, fawe fo many ; 34, vnto fyr G. le ; 35, vnto me.

**314.** 1, a very grete ; 2, G. vnto fyr T. ; there is but ; 3, vnto me ; dye . I wyll rather ; 4, fayd fyr T. ; 5, than for the myght of your owne ; 7, in to ; And there ; [alle] ; 8, and there he began hard ; 11, vnto you a grete ; 13, gretely blame hym ; 20, for askynge of his ; 22, with the hondred knyghtes ; 25, were the good knyght ; 28, [fir] T. de ; 32, Than fayd fyr G. vnto ; 36, by the fayth of my body ; 37, be more ; as there.

**315.** 5, moost his ; 8, in the ; came word ; 9, vnto ; 10, whiche ; 11, had fought w<sup>t</sup> ; 13, fast to ; 15, kyng C. ; 17, behynde hym ; 20, [outher] ; 30, drewe out theyr ; 32, it wente through ; 35, fmote of.

**316.** 2, and vnto ; 5, tyll I ; 9, nobleffe ; 11, there made ; many grete ; 13, dured longe ; and whan ; 16, whiche was ; 17, and gentylwoman ; 19, handes & fete vnto ; 22, [for] ; And whan ; 23, her gentylwōman dame B. ; ful heuy ; 25, by cause she ; 26, for to put ; 28, fyr P. ; 29, vnto her ; 31, vnto you ; 33, fyr P. ; 34, but half ; 35, vnto ; here fayd the quene I.

**317.** 1, Than fir P. ; vnto the ; 6, quene I. ; 7, fyr P. ; thynke vpon ; 9, defyre is ; 10, none yll ; 18, me the ; 20, fyr P. ; 23, or ; 29, fir P.

**318.** 1, not longe enioye her ; 2, for to ; 8, So the ; 9, fo rode ; 10, kyng M. ; [no wyse] ; not be ; 12, [to] hunte ; 13, am I ; 14, [owne] ; 16, & than this knyght fayd to hym ; 23, fyr P. ; 24, fyr T. ; fayd he I ; 25, 27, fyr L. ; 33, wyft not ; 35, fayre well.

**319.** 1, ledde her vnto ; 2, castel therby ; hym lyghtly ; 3, fyr P. ; 4, vntyll ; 11, And than ; 12, out at ; 13, all the gates ; 15, bothe his ; 16, lyke as it had ben a man that had bē ; 17, whiche recked not of ; 18, to fir T. ; 19, wyfte that ; 21, this day am I ; 23, I knowe fyr ; 24, that I am not in ; 27, fyr L. ; 28, vnto deth ; 31, & he had not ben.

**320.** 2, your grete ; to the ; 6, to hym and sayd ; 9, that he ; 12, enemy ; 13, ende of ; make you ; 15, your mortall enemy ; 16, ony worde spekyng ; 19, fyr T. ; 20, So lyghtly ; 22, a fstronge ; 27, for [dole and] ; 29, that other ; 31, & by cause ; 33, [alle] ; 35, I knowe well.

**321.** 1, And than she ; 2, thy ; 3, to your ; 4, that is right fore ; 15, And than anone ; fetch home ; 18, the whiche was ; 24, fmytten hym ; 26, pulled it ; 27, kyng M. ; 28, traytour knyght ; 29, [that] ; 31, at the kyng ; 34, vpon the ; his nose ; 35, forthwith fyr T. wente.

**322.** 1, [he] ; in to the ; 5, vpon his ; 6, whan the ; 7, there afore ; 16, no where fo ; 20, by all ; 24, vnto the ; 26, quene and fir T. went ; 29, tentes to be pyght in the ; 31, for to ; 35, y<sup>e</sup> twenty.

**323.** 2, gretely fayd ; 4, [wel] ; 6, fayd kyng M. ; 7, [other] ; 8, me thynketh ; 10, and therefore ; 14, for the noble knyght fyr L. ; 23, at a ; 26, with hym ; 29, And fo anone.

**324.** 2, thou arte ; 5, thy ; 6, the ; 12, & ye haue a cause why to faye ; 13, hymfelfe ; 14, fmyte ; 23, all garnysshed w<sup>t</sup> gold ; 28, L. du lake ; 30, horne . And thā fayd fyr L. vnto that knyght ; 31, that horne ; 34, vnto.

**325.** 1, yf that ; vnto ; 3, tolde hym ; 6, la beale I. ; his quene ; ladyes moo ; 8, and fo swore ; 9, that the quene ; ladyes alfo ; 12, as ony ; 14, vnto ; 20, And than alwayes ; 21, for to ; 25, And than ; 28, I. the quene ; 32, whiche ; 33, and bounde ; 35, other remedy ; that nedes he ; he vnto them all.

**326.** 1, [for] ; 2, [to take] ; 3, ye are ; good & ; 4, vnto ; for to ; 5, well faye ; yet met ; 6, that I ; or fomwhat better than he ; 7, thy vauntyng ; 8, that thou makeft yet shalte thou ; 9, my best frende ; 17, and toke ; 18, and than he ; 19, slayne ; And than ; 21, to fir ; 23, that he ; & shette ; 29, whiche ; 32, towelles ; 34, Ifoud was ; ledde awaye ; fyr A.

**327.** 3, And than anone fyr T. toke ; where as ; 4, I was ;

9, wente ; that he fell ; 10, And it fortun'd there ; 11, [hand] ; 12, And therewith fyr T. ; 13, flewe ; 14, told to ; 15, in y<sup>e</sup> forefayd ; [euer] ; 16, haue flayne ; 17, he was gone ; than he ; 18, fo frayte ; 19, neuer wyte ; fyr T. ; 20, Than whan ; 22, thought well that ; 23, and was fore dyspleas'd / & endured ; 25, she toke a ; 26, vnto ; 28, for y<sup>e</sup> ; 29, in all y<sup>e</sup> hafte to go ; 31, helpe you ; 33, ryght glad ; 34, fayd fyr T. ; 35, that may helpe.

**328.** 1, whiche ; 2, vpon kyng H. ; 6, vnto ; 8, for to ; 9, went ; 10, for to ; 13, he coude ; dyd there ; 16, and he flewe more ; 17, fame daye ; was than ryght ; 20, vnto you ; it fayd ; 21, beholdynge ; 22, [grete] ; 23, his fone fyr Kay hedius ; 24, I. le blanche mayns ; 26, that fir ; 27, he had almoost ; 29, fo at ; 31, abedde togyder / than ; 32, hymselfe ; his first ; 33, fo sodeynly ; all abaffhed & ; 34, he made her ; 35, fleffhely coniuccion ; neuer had.

**329.** 1, that there ; 3, whyle ; fyr S. ; 5, vnto the ; there he ; 7, And than ; 9, falfe vnto ; 10, faye [ye] to hym [this] ; 14, [that] ; to be his ; 16, for to go agayne in to ; 23, fyr T. ; 26, ladyes fake ; [in].

**330.** 5, & those fyffhers ; 6, that they ; 7, whiche was a ; 13, vnto a ryght ; 15, me fore ; 18, [euer] ; 20, fyr L. ; 21, on the ; 22, A.'s courte ; 24, we agayne ; 28, that drofe ; 29, L. was ; to roue ; 31, 33, fyr S. ; 34, hate in the world.

**331.** 2, fyr S. ; 4, your man vnto ; 7, vnto a ; 20, nothyng [by] ; 24, erly they ; 27, fayre knyght ; 31, vpon [a] ; 32, [that is] fo that ; 37, to me.

**332.** 1, had fayd ; 3, ye gaue ; 7, put many ; 12, in kyng A.'s ; [y] lyke ; 15, hath not ; hurte me ; 28, for to ; 29, be there for.

**333.** 1, that there ; 6, vpon one ; 10, wente ; 17, And whan ; 20, in to ; and take the best ; 27, flee euery ; 28, hors ; go playe ; 31, for to ; 34, [moost].

**334.** 1, for here ; 5, none [haue] therof ; 8, fyr S. ; 9, vnto fyr S. ; 11, he ruled it ; 20, So fyr L. toke his leue & rode toward ; 21, fir T. & his wyf & ; 24, he meruayled ; to fir L. ; 26, vnto an ; 28, fayd he [the heremyte] ; I gretely ; 31, euyll ; 35, fraüchyfe.

**335.** 8, [And] ; 9, speke also ; fir L. ; 11, wordes ; 15, [they faide] ; 16, thy lyf ; 17, behynde one than ; 20, your parte ; 23, flewe ; 25, demaüded [hym] ; Syr knyght fayd he ; 28, that came rydyng ; fyr F. ; 29, lately ; fro my hors & ; 30, [doo foo] ; 33, myne owne ; By my fayth fayd ; 34, to medle no more ; 36, the roude ; 37, spare hym ; cryed on hym.

**336.** 1, [whyte] ; 2, [to Iuste with the] ; 13, fyr L. ; 14, fayd he ; 16, you well ; 29, to ; 30, or elles ; 35, fay dyfhonour.

**337.** 3, And fo they ; 5, deed to the groude ; 8, & fo armed hym

& mounted on horfbacke ; 12, thou were ; 14, eche other & dressed ; 16, as two ; [preued] ; two houres longe ; [So] ; 19, hate in the worlde ; 20, where as ; 24, hath done ; 25, [alle] ; 31, for y<sup>e</sup> hygh ordre of ; 32, to you ; 33, they dressed them agayne to ; 34, other fore ; 35, where as ; fyr B.

**338.** 2, your diseafe ; A [knyght] ; 4, fuche a auantage ; as you had me ; 6, thyn euyll ; 11, fyr B. ; 12, more that one agaynft that other. ¶ And thus endeth the . viij . booke. ¶ Here after foloweth, etc.

### Book ix.

¶ Here begynneth the . ix . boke of the noble and worthy prynce kynge Arthur.

**338.** 15, There came in to the ; 16, & a bygge made ; 18, of kyng A. ; 19, was good & ; 20, fayd the yonge man ; 22, am comen ; 27, Syre fayd he ; 28, and vpon a daye as.

**339.** 5, noble ; 9, good and a myghty knyght ; 12, he is ; 13, that is in ; 16, kynge A. ; 22, that this lyon ; 32, claue it in ; 33, and fo the lyon fell down deed ; 34, [by sorne] ; 35, kynge A. ; 36, of my lyfe.

**340.** 1, [al] ; 4, moche as ; 5, me fo ; & fo ; 6, [me] ; 7, Than on the ; 8, kynges courte ; 12, fayd the damoyfell ; 13, this black ; and many ; vnto ; 14, And he that oughte this ; was a ryght good ; 15, to afcheue a ; 16, hym that ; 19, on euen ; whiche ; 20, there was none ; 21, vnto ; 24, vnto this ; 26, this blacke ; speke a ; 29, that well is.

**341.** 1, go ye ; 2, ye wyll ; 5, [pon me] ; that I maye knowe ; 6, shold be ; 8, knyghte ; 9, he fyr ; may ye ; 11, blacke shelde ; 15, therwith ; [all] ; 16, a grete ; 24, And than ; 25, after fyr ; fo there ; 26, in all haste made ; 28, sawe fyr ; 29, to hym & ; 31, mocked fyr ; 34, longe chydyng hym.

**342.** 1, with fyr ; 5, done the ; 6, fyr B. ; 9, fayd he ; 15, fyr B. had done ; 16, [hand] ; 18, hym a ; 20, fyr B. ; 21, fyr P. ; do batayle with ; 23, fro theyr ; 25, company of ; 26, [thenne] ; 31, and the ; 32, anone fyr ; 33, other knyght ; 34, grounde ; And than ; 35, others hors ; 36, than fyr ; 38, woüded that knyght.

**343.** 1, hors to the erth as ; And than ; 2, had mette ; and that knyght toke ; 4, [Orgulous] ; there fyr ; purfewed hym soo nygh / that he claue his heed downe to the sholders / & fo fell downe deed to the erth ; 5, fo anone ; 6, that his ; 9, them all ; to a ; 13, chambre was ; 18, And fo ; 22, to yonder ; 26, toke his ; 27, [fayre] ; and hurled through the thyckest of them ; 29, knyghtes redy ; 34, vnto.

**344.** 1, vnto; [alle]; 5, Ye may preue it fayd fyr; 8, that fyr; 14, [and maulgre oure hedes]; 15, agayne vnto; 16, all togyder how that; 17, And than she let falle downe; 18, but lytel; 21, not [yet]; 23, vnto the; 26, full wyly; 29, fyght on; 32, worfe on; 35, to many; 38, rode away [fure].

**345.** 1, And whan; 2, he herde; fyr la cote; 5, me helpe; 7, all you; 8, fuche an; 9, fayd the noble knyghte fyr; [that]; 12, fyr T.; 13, to her agayne; 19, ouertook fyr; 21, [thenne]; 22, al the; 23, the damoyfel Maledyfaunte rebuked fyr la cote male taylor full vncurteyfly; 24, lefte of fyr La cote male taylor; 25, whyle; 26, in excufynge; 27, of the fayre damoyfell I.; 29, le blanche; 30, alwaye.

**346.** 1, yf fo were; 5, and for to; 8, vnto; there they fawe fandyng before them; 10, with fyr; there fyr; 11, And after that; 16, after fyr; 19, that profered; 25, hym goodly; 27, [thenne]; 33, [al] he felle.

**347.** 3, In good fayth; 5, [alle]; forth vntyll he; 8, at the; 11, hym in; 12, through out the body and through the hors arfon; 14, and full egrely they; 15, stroke that; bestowed they were ftryken in fondry wyfe / fo they auoyded; 17, [paffynge]; [alle]; 18, in to the caftel; 19, called [the]; 20, and was a grete; 21, on; 22, fell to; 25, in a lytell; 26, and at the; [to]; 27, and therwith; lepte vnto hym; 29, than he; 30, vnto his mercy and grace; 32, kyng A.'s courte; 34, [thenne]; And whan fyr.

**348.** 3, for to; he had; 4, they that were; 7, for he is the beft knyghte in the world that dyd; 10, a noble; 11, and fyr; 13, than she; 14, heuy and forowfull; 17, & gretely they thanked hym; 19, & fayd; all true & loyall; 20, [euen]; 22, and you fir; 25, handes; whiche fyr; 26, awaye from; 33, a ryght good; 34, but he.

**349.** 5, vnto hym; [that] he; 13, vnto the; 14, a full fayre; 16, many gentyllmen & yeman that fayd; 23, entre fyrft; 25, am taken pryfoner; 26, for to; 30, that one; 33, fyr P.; foone after; 34, fyr P.; 35, fyr la; 37, began full harde to affayle fyr.

**350.** 4, on bothe; but [he]; 5, he gate; And fo than; 6, [thenne]; 10, them two; 14, they two; 22, [euen]; 23, [forth with all]; grete meruayl; 26, for what; 29, yf ye had; 31, dedes and valyauntnes; 32, [to] you grete; euer I; 33, [al].

**351.** 5, I was; fyr P.; 6, ye truly; 8, fyr P.; me at this tyme; fyr la; 13, fyr P.; 14, grete; as the hurle wynde had borne h̄y towarde; 18, drewe; 25, handes; pryfoners; 30, hym down; 35, fyr P.; 36, on.

**352.** 6, fo that he; 10, fo that he wyll; 11, his fyue; 14, fyr P.; 16, ruled by kyng A. / yf ye be soo pleased; 18, refted; tyme;



22, there came; 24, [thēne]; 25, frō all; 27, by caufe; 29, gaue vnto; 32, rode vnto; 33, [holy].

**353.** 2, fyr Brewnor le noyre; 4, [after]; called fyr; 5, and a myghty; 14, was maryed; 15, vnto hym; 16, yf it; 21, hym & fayd he was.

**354.** 1, knyght and a well made man all; 2, a clere foūtayne or welle; 3, nere vnto hym; to a grete oke; 5, that was by y<sup>e</sup> welle; 17, thou haft well; to me; 18, an other grete spere; 21, gaue hym a; 23, afore hym; drewe out; 26, on; 27, out his; 31, yf thou.

**355.** 17, I knowe well; 18, [my]; 19, [alle]; 20, fayenge; 21, as vnto; 26, [nor] for; 28, This meane; 36, [it].

**356.** 1, And to make shorte tale fyr P.; 5, with them on; 6, may men; 7, at euery tyme; 8, by euyll; 9, vnto a; 13, And than the; 14, at a; 16, fay vnto hym; 17, there as; 19, and rode fondry wayes; 21, hors to; 25, vnto; 26, a lamētable; 28, [with]; 29, shadowe of the wode; 35, fayd they; L. du lake.

**357.** 2, fayd they we; 4, yet dayes of my lyfe of; 11, And fo eyther; 15, it is pyte and; 22, preue it; make it; 25, vnto; 26, now bereth [the]; 29, And than; 30, came rennynge; 31, fo myghtily; 32, vnto y<sup>e</sup>; 34, as it had ben two.

**358.** 1, fyr M.; 2, knyght and man; to harde and to; 4, wonders fore; fo as; 5, there came; 6, anone fyr L.; them bothe; 7, for ye; 8, A's courte; 9, fyr M.; 12, that quene; 14, for to; 15, vnder her; 16, & we; 22, not therfore; 23, be the; 24, is y<sup>e</sup>; 27, yf ye; 31, [you] but; 32, [that] she.

**359.** 13, be it [that]; 15, T. de Lyones; 17, was comen; Syr T. answered; 18, Kay the Senefshall neuer in no place that; 19, ony good; 20, T. de L. yf it; 21, my right name; 24, lyuyng in the world; 28, tyl that one; 29, fall fro his hors; 33, fo as; at theyr.

**360.** 2, [he] fayd but; 4, In y<sup>e</sup> mornynge; 6, and fo; 7, And than; du vaffher; 9, downe from his hors; 11, fayne knowe; 12, name is; on your way with me; 13, for to; 14, where as; 15, at that; 18, not to that; 19, you of your; 20, for to; 26, whiche; 27, defyareth mooft to haue youre; 30, [yet]; 31, for to be; 32, man now; 33, excepte it be; 37, hym ony.

**361.** 2, caufe was; 11, after hym; & whan; 12, fir B.; 20, flayne hym; 21, vnto; 24, feke [after]; 25, [fame]; 30, fayd she; 33, for as this [fame].

**362.** 5, [lytel]; 7, his fete; 9, and the one; 12, with his fwerde drawn in his hande; 13, forthwith all fyr T.; 14, down deed to the erth; 15, to y<sup>t</sup> other knyght; and with the pomell of his fwerde

he smote hym so harde that he fell fro his hors & brake his ; 16, vnto ; 17, that vntrue ; 21, his waye forth ; damoyfell ; 22, So whan that ; 23, he full ; 24, hym to tell hym his ; tell it hym ; 26, his owne ; 30, downe from ; so done ; 31, kyng A. ; your owne ; 33, whiche I. ; vnto ; 35, knowe.

**363.** 4, where as ; 5, [holy] ; 6, by the ; 7, a good & a trusty ; 9, to kyng M.'s courte ; 13, I may ; 15, to a ; 16, affygnd them ; 18, pen can ; 21, myght neuer . . . the very pure loue ; 23, how fyr K. ; 26, grete pyte ; 34, he [had] foude ; 35, to fyr K.

**364.** 1, came to ; 6, me [the] ; 9, whiche she dyd ; 11, virgyn ; wel sayd he vnto ; 12, to me ; 13, [alle] ; 15, vnto ; 17, Marke fat ; 27, hym vnto ; 28, for to ; 32, whiche was ; 34, spere in the ; agaynft.

**365.** 2, fadel to the erth ; 3, And than ; 4, rode forth ; 5, than anone ; 6, vnto hym ; 11, fore & made forowfull ; And than ; 17, wyte what tydynges there was ; 19, se how ; 21, place shall ye fynde h̄y ; 22, And than ; 23, that ony woman myght make ; 27, his waye from ; 29, none take ; 34, euer ony ; 35, wente ; 36, lady of the.

**366.** 2, me to playe ; 3, & the damoyfel ; 4, So vpon ; 6, armure & went in to y<sup>e</sup> wyldernes & brake ; 12, the harpe ; And so wolde ; vnto ; 13, the melodyous fowne therof ; 18, [fomme] ; 22, fyr D. ; 24, by a fayre ; 27, to ; 30, so brought ; 31, as weet as ; to lepe ; 32, on theyr ; 35, [she] went.

**367.** 3, be [foo] ; 4, yf I ; 9, vnto other ; 16, alone from his ; 18, pyte that ; 20, that moost ; 23, bothe armed ; 29, our lorde god ; fory and dyfpleasaunte ; 31, hymselfe ; good frendes ; 32, to ; 35, on ; 37, at hym.

**368.** 3, [to the erthe] ; 5, vnto one ; 10, Beware ye ; that ye ; 11, naked foole ; 19, whiche ; 20, or that ; 26, T. his neuewe ; 27, the quene ; 29, full nyghe ; 30, for to.

**369.** 2, of my loue fyr T. ; 6, stronge toure ; 11, the fwerd ; 12, [a] ten ; 16, go out at ; 17, this fyr T. ; 19, And than fyr T. ; 20, it happened ; 25, to the ; 26, to rest hym ; 27, fyr T. ; 28, [and toke the hors] ; 29, drewe ; 30, on his ; 34, where it ; [foo] ; 35, smote ; wente.

**370.** 9, madde man ; 11, on the ; vnto the ; 12, to the welle ; 13, the kyng ; 17, softly ; 21, nor wyft not fro whens he came ; 22, happened ; 25, And than ; 28, and asked ; man was ; 30, & resteth hym ; 33, [here] afore this tyme ; 35, And la beale I. had ; 36, had gyuen.

**371.** 1, Ifoud was ; 3, loue she had vnto hym ; 5, than she ; 13, that as ; 14, shall knowe ; 18, whan ye may ; 19, and as ye ; 22,

moche anger ; 24, la beale I. departed ; 26, brayed ; [al] ; 28, that it is he ; So the kyng ; 31, now ye may do w<sup>t</sup> me ; 33, So many ; 36, of Cornewayle.

**372.** 3, were his foes ; 5, fyr D. ; [for] ; 7, vnto ; 9, you ; 11, & than they ; 14, [thenne] ; 16, in the fhyppe he fayd thus ; 17, tell them ; 20, [Quene] ; 23, [Pluere] ; 32, am I ; 35, my waryfon ; tell ye ; 36, the rounde ; 37, I am.

**373.** 2, And therwith he ; 4, nexte lodgyng ; 7, all on an hepe to y<sup>e</sup> groūde ; 9, with his good wyll iuste with ; 17, from them & rode ; 20, And so there was ordeyned for fyr L. ; 23, for to ; 24, of this ; 26, where as ; 28, Bors / fyr Bleoberys / fyr E. and ; 29, they all ; 31, that they fet ; 32, as well as we.

**374.** 1, as for to ; or two or ; 7, [by your sheldes] ; 10, me for to ; 12, that thy ; 13, loke on ; 14, [to] do ; wolde to god ; had neuer ; 17, eyther fawe other ; 18, yf cause were ; 22, [by] fir D. ; 29, had iusted ; 31, to ; 33, vnto theyr ; 37, forth on ; 38, and [to the] heerdmen.

**375.** 2, there aboute ; 3, nygh here ; 4, custome there is ; be lodged ; he fyrft ; 6, be within ; 7, So there is an euyll lodgyng ; 9, be ye not ; 10, forfak your ; 11, and yf ye ; 13, lodged ; ben two noble ; 14, be lodged ; 19, had thought ; to haue taken theyr rest ; 20, gate ; 22, [aray] ; 27, And so therwith ; 28, and there fyr G. ; 30, and fyr P. gaue fyr D. a fall ; [thenne was hit fall for fall] ; 31, And than must ; and that ; 32, [fo] ; & hurte ; 33, had gyuen hym ; 36, to do batayle ; 38, whiche wolde.

**376.** 2, fuche two ; 8, them bothe ; 9, you bothe ; And than ; 13, he badde fyr G. ; 14, had no lust ; 15, And than ; a longe whyle ; 17, thre grete ; 23, defyred ; 24, of the ; 26, vnto ; 33, But as foone as.

**377.** 4, fyr P. ; to knowe ; 5, 8, And than ; 9, than wyll I rather ryde ; 13, to iuste with hym ; 14, foo past ; 17, of a ; 20, for the good knyghtes ; 21, lete seke ; 22, for fyr T. ; 24, at those iustes & turneyment ; 28, at the grete ; 29, to kepe hym and ; 30, called and cryed ; 31, and ouercomen ; 32, he incontynent ; towarde h̄y for to iuste ; And whan fyr K. fawe hym come / than he refused hym / and ; 33, fayd fyr ; 34, fo shall I ; with an ; 35, rode on his waye ; 38, keft downe.

**378.** 3, whiche ; 5, for to ; 6, with hym ; 12, doth lede ; 14, drewe ; 17, [ryght] ; 18, fayd the damoyfell ; [and] ; 19, shall tell you all as it is ; 20, fayd she ; my lady quene ; 21, kyng A.'s fyfter hath ; [a] ; and espye ; 23, [fyrft] ; with ony ; with theyr wyles to Morgan ; 26, for to.

**379.** 7, whiche ye ; 11, fayd fyr G. ; 21, whiche ; 22, hym

well ; 25, passyng gladde ; 32, for yf he ; 34, B. faunce pyte ; 36, and so there.

**380.** 5, so well ; 9, for to rest ; vnto a ; 16, forgotten the ; 19, this damoyfell B. ; 22, And than ; 23, longe & ferre ; 24, And than ; 26, sayd fir T. ; 27, tyll the ; 32, whiche was.

**381.** 7, [ynough] ; 11, and knewe that ; 12, a knyght of C. ; I was ones ; 13, by fortune it ; 17, may fe my ; 26, a myghty black.

**382.** 2, to fyr P. ; 7, where as ; 9, vnto yonder ; 10, of gold ; 11, ye vnto hym ; 13, and so ; 15, And than ; 16, that anone ; which ; 17, at a vaütage ; 22, G. his squyer ; hym ones agayne ; 25, reuenge hym to morowe ; 26, he shall fe me ; 30, he may be ; 32, be reuenged vpon hym ; 36, to.

**383.** 3, [with hym] ; I wyll do that I may sayd fyr B. And there fyr L. ; 5, and had a grete ; 10, And than ; 12, that other ; 16, forth on his waye ; By my fayth ; So than ; 19, hastely vnto ; 22, and the caufe why ; 25, [hym] ; 30, hym to iuste ; 31, telle me what is thy lordes name / and whiche is he ; vnto fyr L. ; 32, [the good knyght] ; In goddes name ; 33, For by my knyghthode / there ; in the worlde that I ; 34, wolde rather ; with fyr P.

**384.** 1, And than eyther of the ; grete & huge ; 2, And than sayd fyr D. ; 3, [foo] ; 5, I can not byleue ; 7, and there fyr ; 9, myghtely ; made hym to auoyde the sadell ; 10, he had not ; 14, to rest ; 15, hym where ; 16, that on ; 17, of this ; [that] ; 18, came fodeynly ; 23, and on the ; 26, full fore [alle that dyd abyde] ; 27, and than he rode forth on ; 28, vnto a ; & there ; 34, to fir T. ; 35, for to.

**385.** 3, vnto kynge ; 4, of the ; 6, a grete ; 8, they fared ; 9, And than there ; 15, gretely what thought it a shame ; 16, hym a ; 17, vnto ; 20, fyr T. there ; 28, than ye ; 29, you my fayth ; 30, you more ; of yours ; 31, more on my ; 33, caught hym ; [fo fore] ; and pulled ; 34, [hors] ; 35, And fyr T. ; 36, And than fyr P.

**386.** 2, nothyng fay ; 6, Syr P. on the nexte morowe returned from the partye of ; 12, and also ; 13, his ryght ; 14, [as] ; 17, the [ouer] euenyng afore ; 18, on y<sup>e</sup> ; 23, that fyr P. ; 25, wolde I be on my lorde kynge A.'s syde but for his sake ; 26, party / there was rēnyng and smytyng vpon helmes ; iusted agaynst ; 30, And than came in fyr T. ; 32, that myght ; 33, haunted amonge ; 35, with a grete<sup>r</sup> meyny of.

**387.** 2, alle the ; 5, ben his good frende ; 6, awaye with the ; 8, were as good as a ; 9, was theyr ; 10, And than ; 12, So fyr ; 14, [fore] ; 21, kyng A. ; 23, [And] ; 24, I fholde shame myselfe ; [al] ; 26, vpon [the] ; 27, and thofe . xx . ; 28, alwaye togyder ; & [fo] ; 30, noble dedes ; 31, leuer to ; than to ; 34, to his ; 37, it shame.

**388.** 1, And than ; to the ; 2, fayd to hym ; Syr I praye you ; 3, ye shall ; 4, to many ; to fewe ; 5, [chere and] ; 10, the knyght with ; 13, lyke and femblable ; 19, on theyr ; 22, on his ; 25, that [with] the wynde therof myght.

**389.** 3, morowe ; wyll I ; 10, fayd she ; but for ; and so she ; 15, crye of a man ; And than ; 16, in to the ; 17, founde he ; 18, vnto a ; ben out of his mynde ; 22, And the squyer toke ; as fast as ; 23, agayn and tolde ; 24, So she rode ; 32, fayd he ; 35, and than ; 37, ouer. his nauell.

**390.** 1, So fyr T. ; 2, hym fast ; 3, fyr P. ; am fayd fyr T. ; 6, and yf ; 8, there and ; Than fayd fyr ; 11, yf ye ; fyr T. here ; 13, for to ; 18, fayd to fyr P. ; 19, that he ; vnto his ; 22, that he ; 26, fyr T. was ; went ; 30, to fyr ; 31, where as ; 32, on the.

**391.** 10, With that ; 17, were remounted ; So kyng A. ; 18, [he] gate ; 20, on fote ; 23, And than ; 30, And than ; 33, at fyr T. ; 34, with his spere ; 35, So fyr.

**392.** 1, So fyr T. ; 3, [thenne] ; 5, [alle] ; 8, affayled kynge A. ; 9, dyd grete feates ; 14, so grete ; 15, gate he ; 17, And than ; cryed on hygh ; [the] ; 18, for to ; 19, put down ; 24, [he] ; 26, [there] ; stouped lowe his heed ; 30, And fyr L.

**393.** 1, fyr D. ; 3, the grace of ; 4, fyr P. ; 5, for to ; 9, [to hym] ; 11, or in to ; 15, [thenne] ; 17, And whan ; made a ; 25, his vttermest ; 26, & mette ; 27, & had a ; 38, for to go in to.

**394.** 4, than he ; 7, Northgales in conclusyon ; 8, with the ; 14, contrarye that crye ; 18, worfhyp of ; 21, than yf he ; 25, and [foo] ; [alle] ; 26, vnto ; 29, [mooft] ; 31, [whanne] as he ; his helme ; 33, fayd thryes ; 34, And than.

**395.** 16, [the] dayes ; 18, all these ; 26, for yf I ; 28, knyght dyd ; 31, promyfe you ; 34, And than ; 35, them that ; [And] ; 38, nere hand ; & oute.

**396.** 7, he put of his ; 9, there came ; 14, & yf it ; 20, What thyng bare ; 22, the good knyght fyr P. ; 24, now lyuyng ; 26, [owne] ; 32, to fyr D.

**397.** 3, whyle ye hadde ; 4, And than ; 6, [old] castel ; 10, fyr L. ; 11, causer of ; 17, Than fir L. ; to brynge ; 18, here ben . x . ; 20, tyl we ; 22, that yf I ; 23, with me vnto this ; 25, Fyrft [was] ; 26, fyr Bleoberys [and] ; 27, fyr Lucas the butler ; 28, fyr L. and fyr G. ; 30, all to gyder ; 31, that stode bytwene foure hye wayes ; 32, in foure partyes for to ; 33, with the damoyfell dame ; the whiche was ; 34, for to ; 35, myght renne.

**398.** 1, And whan ; to hym ; 2, [faunce pyte] ; thou fals ; 9, B. fauce pyte ; 12, Lucas ; whiche ; 13, where fyr T. was ;

14, for none ; 15, but for to ; So the ; 19, y<sup>e</sup> whiche was ; vnto ; 20, tel hym ; 30, fyr L. ; fyr D. ; 35, [foo].

**399.** 5, du roy ; 8, And whan ; bote / he ; 15, vnto the ; 19, and tolde vnto fyr D. ; 24, So came there ; 25, So fyr ; 26, went ; the chambre of ; 28, And withoute ; 32, wolde euery day ; hate that was ; 33, And alwaye ; but lytel ; 36, [alle] ; 38, owne.

**400.** 1, it / and kepte them ; 2, had ynough ; 5, of [his] ; 8, may faye ; 9, hath he ; 10, taken hym ; [for] ; 11, that almoost he dyed ; 12, [speke and] ; 14, in many ; 15, wente ; 18, owne meafe ; And than asked kyng M. of ; 19, were of hym ; 22, turneyment and iustes ; 29, were bothe ; 30, Thā it was ; 32, gete [hym].

**401.** 4, vnto that ; 5, some folke called ; 10, wente ; 11, And fo ; 19, iuste with hym ; 21, man / and had a grete fall on the erthe ; 22, fayd he ; For [fyre] ; 32, not fo moche as one here.

**402.** 3, hym lyenge on the groūde ; 7, or [that] ; 8, was there ; for to ; 11, it was not I that dyd hurte hym ; 12, vnto ; 13, vpon you ; for al ye ; 14, be nought ; Ewayne to be caryed ; 15, heled of his woūdes ; 23, fayd kyng M. ; 25, [is] an ; 27, [al].

**403.** 1, to a lake ; 3, shadowe ; 5, were all ; 13, and hyt ; 14, as fayre as the ; 15, hors was ; 17, full wrothe ; And than ; fyr knyght ; 18, felowe yf I can ; 19, [fo] ; with an ; 23, quyte & clene a spere length / fo that ; had nygh ; 24, [al] ; 25, fet fyr K. agayne vpon his hors ; fyr G. & fyr K. went ; to kyng M. & fyr A. ; 26, them for to ; tell them ; or els they ; 27, And than ; 28, This knyght that smote downe fyr Kay / is ; and therfore beware ; 29, vpon you.

**404.** 2, [all] ; 13, kyng Marke / fythen ; 14, for to gyue ; 15, [alle] ; 16, rode forth ; 17, [Soo] ; 18, there they rested ; 20, whiche had ; 21, for to ; 22, asked them ; was in ; 24, they had not ; 33, went.

**405.** 1, he myffed ; 2, he [the] ; 4, for to ; 5, one of his legges and an arme ; 6, fo than ; and his ; vnto fyr D. ; 8, Nay nay ; ones hath ; 11, Now leue we hym & turne we ; 14, & fyr P. & fyr D. ; 25, how ye can shifte ; [it with] ; 27, [thenne] ; 31, they pleased ; 32, And with that ; be glad & make good chere ; 33, herde I ; 35, to haue ben put to dethe ; [foone after this] ; 36, he thought 38, [bothe].

**406.** 2, to fyr D. ; 4, whan ony ; 6, vnto ; 7, bothe his ; anone whan ; 8, I me repent ; 14, thou fhalt ; & all your ; & your ; 15, where someuer it please you ; 16, fyr knyght fhalt ; vnto two of my ; 18, shewe & tell ; 19, and kyng Meliodas was my father ; 20, I am neuewe ; 25, [and] that all ; 27, knyght fyr T. ; for to be ; 31, And than ; 32, hole and ; 33, toke his hors ; 34, vnto a.

**407.** 1, And fo ; 2, grete moone ; 8, for to ; but wyll be ; 9, of y<sup>e</sup> ; 11, B. fauce pyte ; 12, and fayd to fyr D. Syr knyght ; 16, And than ; 17, vnto a ; where she ; 21, fro this ; [he] ; 24, on ; 26, defende me ; 27, late ago prifoner ; 28, I knowe ; 31, [Quene] M. le fay ; 34, So the quene.

**408.** 1, the to ; y<sup>n</sup> wylte ; 4, as foone ; 6, sheelde vpon the ; 7, hath ; 9, [for me] ; 12, So the ; 15, quenes heed ; 18, vpon ; 22, not knowe ; 27, as paramour ; 29, to the.

**409.** 2, And than ; 3, fay as paramour ; and his ; for to folowe after ; My fayr ; for certaynly ; 6, vpon hym ; 9, fayd M. le fay ; 12, And for your ; 13, or els bete hym well ; 14 my ; quene M. le fay ; 15, with that ; 19, vnto fyr T. ; 25, And than ; for to ; 28, vnto a ; 30, leue we ; 31, and than ; 32, his mayfter ; 34, very lytell ; 35, than holde ; 36, for the ; 37, may no lenger ; 38, or euer that I.

**410.** 1, And with full grete ; 2, vnto ; 3, And whan ; 4, she let ; 6, to be put ; 12, It is not ; 28, of Scotlande ; 31, [there] ; 34, [gretely] ; 35, And than was.

**411.** 3, to kyng ; 5, and to ; 7, And than ; 11, vnto hym ; 15, fuche dedes ; 18, lytell Brytayne ; 23, euer kyng ; eyen were ; 24, But euer ; that it was grete wonder to ; bothe on the ryght ; 27, of Scotlande ; 29, that the ; 31, les blaüche ; 34, fayd he.

¶ Thus endeth the fyrft booke of fyr T. de L. ¶ Here after foloweth the seconde booke of fyr T.

## Book x.

¶ Here begynneth the seconde booke of fyr T. and the . x . booke of this present volume. ¶ How fyr T. iusted and smote downe kynge A. & fyr Vwayne & wolde not tell them his name.

**412.** 1, Than fayd kynge A. / yf ye ; ye be ; 2, thofe armes ; 4, vndefyred ; 5, And as ; 10, Syr fayd fyr T. ; 13, [and] that ; 15, that I had ; [And therefore ye are a vylaynous knyght to aske bataille of me confyderynge my grete traueylle] ; 18, you not ; 21, and than ; 22, [al to pyeces] ; 24, groude.

**413.** 5, that he fell down to the ; 6, hym aboute ; for to ; 9, our pryde ; 11, Vwayne by the holy rode ; 16, moone and ; 21, one knyght ; 25, in to the ; 26, [foo] ; vpon that ; 29, to them ; 31, whose name ; 32, [called] ; 33, & thus he fayd ; 34, medle with vs ; yf ye ; 36, from vs.

**414.** 1, from his ; 3, he dresfid ; 6, they had felte his strokes / they ; 14, [my] ; 15, Syr fayd he ; 17, whiche I ; 24, am fore ; 25, [thenne] ; 26, ony fayle ; 29, thofe ; 30, on myn ; 31, where as.

**415.** 2, vpon ; 3, for to bury ; 6, or that ; this knyght fyr ; 11, maner of wyfe ; let it not be out of your ; remembraunce the ; 14, affayle you ; [that] ; 16, in to that ; 18, haue I a lust ; 19, fro theyr ; 23, By god ; 25, ende of ; 27, on his ; 33, vnto the grounde ; 38, after this.

**416.** 1, rest ; 2, fyr P. ; 5, ye are ; 7, for to ; 9, yf that ; it fhall be an ; 11, departed afonder ; [their] dyuers wayes ; 13, where as ; 15, fayd she ; 18, thofe ; 19, whiche ; 22, out the body ; 24, grete woo / but I requyre you tell me your lordes name ; 25, is fir G. ; 27, and had good lodgyng ; 32, couered.

**417.** 3, and he fayd that he fayd it ; 6, he keft me down ; 9, he mette with me and with hym ; 10, was called fyr P. ; 12, full fore ; 16, haue foude hym ; 17, And he answered and fayd / my ; T. de Lyones ; 19, forth on his ; 21, you fayre knyghtes ; 22, None that are very good ; 27, that fame ; 28, that we ; 29, of the kynge grete vylany ; of quene G. ; 34, wold in no wyfe ; 35, and gone ; requyred them to tell hym theyr ; 36, [foo].

**418.** 1, he rested ; 4, there befylde ; 6, not ben ; 8, of the ; on horsbacke ; 9, in the mornynge ; 12, [and] they queftioned ; 18, fyr S. ; 24, Than he came ferther with his hors ; vnto ; 27, grounde ; 30, as fast as they ; coude ; 33, vnto them ; fythen that ; you downe ; groude ; 36, fayd bothe.

**419.** 1, that ye ; 3, me to do it ; 7, the very caufe ; why that ; 10, [and yf I be hurte I fhalle not be able to doo bataille with hym] ; 11, fyr S. and fyr Dodynas ; 12, [alle] ; Fayre knyghtes fayd fyr Tryfram ; 17, lyghtly escape from vs ; But gentyll ; 19, fyr S. ; 21, forth on ; 25, in y<sup>e</sup> fame ; 26, the fayr ; y<sup>e</sup> whiche ; 32, trueft louers ; 33, fyr L.

**420.** 3, nyghe vnto ; 6, and theyr ; the myghte ; that theyr horses coude renne ; 7, [their] horses ; 8, Than as foone as ; 9, they auoyded ; 10, lyke men ; 12, [out] ; 13, [neuer] neyther of them ; vnto other ; 15, I haue grete meruayle ; 16, vnto ; 22, moone ; 23, y<sup>e</sup> blode ; 25, therfore I requyre you yf it ; 29, Syr fayd he ; 32, mooft loue ; Now fayre ; 34, therwithall ; 36, [And there with alle fir T. kneled adoune / and yelded hym vp his fuerd] ; 38, [all].

**421.** 3, toke vp ; streight vnto ; [they] ; 4, and [with] ; whiche ; 5, vnto ; 9, fayd vnto ; 10, are ryght hertely ; 12, this countree ; 13, [had] ; 15, that I here not ; 16, dyd mete ; 17, that fyr T. was there ; 20, vnto this ; 21, and how ; 23, moone ; 26, fyr B. ; 30, where as ; 32, vs bothe wonders fore ; 33, that fame ; 35, than / what.

**422.** 1, maner of knyght ; hym not ; 3, yf ye knowe not than



do I / for I enfore you that it was fyr L. du lake ; all togyder at ones lokyd ; 10, and ledde hym vnto the rounde ; 12, all with one ; 17, the begynner ; 20, are ryght hertely ; vnto ; 22, fyr T. ; 24, I am lothe ; to do in ; 29, [letters] ; 32, nobleffe ; 33, afore by ; 34, full well.

**423.** 8, on fyr T. for his ; 9, [that] ; 10, [bothe] ; went out ; 14, [men] ; 17, [had] ; 18, were the noble knyght ; 19, & the quene la beale I. was passyng gladde ; 22, [for] ; 23, fyr B. ; 24, fyr A. ; demaunded a ; 26, asked the ; 28, fayd the ; 29, now lyueth.

**424.** 2, vnto the ; 3, and hath made ; 6, heuy and sory ; 9, vnto ; 11, he euer ; 12, what thyng ; 13, shamefully dyspofed ; 15, now luyng ; 16, for to ; 18, A false ; 20, fyr A. ; 23, thou wel ; 25, fyr A.

**425.** 2, repofed ; 3, vnto ; or not ; 5, vpon ; 6, vnto a tree ; 8, and moone ; pytefullest ; 12, mother vnto ; and vnto ; 13, for your ; 14, nere to ; 15, [Fayr] ; made a ; 16, it is well ; 19, [a] fheelde ; 23, are of ; [there] ; 24, that lyueth ; 27, that lyueth ; of hym speketh ; 28, ialoufy ; 29, [ony] fuche a ; 32, of hym shame ; 33, as ony ; 35, Well than fayd.

**426.** 4, make it ; 6, and he ; 10, egged ; 11, anone fmote ; 12, fore on his fheelde ; hors croupe ; 17, after and ; 19, fayd he ; 20, your spere ; 21, [with fwerdes] forbare hym longe ; 22, fmote hym many ; 23, Whan ; that he ; he waxed ; 25, fore vpon ; 26, vnto ; 27, chere with you / me thynketh ; 30, leue for to ; as ye ; Syr gramercy ; 31, are not ; with kyng ; 32, fayd to hym ; for to ; 35, vnto a ; 36, for to ; the whiche he ; 37, for to.

**427.** 2, that ye ; 3, was there ; 6, vnto a ; 7, ende of that brydge ; 10, one is called fyr ; 11, that other is called fyr ; 12, fyr D. ; 13, alwayes ye are layde to the groūde ; Than was ; 15, and ranne agaynst fyr T. ; and there ; 16, sente to ; 17, for to ; wolde he ; 18, iuste agayne ; in to the ; 19, and they prayed ; 21, that hyght ; 25, fyr B. ; 27, [owne] ; And also ye wolde haue ; yf I had ; 34, none euylle ; And it is.

**428.** 2, are & euer haue ben ; 3, and go aboute / is but ; 7, went vnto theyr ; 10, and the ; 14, the to leue ; for he gooth vnto ; 16, vnto my ; [with hym] ; 17, I haue not his ; 18, fyr D. ; 20, vnto ; 23, out of his ; 24, fyr D. ; 27, 29, fyr B. ; 32, And fo ; 34, had rydden [forth] aboute a four myle [englyfhe] ; 35, [tyl that] ; vnto a ; where as.

**429.** 3, quod kyng ; 4, this iustynge ; knewe well that the knyght was ; 6, he wolde rather that ; 7, wold [not] iuste with hym ; 12, for to do ; 16, on that ; 20, on theyr waye ; 21, for to ; fayd to hym ; 22, rounde table ; not in ; 25, for to ; 27, maner of

wyfe ; 28, ye not ; 29, fore hated ; vnto you ; 30, yourselfe foo ; y<sup>t</sup> ye ; 31, a grete ; 35, ye are.

**430.** 1, vnto a ; 2, where as ; he prayd ; 3, refted ; 6, thofe knyghtes that were of ; 7, of his ; 8, demaunde you ; not yet ; 9, fyth that I iufted with hym / & he gaue me ; 10, ye ought to haue no ; 13, thought euer ; fo as ; 14, towarde them ; 15, A.'s courte ; 19, le cuer hardy ; 28, were tyed ; 29, yonder I fe ; 31, we are ; 34, rode from ; 37, the sheelde ; 38, rounde table.

**431.** 3, [thenne] ; 4, fyr L. or fyr T. ; 11, had refted them ; 13, all arraüt knyghtes ; 15, he was ; 16, [alle] ; 17, answered he ; 26, kyng Marke ; 30, That am I lothe ; 33, rode forth [on] ; 35, where as.

**432.** 1, quod fyr G. ; 8, and [my] ; 10, by the fayth that I owe to god ; 11, fyr D. was armed ; 13, fyr D. ; 15, vnto a ; 16, on as fast as his hors ; 18, nyghe vnto ; 22, [all] ; fast as he ; 25, And whan ; 26, fyr D. ; chace fo ; 27, as they had ben ; 28, for to fe ; 29, were hurte ; 30, with his ; 31, he made kyng A. laugh ; 35, in that way.

**433.** 1, come ; 4, paffe by the ; 8, faye foo ; 10, agaynft fyr D. ; 11, nerehande ; 14, [Knyght] ; 19, fir V. anone ; 21, vnto ; 22, knyght arraunt ; 26, that I ; 29, to them / and reherfed vnto them ; [of hym] ; 36, but onely ; behynde the other company ; 37, for he was ; [and D. had his harnes].

**434.** 1, and alwayes ; 2, hym moche ; 3, to the wordes that kyng M. fayd ; 5, a page / and fayd to hym ; 6, Ryde lyghtly vnto ; maner that standeth fo fayre ; vnto ; 7, of that maner / and ; for to ; me some ; 9, knyght that I am ; 10, is to faye in ; 11, he went ; 12, as yf that it ; aboute a ; 13, page ; [his way] ; as he was bydden ; 14, he told ; 15, whiche ; 16, [lord] ; 17, fyr P. ; 21, And than ; 26, therwith [alle] ; 32, [that] ; he was as heuy as they ; fyr V. ; fyr D. ; 34, that I.

**435.** 9, whiche ; 12, haue ye not mette ; that had a ; 13, hedes therin ; 15, wente ; Syr I thanke you ; 17, late in the euenynge ; 20, from his ; fyr D. was ; 26, other ladyes ; 27, loue you ; blame you ; 29, [the] I ; 30, you ; 38, that it was.

**436.** 2, where as he had ; for to ; 3, to fyr A. ; 4, there redy ; 5, kyng A. ; 6, togyder / and by ; fyr A. ; 7, in the ryghtwyfe ; 11, whiche ; 14, vnto hym ; 16, fayd he ; [ye] ; 20, I am ; 21, ryghtwyfe ; 22, that noble ; 24, whiche ; 25, thynges hyd and vnknownen ; 27, ryghtwyfe ; it sprange vnto ; 28, vnto ; 34, [the loffe of] ; & [of].

**437.** 1, that fyr T. wepte ; 2, vnto ; 3, [to] yonder ; knyght kyng M. vnto your prefence agayne ; 4, requyre yow ; ageyne to

me; 6, all the; 14, fo whan; the noble knyght fyr L.; 16, vnto the; knyght fyr L.; 21, the kynge [Marke]; 22, [that]; 27, A.'s courte; the fame; 29, flat vnto; erth before; 33, your heed; 34, or elles had I; 35, by his; 36, [to] as.

**438.** 5, and a fals diffymuler; 6, them two; 10, euer he; 11, be ye; 12, ye are; 14, and yf; 16, yf that; 17, are ye rydyng; 19, ye not of; 24, set by; 26, coude not; 29, not for fere or; 31, [fame]; mette togyder.

**439.** 1, than foure; 2, bothe fo moche; 14, and also fyr P.; 15, the one y<sup>e</sup> other; 22, Syr sayd fyr Dinadan; 24, ye shall; [now]; grete and noble; 28, fyr D.; 29, fo that; 30, Sir knight; y<sup>t</sup> my; 31, brother vnto fyr S.; [and noble]; 32, [I we] ben; 34, hertely for; of that; 35, name and what ye be; & here I; fayth that I owe to god; 36, but moche more rather [be] auanced vnto grete honour and worship; 38, vpon my.

**440.** 8, well knowe; 20, yf [that]; 21, fayd fyr P.; 23, owne brother; whiche; 26, knowe it that she; 27, yf that; 30, as they fate; 31, rydyng with a; 32, And than he; 33, vnto.

**441.** 1, that thou; vnto the ordre; 2, that thou; 3, [for]; 5, beseche the; deale with it; 6, fyr P.; 7, beholde your dedes; there came; 9, And anone; 11, vnto the; 13, [alle]; 14, vnto the grounde; 18, And vpon the walles . . . there were; whiche; 22, the fadels; of theyr; 31, [euer was]; what fo euer knyght he be; 33, [alle].

**442.** 2, [thorou the bented shelde and]; 5, to rest you; 8, you afore; 10, and that ye; 12, fyr P.; that I wold; 13, in hand; 15, that ye wyll iuste; 18, those two; 21, [alle]; 24, for all; he lefte; 25, This feynge fyr D.; 26, knyght with the reed sheelde; But the knyght; 27, bare hym clene ouer his hors tayle; 28, But the knyght wolde not fuffre; 29, with theyr horses; [and]; arraunte knyghtes.

**443.** 8, and locked; 11, vnto fyr D.; of no; 14, vpon hym; 15, fyr D.; 17, haue had; 18, fyr P.; 22, pages; 24, he alyghted to rest; 25, at the fountayne; 27, [ye] of; 29, fayd he; 31, fyr P.; 33, [all]; 34, made hym redy for.

**444.** 1, fyr P.; 3, and [to]; 4, fyr P.; 8, [foo he]; 10, or that [euer]; 13, cutte infonder; 16, ouercouered; full fore; Somtyme; 17, foyned; fomtyme; 19, with a stroke of a spere; 20, fyr P.; 23, vnto fyr P.; am I lothe; 31, hym mercy; 33, that I; 34, batayle with me; 36, bothe his; 37, Syr P.; 38, [fore].

**445.** 1, haue fought; [not]; 3, that no force / for I shal; 4, but that you; 5, you the better all the; 6, I excepte the fame; 7, [excepte] of my; 9, [bothe]; and stanchd; 10, in a; them well and

eafely all that ; 12, fyr Ewayne and ; 13, vnto A.'s courte ; 14, [the kyngel] ; 15, [thurgh the forest] ; 16, hyt them ; 17, and fporte at ; 18, and [at] ; all they ; 19, that had ; 20, yf [that] ; 23, vnto a ; where that ; mother is ; 24, made a ; 25, vnto my ; 26, why wylte ; not ones ; 27, that his ; the noble ; 29, let vs turne ; 30, and fyr D. ; 32, whiche ; vpon a ; 33, fyr G. ; whiche was ; 35, well at eafe.

**446.** 1, towarde the ; of my lorde kyngel ; 4, rest ; me a whyle ; 6, not to longe ; I wyll ; 8, By my fayth ; fyr D. ; 9, talent vnto fyr T. ; 10, fyr D. ; 12, to you ; 20, and fayd / wyte ; 29, for a ryght ; 31, bytwene vs fayd fyr D. ; 32, that fame ; 33, A. laye ; 38, excepte.

**447.** 1, fyr D. ; 2, and [of] ; 7, he flewe four ; [how] ; 8, quod kyngel A. ; 9, [very] ; 10, more better ; 11, all the ; 14, endured ; fyr P. had ben there ; 16, My lorde fayd fyr T. ; 17, in all ; 18, to you ; 21, that dyd ; 22, the kyng [Arthur] ; that that knyght ; vnto ; 23, fyr D. ; 24, fyr P. also ; 25, fere me ; fyr P. ; 29, fyr T. fyr L. nor fyr D. ; 31, for to wynne.

**448.** 3, the whiche came ; 6, he had smyten ; 8, all the other ; 10, [noyfe &] ; 16, his fadell ; 19, fyr D. ; 27, gyuen to hym ; 33, Than fayd kyng A. ; 34, And whan ; 36, downe from ; 37, vnto hym for to.

**449.** 2, of eche other ; 3, and in lyke wyfe was ; 5, [at hym] ; 6, bycaufe he had put them vnto ; 7, fyr G. ; 8, vnto them ; 14, kyngel P. ; 19, ouer this mater ; of fyr G. & his bretherne ; 20, speke we ; vpon a ; fayd to ; 21, requyre you & praye you for to gyue me a ; 29, vnto god & vnto ; 32, wyll fwere that ; 34, [there] fwore.

**450.** 1, hard fastned ; 2, shall be well ; afterwarde ; 4, for to ; 5, for to ; 8, wyft that ; 16, them to be accorded ; 17, or elles ; 18, and the [mooff] ; 21, the noble knyght ; 23, or flee that ; 24, vnto our lorde Iesu Chryft and vnto the hyghe ; 31, can byleue ; is full well ; 35, was to the.

**451.** 3, on Aryes ; 5, all thefe ; 6, also in ; 12, vnto ; 13, for to ; that yonge ; 18, hym a ; 20, fyr A. ; 22, loue of his father ; 26, all his ; 33, had neuer spoken.

**452.** 3, hym vnto ; 5, vnto the ; 6, And whan ; 9, whiche was moche ; 10, prayfed there ; 11, for theyr ; 12, was to the ; 16, appoynted ; 17, [there] he ; 18, tofore that ; 20, And than ; 25, vnto theyr ; 27, the hote blode ; 28, ye may ryght well wyte that ; 29, [al] ; 30, a man ; 31, to hym thus ; 32, a grete ; 33, whiche.

**453.** 1, fyr G. ; 2, yet thou ; 4, it is ; 12, that I ; 13, and therefore ; 19, kyngel A. ; 23, was fyr Launcelot ; other of the rounde table ; 27, & I am fure ye ; 28, [the] whiche ; yf fir ; 30, than all ; 31, [the noble] ; 32, for than were gone two ; 34, that ye.

**454.** 4, a fleyng; 9, [alle]; 10, for to; 11, 13, fyr M.; 14, fyr A.; 17, 18, fyr D.; 24, [alle]; 25, Fayre knightes fayd he / ye shall knowe that my name is fyr D.; 27, 29, 32, 35, fyr D.; 28, out of all; 32, euer; 33, fyr B.; 34, was fyr; 36, his owne; 37, fayd fyr D.; all he.

**455.** 1, for to make shorte tale; 2, from his; 5, fyr D.; 10, fyr D.; 18, [out]; 19, whose name; and a; 20, 25, kyng A.; 25, [of the] quene; 32, & the quene and fyr L.

**456.** 1, and [the]; 2, L. du lake; answered and fayd [and to make short tale]; 7, fyr T. de Lyones; 9, fyr L.; 13, for to; 14, kyng M.; to morowe fayd; 17, Than fyr T. and la beale I. fayd / we pray you; 18, ye wyll; 23, [as] at; 27, than as; 33, [of] his.

**457.** 2, vpon many; vpon his; 4, L. du lake; in his mynde; 5, And than; 6, his moost enemy; 8, And than; 11, on fyr T.; 12, had redde; 23, fyr D.; 25, seruaunt to; 27, yet I loue; 29, fyr D.; 31, by all these thretenynges; 32, neuer no man; gete ought of hym.

**458.** 2, made by kyng M. [the] whiche; 3, instrument; 5, and [to]; 7, that he; fore wounded; 9, rest; 11, the Seneschall; 12, with a; 13, nyghe vnto; 14, fyr E.; 15, y<sup>t</sup> his; 17, he wolde; 19, [thenne]; 20, thus. Syr; 22, that ye; 24, than fayd; 25, for to; 27, Whan fyr T. vnderftode; 28, the kyng; 29, softe hackeney; 35, may I.

**459.** 1, yet all guarlyfshed and hole; 3, rest you; 5, kyng M.; for to go to T.; 6, to rest; 9, Markes blode; 10, grete and myghty; 13, And the good knyght fyr D.; 14, with his; 15, was grete brekyng; 16, fmytyng of good knyghtes. And euer; 17, of all; 21, folowed them faste; 23, portcoleys; 25, fyr T. fent; 26, he wold come; he were hole; for no sooner coude he do hym god; 28, fyr E.; kyng M. yelde; 29, may [not]; 34, to the castell of T.; 35, [wonder]; 37, vnto.

**460.** 4, ryght glad; 11, vnderftode hym; 12, hym [his]; 13, hym an; 14, Than fayd; [thus] vnto; 18, [alle]; 19, fyr E.; 20, to kyng; 21, for to; 23, [that] it; 27, fyr E. wyft it; 30, dyf-comforte you not for one; 31, of y<sup>e</sup> world.

**461.** 7, Elyas y<sup>e</sup>; 10, vp agayne on; 11, [alle]; mette [with] fyr E. the capytayne; 14, euery party; 17, they of without; 20, ony more; eyther partye; 21, fyr E.; 23, go vnto; than was he; 24, this fyr E. the capytayne fente; defpyte & angre whether; 28, flee myn; euer here after; 29, And than; 30, lord & capytayn fyr E.; for to; 33, all his; 34, was best to do.

**462.** 2, Notwithstandyng all this fayd no knyght coude be founde that wold fyght with h<sup>y</sup>; 5, fyr E.; 6, without that; 8,

fayd they al ; in hand ; 10, for to refit ; 11, yf I ; 13, and told hym where he ; 18, was with ; 19, fyr E. ; 21, may not demaude ; 28, playne feelde ; 29, fò me his ; 31, [a] feuen dayes here ; 32, with h̄y to morowe ; 33, messenger was ; 34, Herken vnto my wordes felowe fayd ; 35, to make ; 36, vpon his ; 38, rounde table.

**463.** 3, vttermest ; 4, [all] ; 6, [alle] ; 8, the ende ; 12, that one from that other / and they ; 14, went vnto ; 17, as there had ben a ; 29, there grete ; on the ; 31, kyng Marke ; all shamed ; [all] for ; 32, the frenshe ; 37, whiche afore.

**464.** 1, fyr E. ; 3, vnto the ; 10, he dyed ; to kyng M. ; 11, fyr E. ; 12, for to ; 13, harmes and domages ; 20, let vs ouer passe this ; 22, [at] ; 23, ioye of the vyctory whiche he had / bycause the Seffoynes were fo put ; 24, Elyot ; 26, T. de Lyones ; of the lay ; fyr D. ; 28, that fyr D. ; 29, Elyot ; 30, vpon my ; 31, Than as kyng M. was at meet Elyot the harper came in ; 33, fyr D. ; 36, wrothe with hym.

**465.** 2, Eliot ; *line 7 wholly omitted* ; 10, And than ; 11, deuyse vnto fyr L. and vnto ; 12, But for ; 14, made & ordeyned by ; 17, whiche befell ; 19, fyr B. whiche ; 20, vpon a ; 21, after that the ; 22, prynce fyr ; 23, of them he ; 24, was day ; 28, the other ; 29, fyr B. ; 30, fet vpon ; 33, that this ; 34, & alfo y<sup>t</sup> fyr B.

**466.** 1, beyng out ; and lackyng naturall reafon ; [he] ; for the noble prynce fyr B. ; 2, & cōmauded them to ; 4, as y<sup>e</sup> father ; 6, fyr B. ; 10, fayd to hym [thus] ; 13, I myght haue had ; 14, fyr B. ; that yf ; 17, for to ; 20, A. his wyfe ; 22, but that ; 28, to ; 30, Lorfelyn ; 31, chylde Alysaunder ; 32, rode her waye.

**467.** 2, fynde A. ; 3, fyr S. ; 4, vpon payne ; 8, fayd she ; 10, 11, fyr S. ; 11, fone A. ; 15, [euer] ; 19, [al] ; fyr S. ; 25, refed herselfe ; vnto the ; 26, that was ; 30, cofyn to her ; 31, and the [that fame] ; told dame ; 33, dame A. ; tyl that her fone A.

**468.** 1, fyr B. ; vnto dame A. ; 3, made a ; 4, fayd Anglydes ; 6, fyr B. ; 9, I am content that it be ; dame A. ; 10, for to make ; constable came ; 12, God be ; 13, euer were tolde to me ; constable fyr B. ; 15, all be ; 18, dame A. ; 19, fayd vnto hym these wordes ; [fwete] ; 20, and vpon the ; of knighthode ; 24, And whan ; 28, that for ; 30, tofore my face in my prefence ; the which I ; 31, to you now.

**469.** 3, [all] ; fyr A. ; vnto ; 6, [that] I may ; 7, vnto god and vnto ; 9, fyr A. ; and well armed ; 11, [a] ; 12, none of them ; 13, for to go to ; 14, fyr A. ; 15, [tyme] ; 16, falle traytour ; 21, drawen ; M. thou come ; nere me ; 24, & traytourfly ; 25, praye god fende fyr A. ; 27, fyr A. ; 34, nor yet fyr D. ; 36, for to ; 37, and alfo fyr S. ; faued his lyfe.

**470.** 2, [alle]; 3, vnto; 4, of the noble; he fholde; in the gouernaunce of fyr L.; 6, And fo; to fyr A.; 8, and counfeyle; the knyght whiche had; 9, fyr A.; cōmaunded hym for to; 10, nedes muft I do fo; 13, [euer]; in thyne owne countree; 15, Wherwith kyng M. was wonders; 16, and vnto; 18, in a; 19, fuche as were; 20, and Breufe; 21, but that; 23, the yonge knyght fyr A.; 26, and that alwayes he bare; 27, dyenge daye; for to; vpon; 28, fyr A. was; for to; 29, vnto; 31, degree; whiche turneymente kyng C.; 33, whiche was.

**471.** 2, for to; 4, quod M.; 9, was fyr; And y<sup>e</sup> other; 11, the one; fyr G.; fyr Garaunt; 12, tolde quene; 13, by a; 14, damoyfel of; 20, vnto the; 21, fyr A.; 22, vnto her; [thus]; 23, with a knyght of this; 24, the whiche is; 25, vnto me; and his name is called fyr M.; 28, fyr A.; 29, body I wyll; 30, Than forthwith [all]; 33, full egrely; fyr A.; 34, and fyr; 35, fyr M.

**472.** 1, yet fhalt thow; 2, quod fyr A.; 4, wylde bores; and fmote vpon theyr; 7, came quene; 8, this fyr; 10, daungerouft; 12, fyr A.; fo he; 13, on his fete; 14, for fyr; 17, rāmes or bores; fell bothe; 19, fyr M.; 21, fyr A.; 23, fyr M.; for the; 24, [good]; 25, pryde; 26, fayd fyr; 29, to me; 30, for I promyfe the faythfully as I am . . . . flee thee; 33, Than agayne; laft fyr; 34, fmote fyr; he raffhed; 35, and lyghtly; 36, thus done; 37, vnto hym; 38, mounted but he fell downe flatte on the erth for feblenes.

**473.** 1, The damoyfel of the castell feynge that / layde fyr A. in a; 2, neyther fete nor myght; 3, the grounde; 6, & gaue hym; 7, mornynge after; 9, was he; 13, wente to; 14, bad hym; 18, fayd she; 20, vnto a; 21, fayd fyr; 23, them to; 24, and to wedde togyder; 25, in a; 27, not but; vnto her; 28, whiche at; 29, quene M.; to fyr; 30, fayd fyr A.; 31, fayd quene.

**474.** 2, fyr A.; 3, bycause he; 5, to quene; 8, fyr A. laye; 10, yf ye; 12, fyr A.; 13, fayd she; 15, [Quene]; 17, fayd fyr; 18, rather than; 19, a pleasure; So god helpe me; 21, fayd fyr; 23, for to be; 24, that is a; for he is; 26, he wyll; 29, ye fhall; 31, fyr A.; 33, fayd fyr; 35, fent to.

**475.** 2, longe afore that; 4, that vpon; 6, fyr A.; 12, ftyll in the; 14, [a]; and a daye; 16, that there; 19, for to goo on; 21, whiche was; 23, vnto kyng A.; 24, that may; 25, the knyght; 28, grete landes; 29, vpon her; as fyr A.; vpon his; 31, [the] erth; 32, but that there; 33, with fyr; 34, fyr S.

**476.** 3, ryght well; fayd fyr A.; And than; 4, And whan; than she; 5, none other; 7, whan fyr A.; 10, [the] lyfe; 11, Fayre lady fayd he / my name is fyr A.; 12, fayre damoyfel fayd he /

tell me ; 14, eche other ; 16, talked togyder ; 17, fyr H. ; and he asked ; 21, And there ; 22, And fyr ; 24, fyr A. ; 27, for to ; [and repofe hym] ; 28, had holpen ; 29, dame Alys ; 30, [her] ; 32, vnto this damoyfell ; 35, vnto the noble knyght fyr L. Truly fayre lady ; 36, fyr A.

**477.** 1, to fyr T. ; [Thēne] ; 3, that other ; de les ; 6, on fote ; 7, [a] ; 9, he was ; 10, he was ; 12, fawe that ; on his ; 14, thought to haue ; 15, had holpen ; 17, on her ; forthwith ; 19, vnto fyr A. ; 21, fyr A. ; 22, out his ; she fawe ; 23, & Mordred alfo in to ; 24, fyr A. ; 26, paffyng wroth ; 27, had fo ; 28, dame Alys ; 33, reherce them all ; within thofe ; 34, or [with].

**478.** 2, frenfhe booke ; 3, tyll that ; 4, whiche hyght ; [good] ; 7, & fyr A. lorfelyn ; 8, that fyr ; 9, vnto ; 10, vnto fyr L. ; 11, that he ; 12, forowe was ; 13, vnto ; 18, came vnto ; all his ; 19, let doo crye ; 21, for to ; wyll well ; 22, wyte you wel that I may ; 24, of your goodnes to gyue me lycence for to ; with a ; 25, fo that fyr ; 26, take you vnto his ; fyr G. ; 27, than fayd quene G. ; take fuche knyghtes w<sup>t</sup> me as pleafeth ; 29, anone the quene ; for to ; 32, G. the haute prynce.

**479.** 2, [and] prynces ; 3, many noble ; 4, at the fyrft ; 7, the range ; 8, was all ; 11, of them gate ; grete fperre ; 16, vpon his ; 19, fyr B. ; 20, he was wonders wroth ; 26, bothe [the] ; 27, partyes ; 34, And whan.

**480.** 2, this fyr Melyagaunt ; 3, with a ; 4, a fperre ; fame tyme ; his father met ; 5, vnto whome ; 6, fone fyr ; 7, that he ; 9, And fo ; fyr M. ; 11, fote togyder ; there fyr ; 12, [there] ; fyr Galahalt the ; 15, vnto the ; 16, the whiche ; from her ; 17, And that fame knyght ; 21, go to fuche ; 24, take it vpon hym & graūte to you ; 28, and [to] ; 29, And than the ; 32, And than they drewe [out] ; 35, loued fyr ; 37, fyr P. ; [felf].

**481.** 2, in doubte ; 18, vnto fyr ; 19, nothyng myght byte ; 20, And whan ; 21, [wyft and] ; downe to the ; 22, was ryght fore ; 23, fyr P. ; 25, fayd fir ; 28, another ryght foone ; 29, vnto you ; A fyr fayd fyr P. ; 30, are at ; 32, fo there came fyr ; 33, G. the haute prynce ; fo harde with ; 34, But fyr.

**482.** 1, whan fyr ; 2, that he ; 4, not fyr ; 6, was fyr ; the haute ; 9, fyr G. ; 10, fyr D. ; 12, fyr M. ; 13, not fallen ; 16, vnto the worste ; 18, fyr S. ; 19, Than [the] ; 20, to lodgyng ; 22, fyr P. ; 23, And anone ; 25, fyr A. ; 26, to fyr G. ; fyr P. ; 27, fyr A. ; 29, fayd fyr ; 30, Whan the Haute prync ; 33, were bothe ; 36, fyr A.

**483.** 1, fyr P. ; 4, wente to ; 5, fyr M. ; bycaufe that ; 15, Than there came in ; 18, fyr A. ; 21, a grete ; 22, vnder y<sup>e</sup> horfes ; 23,



began fyrft ; 24, Syr G. fir Gawaynes ; 26, & fmote downe fyr ; man to the erth ; 27, And than ; 28, fyr Blamore de ganys fyr B.'s ; 29, and there eyther of them ; with theyr speres ; [theyre] ; 32, his nose / mouth and eeres ; 33, by y<sup>e</sup> helpe of.

**484.** 1, [there] ; 2, whiche ; fyr Elias le ; 6, well as he ; 7 fo that ; 8, vnto ; 10, there came fyr ; 12, was a grete bourder / and ; 15, fyr P. ; [thus] ; Syr here ; here by ; 18, 20, fyr P. ; 20, So [the] ; 21, [they] were ; 24, vnto ; 25, therwith [alle] ; [in his hand] ; 32, fyr G. the Haute ; 33, than they two ; 35, fyr P. [alle] ; 36, vnto.

**485.** 8, Now begynneth ; 11, fyr S. ; 13, mother / and how he appeled an erle before kynge A. / for he made ; 14, on our ; 26, So whan duke ; 27, fyr L. ; 29, vpon payne ; none of them sholde touche hym ; 34, lefte hande.

**486.** 2, neuer no ; 3, fyr L. vnto ; 5, where on horfback ; vnto ; 6, whiche ; 7, full myghtely agayne ; 10, ouerthrewe many good ; And there ; 11, on the ryght hande and on ; 12, drewe abacke ; 13, And therwith [all] the Haute pryce let ; vnto ; 14, the degree ; 15, fyr P. and fyr B. de ganys . And fyr S. and fyr E. fought on fote ; 17, were they ; 19, vnto the ; 20, in bothe her ; 22, And in lykewyfe dyd fyr D. ; 23, no man there ; 25, morowe after fyr G. the ; 27, came in the meane seafon ; 31, croupe / fo that he fell to y<sup>e</sup> erth ; 32, vnto fyr ; 33, fyr E. ; So whan.

**487.** 2, fyr P. ; 3, [a] shorte ; 4, [for] ; 5, fyr A. ; 6, thus smyte ; 7, [alle] ; 10, fyr P. ; 11, iufte ony ; fayd fyr ; 14, of them gate ; in theyr hande ; 15, that fyr P. ; brake ; 16, [alle] ; 20, vnto ; 22, fyr L. ; 25, O fyr ; 27, fyr G.'s ; 29, to me ; kyng A. ; 30, [the] whiche ; 36, couenable.

**488.** 2, vnto ; where as ; 4, whiche was ; vnto ; 5, knyght farafyn whiche ; fyr C. ; 7, this fyr ; 8, letted ; 10, that fyr ; 14, vnto her ; to fyr C. ; 17, fyr P. ; 18, fyr C. ; 19, rode to ; 20, fyr G. the ; 21, redy [the] ; 22, afore fyr ; 23, [at] ; 25, fyr D. ; 26, and fyr D. smote ; 28, was a iester & a ; 33, fawe fyr ; 35, [that] ye ; and [the noble].

**489.** 6, and to the ; fyr D. ; 9, at fyr ; 10, [the] dyner ; 11, let blowe ; and fyr C. ; 14, downe to the ; 15, drewe theyr ; 17, 18, fyr C. ; 18, fyr P. ; 20, gaue vnto fyr ; 21, made hym to knele vpon one of his knees ; 22, fyr P. ; arofe vp lyghtely and gaue hym fuche a buffet vpon ; 23, [ryzt] ; 24, [Corfabryn] ; 25, fyr C. ; 26, worfte that thou canst ; 27, a stenche ; fo that ; 30, fyr P. ; 32, vnto fyr L. ; 34, fyr C. ; 38, fyr P.

**490.** 3, a vowe ; tyll that ; 7, And fo dyd bothe ; 10, to the ; 12, there ; 14, other / [and] ; 15, caft from theyr horfes downe to the grounde ; 17, whiche were ; 19, grounde ; 21, toke a ; 22, [alle] ;

23, drewe out; 25, many knyghtes; 27, there were many knyghtes that fledde; 28, fayd to them; fo frō; 30, all y<sup>e</sup>; 33, fayre bretheren; vpon your; 34, Durynge these wordes there came.

**491.** 4, fyr B.; 5, vpon the duke C. of Claraūce; 6, erle [of]; 8, he at hym; 9, vnto; 11, fyr D.; and he; 15, And whan; 16, he fawe; 17, [and that he gatte betwixe two dyffhes]; he ferued; 18, fayd vnto hym thus; 21, [wel]; fyr D. vnto fyr L.; 23, [fir D. faid L.] And I enfure; 24, neuer mete the no more / nor also with thy; 25, meteth with me; 26, be fo; buystous spere; 27, fyr L.; make euer; 29, Quene G.

**492.** 5, holpe; 8, they began; 13, [there]; to make; 15, two; 16, ye may beholde; 18, that we; 23, the raungell; 26, fyr G.; 27, where as; 28, all armed; 29, fyr D.; 31, vpon hym; 32, with grete scornes they; 34, fo they; 35, And than they; 36, vnarmed hym; them all; 38, fo brought in.

**493.** 1, were there; 2, fyr D. vnto fyr L.; 3, assent of them all; 16, that I shall; 19, fo euer; 20, vnto my; that I was; 21, [that] whan; 31, fyr L.

**494.** 1, And than; 9, there fet; 13, fyr T. had he; 14, brufed many knyghtes; 18, y<sup>e</sup> other were; 19, nothyngge so fore behated; 20, in the; 21, Syr neuewe; am full; 22, God thanke you my; 23, And than; for to be; in to an; 24, hors lytter; fygne of grete; neuewe; 27, for to ete; 29, for to be; in to; 31, for to; 32, and his; 34, Whan the quene la; how fyr T.; she fent; 35, fyr T. was; 36, fyr S.; wyfte that; [&] anone he had knowlege that; 38, fyr S.

**495.** 2, [as] by; 5, [there]; 6, and [there]; 8, fyr S.; 9, & gaue an other a grete woūde; but fyr; 10, on his; 13, tyll [that]; 18, he had fayd; 19, and by; 23, Returne we vnto; 26, were able to bere; 28, let bury; 29, within a; 31, vnto warre; 34, do make.

**496.** 1, [dyd] made; 6, forthwith; 14, lyke a traytour; that I; 19, other lettres; 21, vpon the farafyns; 22, vnto fyr.

**497.** 5, fyr P.; 7, streyghte to; 9, how he had; 12, ye well; moost noble; 13, yf that; 17, no more fo; 20, for to; 21, that she is; 23, And fo; 24, y<sup>t</sup> kyng; 26, And than anone; 29, for to; the farafyns; 31, Dynas the Seneffhall; 32, farafyns; than he anone in all the haste he myght put; 38, Whan la beale I.

**498.** 8, to that purpose; 9, and vnto fyr S.; 14, to her worde; 15, had deuysed; 18, with thofe; 21, this countree; 22, countree foure; 23, whiche; 27, and for to; 29, And whan; how all these; [thus]; 30, were ouerthrowen; vnto fyr; 31, how that; 34, fyr T. was there; 35, ryght glad.

**499.** 1, that fyr T. rode; and than he rode after hym; 2,

ryght grete ; 4, the whiche ; 5, put y<sup>t</sup> castell in to theyr gouernaunce as theyr owne ; 6, was ryght well ; 7, [Royall] ; 14, vnto her lorde kyng ; 21, of his ; 26, on this ; 27, were not glad ; 28, by this crye whiche ; 30, at vs ; 37, & [to] la.

**500.** 1, [in] ; 2, [goo] ; 11, rechace ; 15, vpon a ; 16, me gretely ; 17, that ye ; 18, also well ; 19, for to ; and [to] ; 26, for to ; 27, drynke of that welle ; 28, vnto ; espyed that ; 29, helme vpon his heed ; 33, fyr B. ; fo forthwith [alle] ; 34, to them ; the good ; 35, that one to that other.

**501.** 1, fayd fyr Breufe faunce pyte ; 2, well fayd he ; 4, bycaufe kyng ; 7, the quene ; 8, in this ; 10, fyr P. ; hastely shall ; 15, vpon a ; 18, and a ; 19, that wyll ; 21, A.'s courte ; 25, fyr B. ; 26, fyr P. ; 30, hors and man ; 31, [thus] ; 33, vttermest ; 34, for all ; whiche ; 37, [euer] ; 38, was fore.

**502.** 1, after hym ; and [thorough] ; 2, B. faunce pyte ; fledde thus ; 3, [euen] ; 4, the one ; that other ; 5, and that other hyghte fyr Harry le ; 6, fyr P. de Galys ; 7, [of his tyme] ; 8, fyr B. ; these thre ; 9, cryed aloude ; 13, is fyr B. ; yf that ; 14, ony mercy ; here with ; 18, And whan ; 19, hymfelfe alone ; 22, And so than ; 25, euer he ; 28, on y<sup>e</sup> erth [thenne] ; vnto hymfelfe that fyr B. faunce pite was neuer ; 36, grounde ; 37, dedes & actes ; 38, vpon.

**503.** 1, put vnto ; 2, B. faunce pite ; 3, And whan ; 4, vnhappy wyll ; 5, And than ; 7, vnto the ; as though he wolde ; And whan ; 9, shame of thyfelfe ; 11, bothe hors ; 19, 23, fyr B. ; 23, he is of all cowardes the ; [knyghte] ; 27, fyr E. ; 28, had mette ; 29, 32, fyr B. ; 30, and forowe ; 33, fyr P.

**504.** 2, with hym ; 3, all redy ; fyr B. ; 5, 6, fyr P. ; 7, fyr E. ; 8, nor no ; 12, fyr P. ; 14, fyr P. ; 23, And whan ; 24, fyr L. was dede ; 26, arose vp ; 28, mete togyder ; [wyde] ; man myght ; 32, A.'s courte.

**505.** 3, for to ; 7, to daye ; 8, had flepte ; grēnyng ; 9, [and his hors stode by hym] ; 11, vpon ; 12, fayd quod ; 13, quod fyr ; 17, [And] as ; knowe ; 18, fyr D. ; 19, tell me ; 21, fyght but yf ; 22, for to ; 23, styll houed ; 24, come ; 25, that wyll ; 26, It is the ; 29, whose ; 30, fyr E. ; 31, [ful] ; 35, fyr D. ; 37, all arraunt ; 38, one for to ; another ; fyr E.

**506.** 1, whether he wyll or not ; 2, Than fayd fyr D. ; 3, [al] ; 4, fyr E. ; 5, how is it with you now ; 6, Me thynketh that ; ryght well ; vpon ; 7, ony good ; now reuenge my shame ; 9, from hens ; 13, fyr D. ; 14, moche the ; 16, And foo fyr T. rode ; 18, what meaneth ; 22, than was ; but a ; 23, [for] ; by cause he fayd well ; 24, is but a ; vnto vs ; 25, yf fyr L. ; 26, vpon those ; 27, incontinent he ; 28, a lytell ; 32, hors croupe ; 34, as he ferued the

fyrft knyght / foo he ferued hym ; 35, gate them vpon theyr fete as well ; 36, and theyr ; to do ; vnto the vttermeft.

**507.** 3, vs not ; 5, fyr G. ; brother vnto ; 6, vnto the noble ; 8, is grete ; 9, ye that ben ; 11, in all ; 12, but late agone (as I herde faye) that ; 13, whiche ; 17, waye as he dyd ; 18, [ther] than had it ben nede to haue ben many moo knyghtes than ; 19, [all] ; them and rode ; 20, And fo ; 21, fayd the one to ; 25, fayd quod ; drewe ; 26, myghty buffet ; 27, from his ; and [he] ; 28, And than fyr T. turned hym vnto fyr G. / and he ; 31, rode ftreight ; 33, before ; 34, [fyr] fhe fayd.

**508.** 1, is of all men the ; 2, and is alfo a good knyght ; 6, for to ; 7, that he hath ; 9, And euen fo ; 17, reft ; 18, [there] ; 22, [that] he ; 23, fyr D. ; A.'s courte ; 24, rounde table ; 26, the noble knyght fyr T. ; 27, fayd fyr D. ; 31, vnto you ; 32, but yf that ye ; 33, fyr D. ; 36, whiche.

**509.** 1, good and noble ; 8, fay vnto ; ye are ; 10, that I ; 11, la beale I. ; 20, whiche ; 22, tyll he ; 24, [he] ; 26, whiche ; 29, hym wylfully ; brake his ; 30, fyr D. began ; 31, to drawe out his fwerde ; 33, fyr D.

**510.** 9, a knyght arraunt ; drefsyng ; 10, for to ; 12, fyr T. ; 22, A fyr D. ; 24, grete ioye ; this fyr ; 27, how he was ; 29, there came ; 36, fyr G.

**511.** 2, and perceyue full well ; 6, demed in hymfelfe ; Than the ; 7, drefsed his fheelde and drewe out ; for to ; 21, praye you fyr T. ; 26, and ye owe me euyll wyll ye may ; 29, cōmaūde me ; [ryght] ; 31, fyr D. ; 36, well ynough ; 37, of Ioyous garde.

**512.** 1, caftell of ; 5, fyr P. ; 9, fyr D. ; fyr G. ; 10, [there] lafted ; 15, [but he wanne the degree] ; that he ; 17, that he ; 26, to fyr G. ; 28, fyr A. ; fyr G. ; fyr M. ; 32, fyr G. ; 36, Truly fayd ; [& foo] I wold I had ; 38, [or] on fote.

**513.** 2, [in] all the dayes of my lyf ; 3, And whā the degree was ; 4, fyr A. ; fyr G. ; 11, doth it ; 12, fyr G. ; 13, drawe me to ; 14, fayd fyr ; 15, fyr D. ; 22, kynrede ; 23, 25, fyr P. ; 28, [faid fir T.] ; 29, be he neuer ; [nor foo] ; 30, and byge ; 31, [knyghtes] full ofte ; 32, is nought ; 33, faid fir T. ; 34, [owne] ; 35, [Soo] ; 36, herde a dolefull crye ; 37, vefsell couered.

**514.** 2, and his company alyghted ; [And] ; 3, [and entred] ; [And] ; 6, [was] ; [the] ; 8, Than he was ware of ; 10, fayd he what ; 13, [fire faid the maronnens that] ; 17, [that fomme of vs] we may ; [as wel as other] ; 18, [foo] as ; [maronnens] ; it fhall be ; 21, to ; 22, recōmendacyon / and vnto ; 29, that this ; a ryght ; 31, maner of ; 37, worfhypfull eftates ; [be] ; 38, for to.

**515.** 6, feuen dayes ; 9, fyr G. ; 18, as ye are ; 20, to his ; 27,

moche the worfe ; 29, that I ; [euer] ; 30, am not ; 35, forth on ; a lytell ; 36, rydyngē all armed.

**516.** 4, that knyght ; 5, kepe hym well ; 7, hym to the groūde . And that knyght ; 9, full hard ; 10, to leue ; 14, he tumbled vp fo ; 15, and there he ; 16, to haue dyed ; 17, fore of ; 18, they departed and rode ; 19, comyng agaynft ; 21, fyr B. ; 23, that other ; 25, whiche at ; 26, [the] whiche ; 29, vnto la ; 30, it vnto ; fyr B. ; 31, ye therwith ; 33, kepe the ; 34, all the myght that theyr horses coude renne ; 35, And fo the kyng.

**517.** 4, or that be ; 5, redy to iuste with me ; to fyr T. ; 8, agayn lyghtly ; 9, fadde strokes ; 11, fayd fyr D. ; 14, fyr S. ; 15, to fyr D. ; 16, 18, fyr D. ; 17, fyr T. ; 18, fyr G. ; 20, fyr G. / that hors and man fell to ; 21, to fyr D. ; 26, in to the ; 28, fyr D. ; 29, bare the helme of ; 31, there good ; and sporte ; 32, to do to kepe them from laughynge ; 35, vnto.

**518.** 3, was fast on slepe ; 4, in to the whiche ye ; [in to] ; me therto ; 6, the whiche ; 7, they that were ; 11, was well ; 12, And than ; 14, fuche [a] ; wolde I ; 15, So there ; 19, our lord ; 25, shall do ; 26, by our kyngē ; 30, fyr E. ; 31, fyr P. ; 33, of two chyl dren ; 34, had in fo grete fauour ; 35, his blode fo well ; 37, hym and his ; 38, for to haue.

**519.** 1, ony rule ; 3, hym as them lyft . And ; 7, as it is euer ; 8, he wyll not therwith be suffyfed ; 12, be well ware ; 15, these false ; 16, all armed ; 19, two false ; the one that ; 22, vnto ; 23, vnto the deth ; 27, that I ; 28, vnto ; 33, as I haue.

**520.** 1, and tenemētes that ; possessed in all ; 2, fyr E. ; 3, his maker ; 6, and that I ; 7, came to ; 9, vpon me / and reuenge ; 10, [nor lord] ; 11, This was ; 13, our kyngē ; 14, on his ; 15, ye possesse ; 20, of the worlde ; 21, am comen ; 24, at my hertes ease tyll that ; 27, we that ben ; 30, two false ; kepe it ; 33, that ye ; me for to ; 38, nygh vnto.

**521.** 1, vpon ; 3, here in this countre ; 4, [euer] ; 5, fyr P. ; 9, of kyngē H. ; 12, and he that ; 13, in hande ; 14, drewe ; 15, many a ; 16, And thus they fought more ; 18, bothe his ; 20, was curteys ; 21, fyr knyght ; 22, ye be better ; 24, fyr P. ; 25, that hyther am comen ; 26, vnto fyr ; 27, ben now lyuyngē ; 28, the seconde fyr T. ; 29, & the thyrdē ; 31, It is well fayd quod ; 32, vnto ; 33, vnto my.

**522.** 6, was not there / whiche is the best ; 7, fyr H. ; 10, [that was] ; 12, of the courte of ; 15, for moche ; 17, they let ; to the two ; 18, comen a ; 20, in a castel ; 22, He is ryghte ; 28, the whiche is not yet christened ; 29, and yf he ; 30, for to ; 31, vnto ; 36, faythfull ; 37, also well.

**523.** 1, [the] whiche; 2, [full]; 6, fyr H.; 7, that other hyght fyr; 11, [that]; 14, vnto the; 15, thus he fayd; fir H. and fyr; 17, [that]; for to; 19, whiche; 29, as euer; 31, fyr H.; 33, pryde & prefūpcyon; 34, on the grounde.

**524.** 3, two or thre tymes; 4, Wherof fyr P.; 5, [al]; 6, grounde; 8, a myghty stroke; made him to fall vpon one of his; 9, they bothe; 11, two wylde; 12, on the erth; 13, reftyng; two large; brethed them; 17, a forowfull doole; 21, had endured well an; 22, vpon his; as well as; 24, vnto; wherfore hāgeft; 28, fell vnto; 29, groūde; And than he starte lyghtly to hym and raffhed of; 32, hym vnto; 35, for to; [alle]; 36, [as]; 37, all the.

**525.** 1, So than were; 3, [as] at; 5, than he; 6, they that were in; knewe; 11, So fyr T.; 12, within [the]; 15, goodly knyght; 19, fyr D.; 24, for to; 26, for to rest; And so; 30, fpake vnto; asked hym where were those; 32, are ye; 33, that ye are.

**526.** 3, withall; 4, through fyr T.; 5, thwarte the myddes; 6, grounde; therwithall; drewe; 8, for to; 10, [that] he; 11, hors by the brydell; 12, than he turned; 16, he fmote his; 21, fyr E.; 22, now bereth lyfe; 23, tell me yf ye; 24, fyr T.; 26, fyr E.; 28, is fyr; 31, fyr E.; rode vnto; 34, fyr P. talked vnto fyr T.; 36, fo well.

**527.** 1, for to; 3, quod fyr D.; 8, fawe quene; 9, was fo; y<sup>t</sup> vnnethes he; 10, vnto theyr; but fyr; 12, morowe; 14, bothe la beale I. & they; 18, 19, fyr G.; 20, full fayre; 22, of fyr; 23, So came a squyer to fyr; 25, elles [to]; 26, that I bydde; come with; 27, fayd fyr; 31, fhall encoūtre; 32, Than the; told fyr G. his answere; 34, fmote fyr.

**528.** 1, a grete; there came; 5, there came; of fyr; 9, [ryghte]; 10, [euer]; 14, fyr G.; vnto fyr G.; 15, this fyr; hathe ben; 19, thyrde was; 20, fyr D.; 21, that they [four knyghtes]; 23, as longe as; 27, [all]; 29, hors and man; 30, fyr V.; fyr S.; 34, fyr G.; 37, fayd fyr; 38, fyr G.

**529.** 1, he y<sup>t</sup> is; 3, la beale I.; 4, tyll [that]; 9, here; 11, a [grete]; 12, by that horne; 18, vnto a; 19, sholde be; 20, vnto; 23, vnto our; 27, his naturall; 29, And whan; 32, wente vnto; 33, that the.

**530.** 4, not knowe; than fyr T.; 5, I [haue]; meruayle me moche; 7, fyr G.; 8, vs two; 9, vnto hym; [for] to; 14, tyll they; 15, caufe that; 18, I can not tell you yet; 19, be vnto I; 25, fyr G.; 31, 32, fyr S.; [thenne]; 35, tyl that; 36, holpe fyr; 37, holpe vp fyr; 38, to theyr; they vnlaced his.

**531.** 2, hym ayled; 3, gaue hym; 4, an other as good agayne; fyr P.; 7, nedes; 8, that ye; 10, fyr S.; 13, fyr G.; 15, fayd fir;

16, [alle]; fyr P.; 20, shall we; 25, was in; 28, I. where she; 31, Scotlande; 32, them do; 33, thofe; fyr L.; 34, not shewe you no certaynte; 35, of a certeynte it ben they.

**532.** 2, [lyghtely]; 3, roude table; 4, Kay went; 10, cofyns to; 11, and that; 19, fo that; 24, & fo bothe his hors & he fell to y<sup>e</sup> grounde; 26, fayd kyng; 27, hath iufted full; 32, my two; 33, feuen of my; 36, whiche were.

**533.** 1, whiche rydeth vpon; [myghtely and]; 3, made to be set on horsback; thofe two; 4, whiche fyr E.; fyr S.; 6, out his; 9, all other; 11, not to doo his parte on the; 13, wonder of hym; And there; 14, whiche rode at that tyme vpon a; lyke vnto; And he; 15, that rode vpon a; And he lykened fyr G.; 16, two egre; 28, thofe.

**534.** 3, fyr L.; 5, [foo]; 6, 12, kyng A.; 7, fyr L.; 14, let euery; 15, forth togyder; 16, foo that; 18, groūde; 22, tumbled to the groūde; 23, from his; 24, And than [the noble]; 26, how that; 38, [that] thou.

**535.** 4, quyte it; 14, in this; 22, she began to wepe; 25, with a grete spere / fo that fyr T.; 26, euer that; 29, for to rest hym; 30, foo whan; 33, meruaylous dedes of armes; [none of]; wyft.

**536.** 3, knewe that; was agayne vpon his hors; 4, made; 7, in hymselfe that he; 10, that hym; that yf bothe; 17, of his dedes; 20, [hym]; 24, [euer]; fyr D.; 31, [outher] and; 35, there came.

**537.** 6, to fyr L.; 7, of his; 8, vnto the; 9, groūde; 11, Ryght fo were; 14, but yf it; 15, body for body; 16, And whan; 20, whiche was; 21, and clene from; 22, [naked]; [& fo]; 23, ryghte fyerfly; well that; 24, [worshypful]; 26, vnto thy selfe; 27, fyr P.; 28, for to; 29, knowe that I neuer dyd; 30, in all; 31, [at]; 32, that I shall; whyle my lyfe lasteth; And yf; 33, from the gretteft worshyp that euer I had or.

**538.** 1, the trouth; 4, yf that; 5, Launcelot ye; haue borne; 6, that your; 9, [this day]; 11, [all]; 14, meruaylous dedes of armes; 18, Lyftynoyfe; 22, there were; 28, and fo well; kyng and the knyghtes had grete; 29, of hym. And than; 30, that fyr P.; 31, to rest hym; 32, bothe on fote and on; 34, degree; 37, fyr D.

**539.** 1, and vpon; 2, ryght gladde; 6, all other knyghtes; the degree; all the; 10, rested; 13, a ferre; well be; 16, [the] deuyll; 19, thou werest; 20, fyr D.; 21, of none; in all my; 24, yf fyr L.; 25, good quarell; is [to]; 30, for to be; 32, on the morowe.

**540.** 5, had I; 6, fyr P.; whyle I lyue; 17, morowe; 18, Triftram & la beale I. were redy with fyr P.; 22, that the kyng &

fyr L. ; 23, [ryde] and la beale I. ; fyr L. ; 25, kyng A. ; 26, whiche ; 27, all poyntes ; 31, fyr L. ; 34, wyll [be].

**541.** 2, fyr L. ; 5, rode & came vnto her ; gracyoufly falewed her ; faue you fayr lady ; 7, to ; 8, Thou vncurteis ; 10, Kyng A. ; 11, but alway ; 14, his spere ; fawe the ; 24, full strongly ; 27, fuche a falle ; sayd vnto ; 28, muft nedes ; 33, though I haue ; 37, it had ben.

**542.** 4, vnto fyr ; 8, and thou ; 9, before my ; 10, that thou ; 11, the kynge ; 13, [that] he ; 14, knewe ; 16, one of them ; that he wolde ; 20, tell it hym ; 21, [someuer] ; 22, vttermost ; [ony] ; but that fyr L. ; 24, sayd fyr P. ; 26, not yet ; 28, [said fire Trifram] ; 29, [And] ; 30, fyr P. ; 32, made vnto ; 33, that they.

**543.** 2, Lucan the Butler ; 3, there at ; 4, of Scotlande ; 6, bothe fo fyers ; 7, they fell bothe ; grounde ; 9, there in ; 11, And in lyke wyfe fir G. ; 12, kyng A. ; 13, L. du lake ; 14, fyr L. ; 15, hym doo ; meruaylous dedes of armes ; 18, sayd vnto fyr ; 20, fyr P. ; 23, Syr sayd fyr P. ; 24, I haue done ; 25, fyr P. ; to deceyue ; 26, I muft ; 27, befeche you ; And yf nede be ; 29, [thenne] ; 34, he had grete meruayle of hym ; 37, meruaylled gretely.

**544.** 2, vnto you ; 3, none euyll ; 6, vnto fyr T. ; 7, for to ; 11, whiche now ; 14, all the people there ; double the dedes of armes that ; 22, thofe of ; 24, how he doth ; 26, 28, fyr L. ; 28, it nedes muft ; 34, that he.

**545.** 1, came there ; 4, the noble knyght fyr L. ; 10, grete wonder ; 13, forbore ; kyng A. ; 15, T. de Lyones ; fe how ; 17, in this ; 20, fyr L. ; 22, that fyr ; 24, Trifram is of ; 26, As kyng A. ; 29, let theyr eyen go frō fyr T. ; 32, haue done ; 34, for to ryde ; 36, vpon his.

**546.** 4, for ony ; 7, that we ; 8, plucked vp now ; 10, sayd fyr D. ; 12, T. smyled ; vnto fyr D. ; 18, So than whan ; vnto a ; 21, whiche ; 22, that ye wyll lende.

**547.** 1, and brake them vnto theyr ; 2, dressed them togyder ; 3, full egrely ; meruayled moche ; 4, with hym so ; 8, strokes that one to that other ; 12, for she ; 19, that sayd vnto hym ; 21, whiche was ; 24, sayd vnto ; 26, to rest you ; 27, by caufe that ; 32, full well apayde ; 33, not that he was fyr T. ; 34, well that he was ; 35, fought they ; 38, fyr L. ; whiche muft.

**548.** 3, rather than ; 4, shold be ; 5, for to ; 7, was all ; 8, a grete ; 9, groude ; 10, & to ; 11, haue ye smytten ; 14, And than ; 16, that fyr ; 17, hym downe ; 22, hym comynge ; 23, [that] ; 24, for he ; 29, and fyr D. ; 34, 35, fyr L.

**549.** 4, gaue vnto ; 5, fyr L. ; you all ; 16, wonders wrothe ; had seen ; 17, vnto the ; 18, nor fyr ; 22, fyr G. and fyr D. ; 23, vnto



theyr; And alwaye; 27, that fame; that here is; 28, none of vs; one nede; 31, y<sup>t</sup> from; I not; 35, [A]; 36, [longe].

**550.** 4, ouermoche for me; 8, fyr P.; 12, whose name; 13, that good; 15, neuer he yelded hym to me; 18, it you; vnto theyr; 20, and fo fet them at theyr table and wente to meet; 21, And whan la beale I.; 22, [thenne] her colour; 25, my dere lorde; 28, vnto your; 32, for alway; 33, [al]; 38, [fore] fyr L.

**551.** 2, [fo] ye; 4, holde you excufed; 6, [at that tyme]; 7, came in to theyr; 10, vpon vs; 27, fyr L.; 30, foo fayre; 32, that I do knowe; 34, [the noble kny3t]; 35, for ye are; And thus.

**552.** 1, of dyuers thynges; iuftyng; 4, My lorde fayd fyr T.; fyr D.; 5, fyr G. of Orkeney; 6, kyng A.; fyr G.; 7, it was; 8, fyr D.; [to haue]; 10, fyr L.; 12, he with; 16, moche people; 17, fyr P.; 18, by cause he; fyr L.; 23, [ryght wel]; 24, other maters; 26, [hertely]; 27, no rest; 28, fyr G. / and fyr D.

**553.** 2, vnto; 4, la beale I.; 6, her standing; 12, [alle]; and than he brake; 13, drewe; 15, fyr P.; 20, with the; 21, drewe; 22, And than; 23, vnto; 25, 27, 29, fyr L.; 28, do here; [this day] many; 31, ye knowe not; 32, vnto hym; 34, fyr D.; wonders dedes of.

**554.** 1, [& worship]; 4, gate them; 7, vpon hym / that; 8, of Scotlande [with their Knyghtes]; 10, pryfoners; 13, brake it; 15, with his; 18, [du lake]; 19, hym the hors; 21, fyr L.; 23, gentyll brother fayd fyr L. [vnto his broder]; 26, vnto; 27, and with a; 29, dedes of; 34, dyd / and mooft specyally; 35, gretely therof.

**555.** 2, vnto them; 5, to vs; 8, fyr P.; 10, yow well; 12, fyr D.; 14, And after that fyr; 15, of Scotlande; 19, fyr P.; 25, vnto; 29, voyce vnto; 32, rode vnto; 33, E. de Marys; and quene la; 35, came to hym; 36, & y<sup>e</sup> kyng of; 37, that rage.

**556.** 4, were [in]; 6, had spoken; vnto the gate of; 7, there fyr P.; all on; 8, fyr D.; is fyr; 9, fayd fyr T. / wyll; 10, 12, fyr P.; 14, me wrōgfully; as ye dyd; 16, fyr P.; 18, fyr B.; 20, rested them; 21, dayes; 29, not be mery; 30, And fo at; 34, as [the].

**557.** 7, la beale I.; 11, I wolde to god; 12, it [is]; 15, as ye had there; 16, fyr P.; 20, fayd y<sup>e</sup>; 33, were ryght forowfull; 34, vnto fyr P.

**558.** 2, not abyde; 5, a [fayre]; 6, hym whiche; 7, and [ther with he]; 10, ye not; 11, fyr P.; 15, ye be none; ye; 17, fayd fyr; 18, ye well that I am fyr P.; 20, [two]; wyte ye; 21, ben truly; 23, 25, fyr E.; 25, vnto other; 27, fyr P.; 30, fayd fyr; 33, none; 35, fyr P.

**559.** 1, fyr E.; 3, ye euer; 4, fyr P.; 6, me the foulest; 8, had not done; 15, fyr E.; 17, alas the; 18, fayd fyr; 19, as this; two

of his ; 21, vpon his ; than beyng ; 24, toke our rest by this ; 25, here vnto me ; 26, this same ; 28, on horsbacke ; 29, fo fore ; 31, ferre more ; 32, fayd fyr.

**560.** 1, vnto an ; 2, toke his rest ; 3, for to ; vnderne the ; 6, aboute a x . ; 9, the whiche ; 10, [he] ; 13, fayd fyr ; 15, gate vp ; 16, drewe out ; [and their sheldes] ; 18, [at the laft] ; 22, [and badde hym take his lady] ; 23, vpon his fete / for he ; 24, fayd lady ; fyr E. ; he had ; 25, hym for to gete her ageyne ; 27, one that hyght fyr ; 28, fayd she ; 29, lyfe that he hath loft ; 30, fyr P. ; 31, [A] ; 34, fayd fyr ; 35, largely ; to haue me at a vantage ; 36, [fir] ; 38, [not].

**561.** 2, went to ; 3, on fote ; 7, [duryng] ; fyr P. ; 10, is fyr ; 12, ye wel ; 19, And than ; 20, vnto ; 24, fyr E. ; 25, vnto ; 29, fyr P. ; for to ; 30, fyr E. horfed and his lady ; 31, amblyng hors ; 35, wolde ledde them.

**562.** 3, [thenne] ; this may be ; 7, downe and ; 8, [many] ; 9, Fayre felowes ; fyr P. ; 14, wente to ; 20, wyte thou ; 31, [that] ; 33, fyr P. ; 34, for to ; 36, haue yelded me.

**563.** 5, whiche ; 6, iustyce done on hym ; 11, fo ledde ; 12, fyr P. ; 13, at the ; 18, vnto them ; 20, and vnto ; 22, [alle] ; 24, from his ; 25, herde before ; 27, As fyr T. ; 33, whiche ; 35, toke.

**564.** 1, come he put on ; 2, how fyr P. was ; 3, to [his] ; 3, 5, fyr L. ; 6, for to ; [foo] ; 16, fayd fyr ; 19, yourfelfe as well ; 20, for hym ; And than ; 22, brake ; 23, drewe out ; 24, and within ; 25, but that they were layde vnto the erth ; 28, fyr P. of his handes ; 30, Than was ; 31, ryght well ; 32, bycause that ; 37, from the.

**565.** 3, that ye ; 8, fyr L. du lake ; 10, many ; 12, and vnto fyr P. ; 19, vnto the ; that ye wyll sporte with me ; 22, or els foone ; 27, had put of his helme ; 29, fyr P. ; 30, vpon his.

**566.** 3, grete ioye ; 6, fyr D. ; 9, had grete ; as he was wonte to be ; 18, that the whiche ; [all] ; 22, neuer more ; 27, y<sup>t</sup> there ; 30, vnto a ; 33, of the [that noble] ; 34, whiche were meruaylously well made / and full ; 35, pyteously fayd ; 37, vnto ; 38, [and troubled].

**567.** 2, to haue slayne hym ; 3, But fyr T. ; 5, that he had hymfelfe ; 7, herde all thy ; 8, all thy ; 13, fyr P. ; 15, of the worlde ; 16, as it ; 18, loued the quene la ; 20, or elles ; 27, as [to] ; 29, fyr T. ; 30, fyr P. ; 36, vnto the ; 37, fyr P.

**568.** 3, the quene la ; 4, daye of batayle ; 5, [that we shalle doo bataille] ; 8, fyr P. ; 9, am feble & lene ; 10, of the quene la ; rest me ; tyll that ; 12, as that daye ; 13, to fyr P. ; 14, me ones ; 17, where at that ; 18, fayd fyr ; 20, kepte your ; 23, [he] rode ; 27, a thre ; 28, that y<sup>e</sup> batayle ; 30, of his thygh and wounded hym ryght fore / and the ; 31, [hurte hym] ; 33, streyght ; with full ; 36, hurte

that he had in his; 37, that myght; 38, vnto hym; euer fyr Tryfram.

**569.** 1, that fyr Palomydes; bycaufe that; 12, and the thyarde; 13, So thus fyr P.; 15, for to; 17, and that fyr T.; 19, fayd fyr; 25, for to; And bycaufe thou; 30, hole and founde; fyr P. that as; 34, fyr T.; am I.

**570.** 2, by lykelyhode; 4, is now; 7, toke his armure & rode; 9, after fyr P.; 20, [Allas]; 22, fayd fyr L.; 28, euer now & than.

### Book xi.

**571.** 1, of fyr T.; 6, on; 9, Kyng A.; 14, fyt in that fyege / is yet; 16, [ther]; 17, whan the; 19, tyl vpon; 20, the brydge; 23, ye are welcome; 28, [and dayes]; 31, G. hathe done.

**572.** 5, in those paynes; called one of; 6, in that; well fyue; 8, tyme that y<sup>e</sup>; 12, fayd vnto; 13, landynge & prayfyng; 14, almyghty god; 16, vnto god; and alle; [both]; 17, god / and fayd; 21, do it; 35, fyr L.; 36, name is fyr Pelles / kyng.

**573.** 1, nygh cofyn; 2, [And]; 4, at the; in her byll; 6, as though all; 8, there came; 13, kyng Pelles; 15, ye well; 16, whiche ye; kyng P.; 17, full fayne; 19, dame E.; 24, came there; whiche was called; 25, vnto kyng P.; 26, well that; 27, ye must werke; by my; 28, for to lye; doughter E.; 29, O the moost fayre lady; 30, kyng P.; 31, this dame.

**574.** 1, lady quene Gueneuer; 3, that fame; 4, this dame; 5, his doughter E.; to that; [vnto the castel of Cafe]; 8, vnto hym femynge; 13, And as foone as; 14, fo madde; 16, that the lady E.; 17, was the; dame E.; 19, that the; 21, vnto fyxe of the clocke on the morowe; 27, fayd he; 28, am I.

**575.** 3, A thou; thou thus; 4, she answered & fayd; 8, a wyfe; 9, may not put this blame to you but to her that; 12, for her; 13, foo deceyued; 15, yonge lady dame E.; 20, [and]; whiche; 25, And as foone as her tyme; 29, fonte stone; 32, [the] whiche; 34, that he myght wedde her; 35, vpon a; 37, fayd she.

**576.** 6, brydge; 7, to you; 13, hors tayle; lyke as an; 18, vnto the grounde; began for; 22 as a; 26, dame E.; 28, moche where; 30, ye not; for all this; 32, me fore; the chylde that she had in; 34, dame E.; 35, vnto god that the childe myght.

**577.** 1, there came; 2, her byll; 3, And anone there; 4, y<sup>e</sup> bare the; 6, and also shall; 11, varysshed away; 12, may well be called; 14, trouth; kyng P.; 15, here come; 17, late ago; 18, to wete; 28, kyng P.; for to be; 31, whiche was; 34, to bedde

in to; 35, aboute y<sup>t</sup>; But whan; 36, he made all the people to auoyde; 38, fo [he] layde; [doune].

**578.** 1, whiche he; 2, whiche came; And fo; 7, [there]; all armed; 8, drawen in; 9, fayd to fyr B.; 10, fayd fyr B.; 12, fo at; 13, hym alwayes; [that]; to a; 14, went; there refted; 15, refted hym; 16, a newe; 20, and the; 21, fmote hym fo fore that he fell downe; to fyr B.; 22, fayd that knight; 24, that at; for to be; 25, as [a] pryfoner and ouercomen; 28, for to reſte h̄y; 30, dores or; 31, he had grete meruayle of it; there fell many.

**579.** 1, [all]; 4, of his lorde kynge; 9, [alle]; 11, grete adders; 14, to go; 17, doue that euer he fawe / with; 20, all y<sup>e</sup>; 21, four fayre; that bare foure tapers; 23, fame ſpere; 25, vnto fir; ye vnto; 28, that he; 30, that of; 32, in theſe.

**580.** 7, [for]; 8, wente; 10, rode vnto; 13, fyr L.; 14, fayre E.; 15, vnto fyr L.; 27, for to; vnto; 33, beſeen than ſhe was.

**581.** 4, was [fene]; 9, was fore afhamed; 11, not ſe her / nor yet ſpeke; 14, that fyr L.; to her; 16, well that; dame E.; 17, her gentywoman; 18, nerehande fleeth me; 22, dame E.; 27, nygh vnto her; 28, quene had; 35, fyr L.

**582.** 2, vnto your; 7, came vnto; 8, be ye a ſlepe; 12, toke his; 13, vnto her; 14, them in the; 19, her gentywomen; 21, agayne vnto the; all how ſhe had ſpedde; 22, [fals]; 29, in his.

**583.** 9, therwithall; 11, [alle]; 18, and vnto; [fayr]; 19, [lady] dame E.; herd quene G.; 21, at the; 26, for to loue; 27, hym aboute all other; all this; that hath; 29, and a cauſe; 30, hath; 33, I warne and charge you dame E. fayd the quene / that whan.

**584.** 7, fayd [the]; 9, there abyde; 11, a grete; 13, bay wyndowe extraught out; 15, Elayne / I can not tell you; 19, grete rebuke; 20, grounde; 22, forowfulleſt grone; 23, ony man; 25, ye may; vnto; 26, an hete; 27, [euer]; 29, fayd dame E.; may [do]; 30, [and wete]; 31, or as; a good cauſe I haue; 33, fayd dame E.; 34, I fere me y<sup>t</sup> I fhall neuer ſe hym.

**585.** 6, ſhe began to wepe; as ſhe had ben; Fy vpon; [de ganyſ]; 10, leder of vs all; 15, fyr E.; fyr L.; 17, groūde; a deedly; 18, was comen to herſelfe agayn; 19, her handes; 21, wote well; 27, and in wayes; as well bothe at; 28, and enquiryre.

**586.** 1, So than at; 4, be ye goynge; 5, fyr M.; 12, was comen vnto; 23, he [there]; 28, whiche; 30, fayd vnto them; 34, bothe her; fyr A.; 36, not abyde here.

**587.** 1, [thenne] fayd ſhe; 2, [thenne]; 5, manfully; 8, whiche of; 12, As foone as ſhe came agayne to her ſelfe; 13, ynough for them; [foo]; 22, vnto y<sup>e</sup> ſquyer; 23, than that he had answered; 24, fyr A.; 26, an euyl; 28, and to flee; 29, they pulled; 33, and [they].

**588.** 7, and lyghtly; 8, shall ye; 11, quyckly; 12, went; 14, [thow]; his lorde; 16, fyr G.; 18, fyr A.; 19, cause said fyr A.; 25, And than they; 26, two wylde; 27, fo within; 30, a lytel; had downe; 31, to the; 34, buried; 36, but in no wyfe.

**589.** 4, fyr A.; for thou; 8, not sayd fyr P.; 9, so they rode tyll; 10, they came; 12, of ftone; 13, bandes; 19, & that I; 20, [euer]; 25, drewe; 27, and went; 29, [one]; 31, [euer]; 36, vnderne the; 38, vpon.

**590.** 2, [euer]; 3, he myght fynde; 4, in a Toure; 8, yf that; [my]; 10, hym the best; 11, chere that he coude deuyfe all; 13, how [that]; 15, bydde my brother that he; for tell hym I am; 16, for to; 19, and [to]; truft vnto; 22, daye whan I; telle them that; 23, see that; 30, is now; 34, ye were; 35, [they] did.

**591.** 1, of yours; 2, vnlykely; 5, [And]; 10, they mette; 13, [we]; to; 16, with theyr [noble]; 19, [ryghte]; 21, vpon; 23, a well fyghtynge [knyghte]; 26, a lytell; 28, the of gentylnes; 29, sayd the other; neuer before; 30, neuer no maner of; the whiche; woüded and hurte me fo daungeroufly; 31, of the roude; 35, that haue; 36, for to; 37, [with your handes].

**592.** 2, vnto a; 5, [that] ye haue slayne me; 6, he wyll; 9, vnnethes I may; 14, god; that was at; 18, who [that]; holy vessell; 19, of that; 20, [al]; were bothe; 21, lymme and hyde; 22, vnto almyghty god ryght deuoutly; 26, is a parte; 32, amended it as.

**593.** 1, [longe]; haue knowynge. ¶ Here endeth the . xj . booke of this present volume . And here after foloweth the . xij . booke.

### Book xij.

**593.** 4, a lytell of fyr E.; 5, [of]; 7, which; 10, faue his fherte; And thus; 11, in to a; 12, [by]; 14, there lened agaynst a tree; 17, gaue with; 21, bothe the; 23, for helpe; 25, menyuer; 27, good frende; 28, haft; 29, not [to]; nygh me.

**594.** 5, come [fo]; 6, [Thenne]; vnto hym; 9, groüde; as though; 10, braft out at; [the] nose / and eres; 12, there he crepte in to; and in that bedde there; 13, and lyghtly she; 14, on the; 15, as though; 18, where y<sup>e</sup> madde man was; 20, is no; 28, fyr B.; 29, thou in all hafte on; 34, and came.

**595.** 3, vntyll; 7, Thus fyr L. was; 12, was fyr; 15, theyr fwerdes; 23, his cheynes; and from his; 24, hurte fore bothe his; 30, [there].

**596.** 1, he was fory; that he had bounde hym; 4, halfe a;

5, in a mornynge; 8, bothe on; & [fome] on; 9, And at the laft fyr L.; 11, bounde to; 13, vnto; 15, vnto a; 17, hym fodeynly and roue; 18, of fyr L.'s hors; fyr L.; 20, the huckle bone; 21, gate hym on; 22, drewe out; 23, and whan he fawe; 24, came vnto; 25, [home]; 28, And than the; 29, ouertake; 30, than no; 32, me ryght; 35, waye faft / and in his waye he.

**597.** 5, full grete; 9, to the; 13, of [his]; and wexed; 15, in to the; 16, had borne; 21, [ouer]; 22, neuer more; 23, theyr legges / and fome theyr; 25, for to refcowe; 28, they all; 29, vnto his; 31, there were [but] fewe or none that wolde; 33, whose name; 34, & [fo] he; kyng his vncler for to.

**598.** 2, [fyr] C.; 3, And fo fyr; 11, for to; 15, where as; whan dame E.; 17, [alle]; 18, downe to; 19, [thus]; 20, went; 21, vnto her; 22, hymfelfe; 26, fporte me; 27, byleue it; fayd fhe; 28, that he fhoulde be dyftraught; 29, fayd kyng P.; 30, vnto hym; 38, after [the].

**599.** 1, kyng Pelles; all the; 3, all this; vpon; 5, where as; 7, & vncouered; 8, was all; 9, [that he]; 12, & dame E.; 13, and thus he fayd. O good lorde Iefu; 15, how [that]; 16, man / all out; 17, ye haue; 18, tyll that; 19, welle fyde; 21, fo ye; 26, kepe it fecrete and; 29, [for] to; out of the countree of; 30, than a; 31, euer [that]; 32, Fayre lady E.; 34, well how; 35, [that]; vpon you; 36, on the morowe; 37, me [for].

**600.** 8, & that my; 13, [alle]; vnto her; 19, greteft; and alfo ye; 21, of the noble knyght fyr L.; 27, as moche to faye; 28, [euer]; 32, [here]; 33, ye well; 35, asked; [of] mercy; 36, as longe as.

**601.** 2, enclosed with; 12, on a; as though; 13, all to breke; 14, fyxe myle; 16, loke that thou; 17, all the knyghtes that ben there / that; in [the]; 18, that his; 19, all knyghtes; 22, drewe many; 25, dyd fuche dedes; 26, frenffhe booke; 27, [all the]; yet there; 31, fo as; fayre caftel; 32, in to it; 33, none fynde; 34, that other; vpon her.

**602.** 1, asked her who; 2, fayd the lady; 3, is dame; 5, well faye now; 12, the damoyfell / ye; 14, that fhall; 16, vnto; 17, vntyll I knowe; maner [a] of; 20, E. de Marys; [and] here; 21, fyr P. paffed; 22, vnto; fayd to the; vnto the; 23, that here; 25, there ye fhall fynde; 30, groude; And than; drewe out theyr fwerdes; 32, two wylde; 34, [there]; 36, knyght as ye are; 38, you as ye are a.

**603.** 2, whiche; 5, that are; rounde table; 6, felowe in kyng A.'s courte; 10, [thenne]; fayd vnto hym; 12, your ryght name; fyr L. answered & fayd; 14, Benwycke; 15, by [the] quene G.;

17, [yonder]; 18, Now fyr I praye you for; 23, had grete; 24, there she; 25, the greteft chere that she coude deuylfe; 27, was there.

**604.** 1, we of; in [the]; 2, fayre lady; 3, we vnto; 4, whiche; 6, fo as they rode thus; of kyng B.; 10, thofe two; 12, morowe after; 15, A.'s courte; 18, hym vnto; 22, within fhorthe fpace after theyr departyng they; 24, was fyr; 25, make hym; 27, turne vnto; 29, came vnto; 35, may ryght well; 36, wolde neuer.

**605.** 5, vnto; 6, vnto the; 18, but he; 26, began to tell of all the aduentures how; al the tyme; 28, mal fet / as moche to faye; 31, she wolde; 32, Than afterwarde; grete ioie.

**606.** 3, haue founde; 4, And fo the kyng helde hym ftyll and fpake; 13, [thus]; 19, yere and more; 21, of the Sancgreall; 23, fayd la beale I.; 26, vnto; 29, la beale I.; 30, ye are.

**607.** 1, ye whiche; 3, [all] the; 5, his worfhyp; 14, myfelf alone; 18, at his lady la beale I.; 21, had almooft; 26, neuer yet; 27, y<sup>t</sup> myght; 30, therwithall; 32, in an; 34, fyr P.

**608.** 1, his grete; 6, wylte; 8, thy malyce; fyr P.; 10, the difhonour; 12, that I knowe; 14, well thy; 16, afke you; 17, the cafe; 18, at all poyntes; 23, Wyte thou well fyr P.; 25, fyr P.; 29, wylte not; 30, is chryftened [many a daye]; 32, whiche; 34, but one; 35, be chryftened.

**609.** 2, ony lenger; 3, whiche; 5, fyr P.; 7, on a; 8, he full; 9, that ye wyl tell; fayd he; 10, rounde table; 13, ye fe that; 16, fyr G.; 17, requyre you; 20, brother vnto; 24, or elles I hym; 25, or [euer]; 26, your grete; 28, fyr G.; 32, yet as well as; 38, And than.

**610.** 1, drewe; 2, [al]; 4, Than they; 5, [to gyders] that one vpon that other; lyke two noble; 6, whiche; but alwaye; 13, [woode]; 14, and than he; 15, groude; 17, fyr P.; paffyng fore; & alwaye; 22, fyr T. had flayne hym; 23, fyr P.; a full; 24, fyr P.; 25, at a; me a daye; 26, no good; 29, Than fpake fyr P. and fayd vnto fyr T. . As for to; 30, ony more; 31, fyr P.; that I haue done vnto; 32, but and yf it please you we may; 33, Ifoude / kyng Markes wyfe; 34, dare well.

**611.** 1, her and bycaufe of her I; 3, whiche; 5, greuous & fadde; 6, well fay; no man; of fo grete a myghte and ftrenge; 7, were the noble knyght; 8, lord fyr T.; 9, [fame]; 10, vnto; I wyll be clene; 11, [now]; we wyll; 12, all togyder; of my lorde kyng A.; fo that we may be; 13, of Pentecoft; 14, ye haue fayd; fhall it be done; your euyl; 16, Suffrygan; whiche; 18, came afore; 19, cōmaunded to fyll a grete; 24, were kepyng a courte ryall of the mooft noble knyghtes of all the worlde; 25, table were there at

that tyme; 27, fyr G.; 28, the noble; 30, towarde Ioyous garde;

¶ . . . . whiche was drawen; here after shall folowe; is called.

612. therfor vpon all; bleffid lord Iefu haue thou mercy / that by the vertue of thy bytter paffyon our fynnes may be forgyuen vs . And at the laft day of our iudgemēt / that we may come to thyne euerlaftyng kyngdome in heuen . Amen.

### Book xiij.

612. 3, they all herde; & than all the tables were couered / redy to fet theron the meet; 8, And than the kyng fayd; blyffe you; 9, fhewe; may ye; 10, kyng A.; fyr L.; 12, [on] w<sup>t</sup> me; 13, that she; 14, what is your wyll; fyr L.; 15, knowe and vnderftande; 16, I fhall; 17, to fadell; his armure; 18, vnto fyr; 26, he fawe; 27, to open the; 31, ware lyenge.

613\*. 4, Soo god; 5, hath brought; 6, as they ftode thus; 7, whiche; 10, fayd the ladyes; 11, for to; 13, behelde y<sup>t</sup>; 14, fawe he was; 23, fayleth hym not; 25, of my lorde; 28, vnderne.

614\*. 2, that fayd; 4, they all; a full; 11, that none; 18, faye trouth fayd kyng A.; 20, [fo] that; 23, kyng A.; 25, than fayd the kyng; 28, as it had ben; 29, and a ryche; 32, he by whome I; 34, thefe; 35, that ye be.

615. 1, to it; belongeth not; 2, for to; 7, my fayre; 8, ye ones; fayd he; [good]; 11, therwithall; kyng A. vnto fyr G.; 17, fayd fyr G.; 18, kyng A.; 19, And than he badde fyr P.; 21, therwithall; vpon the; 22, at it; not ones; 23, no moo; 25, kyng A.; 26, alle the knyghtes; 27, the yonge; 28, no knyghtes; 31, but for all that / the hall; 32, they were all.

616. 2, that knewe; 7, that is of; 9, wherfore; 15, fyne ermynes; 16, olde man; 17, folowe after me; 19, olde man; [thus]; 20, fyr G. the good knyght; 21, old man; 23, for ye haue; 25, Pechere; 26, vnto them; that I fhall; 33, none but that he were.

617. 1, fyr B.; 4, had greate; 6, that he; 8, vpon kyng; 9, lye [by]; fyr G.; 12, knyghtes of the roude table; 13, went; 14, fyr G.; 18, [ryght]; hath; 21, vnto the; 27, to; 31, furete.

618. 2, in to y<sup>e</sup> fcawberde; 4, vnto you; 5, was belongynge vnto; 9, fyr B.; 11, all the other; 13, and she; 14, [that]; 15, fyr L. answered; 16, [with]; [how]; doynge ben; 17, to daye; mornynge; fyr L.; 19, now [he]; 20, be openly proued a lyer; one now; 22, fet [to]; 25, fyr L.; 27, yet are; 30, tell you; 32, And fo the damoyfell toke her leue &; 34, rounde table.

619. 5, longed to; 6, all the meanyng of [for this entent];



7, fyr G. ; 9, they all ; 13, for to take ; 14, And fo he dyd ; 16, in the ; there he began ; 18, and exceded all ; 22, quene Gueneuer ; 23, And whan ; 25, it is no ; 32, well faye that ; 33, of all the ; the eftates ; 34, Camelot mynftre ; And foo after that they wente to fouper.

**620.** 1, *wholly omitted* ; 4, to ryue ; 9, [afore] ; knyght that ; 11, on other ; dombe ; 19, vnto god ; his [good] ; 20, kyng A. ; ought gretly ; 21, Iefu Chryft ; 26, ony lenger ; 33, & auowed the fame ; 34, *wholly omitted* ; 35, And anone ; 36, gaynfay.

**621.** 5, for there ; many dye ; 10, in to his eyen & fayd ; 11, fyr G. fyr G. ; 13, more here ; 20, is to me grete ; 22, [ther] y<sup>t</sup> no tongue myght ; 26, bycaufe thofe knyghtes fholde departe ; 30, that haue.

**622.** 1, [and] ; theyr ladyes ; 2, fyr G. ; 4, fyr L. ; 7, [of the world] ; 8, and fo therfore ; 10, Than was ; 11, fayd vnto the quene / Madame in as moche as ye knowe it of a certaynte ; 14, fyr G. ; 16, he refte hym ; daye lyght ; 18, wente he ; fyr G. ; & vnto ; 19, kyng A. ; fayd agayn ; 20, fyr G. fyr G. ; 24, thou wylte ; 29, that there ; 31, to the ; fyr L. ; fyr G. ; 33, were all ; 37, had taken ; y<sup>e</sup> Sancgreall.

**623\*.** 1, by [the] ; 2, rounde table ; 5, [and helde her] ; 6, fo that ; apperceyue ; 7, went in to the ; 8, O fyr Launcelot ; 9, to [the] ; 10, fayd fyr L. / I praye ; 13, [he] be to you ; 15, vpon ; 20, lord of that caftel ; 26, beft lyked ; 27, fyr G. ; fo he ; 30, to a ; 31, he was ; 32, of two ; rounde table ; 33, and that other was ; 34, vnto hym ; 35, to fouper.

**624.** 1, fayd they it ; 3, but yf ; or els ; 5, this ftrauge ; 6, 8, fyr G. ; kyng B. ; 8, I agree ; 9, [me] ; 10, 16, kyng B. ; 15, and therfore ; 17, the beft ; 19, fyr G. ; it wyl ; you [to] ; 20, ye knowe ; [that] ; you here ; fyr G. ; 21, [good] ; 22, the whiche fholde bryng ; 23, a two ; in a ; 24, [And] ; a goodly ; 26, in the ; 27, kyng B. ; 29, and threfte hym ; 37, from me.

**625.** 1, nor [for] ; 5, to no ; vnto fyr ; 6, kyng B. ; asked hym ; 7, I am fore woudeid fayd he / & full harde ; 8, to an ; 10, and his wounde was loked vnto ; 14, king B. ; 16, fyr G. ; 17, his armure ; 19, to god ; 20, 23, 25, fyr G. ; 21, that fhall ; 22, fyr V. ; 27, . xxx . yere ; that toke ; 28, [hooly] ; and at ; 30, vnto a ; 31, came vnto.

**626.** 1, the whiche ; 2, vpon a ; 4, vnto ; that he ; 6, [there] ; 7, vnto the ; 11, Tollome ; kyng E. ; 13, and than anone ; 14, vpon ; 16, fmytten of ; he bare ; 18, & touche ; 22, than was ; 25, or not ; 26, whiche at.

**627.** 1, deth bedde ; 2, made grete ; 4, thou fhalte [departe] ; 5, [of yours] ; on the ; 6, ryght gladly fayd Iofeph ; the sheelde ;

7, in to y<sup>e</sup>; 11, but that; 13, no man; 14, fyr G.; 15, shall haue it; 16, the whiche; 25, fyr G.; besought hym; 26, tyll that; 27, wyll ye; 28, hygh ordre; 29, vpon me; And so; and than they; 31, full grete; 33, where as was; 34, fayd he I deme.

**628.** 1, fyr G.; 6, nere me; 7, fyr G.; 8, but quyckly; 9, lepe out therof; 12, voyce that fayd; [enuyronne]; 13, hurte the; 16, curfed body; 20, [in the Tombe]; [for]; 21, hardnes; 26, was but; 27, fyr G.; 28, all that; on the; 33, fyr G.; [that]; 34, vpon you; 37, me [a]; 38, fyr G.; Than fayd fyr M.

**629.** 2, graunte you fayd fyr G.; 7, vnto a; on that; 9, for to; 10, that thou goo not; 13, not there; 14, fyr M. vnto fyr G.; 17, 19, fyr G.; 18, Nay I pray; 21, fyr M. rode; 30, come; 32, defende.

**630.** 5, A fyr M.; 7, that other; 8, he fayd . Sir; 10, fyr G.; 13, fyr M.; 16, And fyr; 18, 20, fyr G.; of the leues; 20, [euer]; And than; 22, vnto the grounde; 25, of the; 30, it pleaseth god; 36, the space of.

**631.** 2, fyr G.; 3, in hand; 9, were so; 11, of a true and good lyuer; 14, of the holy; for to be; 17-18, [and no knyztly dedes in worldly werkes]; 18, is the; 19, from fyr; 21, and these were; 22, holy knight fyr G.; 23, and the; doth signyfye; 24, entyerly; fyr M.; withoute ony; 26, fyr G.; betoke; 28, fe you; good helth; fyr G.; 29, he toke; 32, that was; 33, alwayes wonte; or that he.

**632.** 4, fayd thus; [thow] now; vnto; 5, all the wycked; 7, Whan as; 10, the whiche hyghte; 12, 14, fyr G.; 16, knyght fayd the olde man / to returne; 17, fayd fyr; 18, his armures; 20, that fayd; 22, for to; here ouer this; fayd fyr; 23, And so he departed; And than he; 24, fayd . Syr knyghte; 25, forbyd you that; 26, Fayre felowe fayd fyr G. I am comen [for]; 27, Syr fayd the squyer; 28, fyr G.; 31, fawe fyr; 32, fyr G.; 33, they all for; 34, Than fyr.

**633.** 5, fyr G.; 6, vntyll; 8, the whiche fayd to hym; 10, ftrete; 11, & they fayd; 12, And than; came vnto; 14, here [to]; 15, and wycked custome; 16, fyr G.; 17, all thofe; 20, fayd fyr G.; And thā the gentylwoman; 21, rychely bounden; 22, ye this; 23, And whan; 24, there a; vnto fyr; 27, whiche; 29, a ful fayre; 37, vpon a; 38, to me.

**634.** 4, yere tofore; 9, fyr G.; 10, [these]; 12, her yonger; 14, to do; vnto the dukes; 15, on the; 16, one vnto fyr; [that] fyr G.; 17, fyr G. and fyr V.; 18, And than he toke; 19, to god; 20, y<sup>e</sup> history; after that; was departed; 21, many dyuers; 22, fo at; vnto y<sup>e</sup>; where as; 23, the very way; 24, for to folowe; vnto; 25, fyr M.; 26, had done; Truly; 27, all the; 32, he is blyffull; 33, stode thus; 34, grete ioye.

**635.** 6, came vnto; 8, And than; banyffhed; 12, one of y<sup>e</sup> feuen; 20, and fro whens he came; 21, fayd he; 26, called h̄y; 27, fayd the good man; 28, you vnto; 32, fo euer he gooth; 34, for truly; 36, by your two all alone; 37, y<sup>t</sup> he.

**636.** 2, [Ihesu]; 3, whiche; 4, good knyght fyr G.; 6, thraldome; 13, *wholly omitted*; 15, rounde table; 16, had rydden; 20, and fpeketh; [we]; of the noble knyght fyr G.; 22, vnto a; 24, but none of them bothe; vpon his fone; 26, and fyr; foo harde; 27, bothe hors; 29, and yf the fwerde had not; 31, These; were; 34, certaynly; fyr L. and fyr P.

**637.** 1, whan fyr G.; 2, withall with the; 3, frowarde them; fyr G.; 5, within a; 6, with an; vs aske; 8, came vnto; 11, vnto a; 14, not well; 17, to a; he put of; 18, he wente vnto; 20, [clene]; 21, [clene]; 23, a greate; 25, came agayne; 26, and his; 30, bothe.

**638.** 3, And thus a greate; 5, but he coude fe no; 8, fyr L.; 9, vp ryght; 11, the holy; to me; 12, this greate maladye; vpon; and vpon; 15, this maladye; 17, agayne with the candelftycke; fyr L.; 18, it became; 20, 21, afterwarde; 21, vp ryght; 22, Than anone; 23, Certaynly; 24, ryght hertely / for; haue ryght greate; 25, whiche hath had neyther grace nor; 26, durynge the tyme that this holy vessell hath ben here present; 27, that this fame knight is defouled with some maner of deedly fynne / wherof; 36, fo they.

**639.** 1, hymselfe vp ryght; 2, there seen; 3, he herde; 10, had more; 11, vnto his; 13, that his helme; was taken; 15, wretchednesse; 21, and also; 24, foules of the ayre; Than was he; 26, he well; 27, a wyld; 28, vnto an hygh mountayne / and there he; 29, to; 30, fyr L.; vpon bothe his knees; [on]; 31, that he had done; fyr L.; 32, the heremyte to hym and; his confeffyon; 34, of the noble; 35, whiche; 36, and gretely magnyfyed. And now it is fo / my; 37, and caytyfe of the world; Than the; 38, fo fore.

**640.** 6, with your; 9, ought for to gyue vnto god; 10, to you; 11, to god; 12, to drede; 15, and made full heuy chere; 16, tell me trouth; 19, whiche; 22, [and oute of mesure longe] many yeres; 32, the heremyte by his fayth that he wolde no more come in her company. Loke.

**641.** 1, here tofore; 2, [hand]; meruaylle therof; 3, that a; 7, more harder; 8, neyther by; 11, [of] grace; 13, for to; you [the]; 14, & hath gyuen you; ye haue; 15, all tymes; ye came; 16, you no; ye shall; 17, ye wyll or not; 18, bytterer; 21, I shall; 23, lorde Iesu Chryft; 25, coude not fynde one in all; 27, in the; 28, with leues; 32, neyther; 33, Certaynly; 37, enioyned.

**642.** 1, fo he; prayed hym; ¶ Here leueth the story; and fo

endeth the . xiiij . booke of this present volume. ¶ Here after the . xiiij . booke whiche treateth of the noble knyght fyr P. ; etc.

### Book xiiij.

**642.** 8, G. his sone; 9, here aboue reherfed; 11, whiche; 12, and anone; 14, fayd he; 15, So whan; 16, made passyngre grete; gretely she loued; 17, all other knyghtes of the worlde; for so of ryght she; 18, that the; shold be; 19, fyr P.; 21, vnto.

**643.** 1, I was somtyme called; 3, so moche my; 4, grete pyte; [that]; 5, she was; 6, ye ony; from your; 7, herde not of her in a grete whyle; haue dremed; 8, Certaynly; 12, our lyfe; 15, fayd his aunte; [this]; he oughte; 18, handes; 22, reforte vnto; 29, suche a; 30, that sholde; 33, do to the achyeuyngre of; 37, and of.

**644.** 1, whiche herde; 3, fyt therin; [al]; 4, whiche; And than; 6, vpon; 12, that is; 14, folowe after; 17, [there]; 21, And after; 22, that was well closed; 24, in to a; 25, full good; there all; 26, a maffe; 35, were all.

**645.** 1, how his; 3, vnto our; 4, and fayd on hygh; 5, layde hym; 6, for to; 8, vnto; 9, receyued it; and he; 16, that hyght; 17, alwayes; 18, vpon a; 20, tyll that; 23, whan; 24, may ones; 27, the knyght; 29, ye shall openly fe that your; & or than; 31, aboute a thre; 34, [that] ye be; & knyght of.

**646.** 1, and knewe his; 2, made of hym; 5, that was [dedely]; 6, and fayd / of; 8, grounde; 10, groude; 14, [me]; 17, groude; 19, for to; 20, or els; 23, fawe sir G.; had grete; 25, [And thēne he]; 33, me or desyre me; 37, may I not; 38, hym you; ony other man.

**647.** 1, in my lyfe so; 4, ryghte well; 10, rydyngre after; 12, [fir]; 13, why [fyr]; that of me; fayd the yeman / that; hath taken from; 14, me by; 15, so euer he; 16, that I sholde do; 19, folowe; how ye; 20, mouēd vpon; 28, forth his.

**648.** 1, [grete] euyl; 8, yndly; fyr P.; 14, tyll; 15, that rored; 18, passe ouer it; 19, the fygne; on his; 21, & makyng; 22, to hym; 23, [the] whiche; 27, fawe he; 28, [the] whiche; 34, as soone as.

**649.** 2, the moost; 3, and there . . . . till; 4, [hym]; 7, Whan fyr P.; 8, that / he; the whiche; 9, put of; 11, lyke a; 12, hym with his hande vpon; and gaue thankynges vnto god; 14, hym vnto the place that he came fro; 15, story; 16, he was; the whiche; 18, perfytely in almyghty god our sauyour and redemer Iesu Chryft; 19, more in confyderacyon; 20, the noble knyght fyr P.; 21, that

no; 22, hym nor peruerte hym out; for to endure and perfeuer; 27, there mette with hym two; 29, & that other; 35, who was her; 37, and wyfte not where she became.

**650.** 3, to me; 4, fayd he; 7, [as he gat his pray]; 8, [Saye me for what caufe ye flewe hym]; 9, well that; 10, a more; 16, faue fyth; 17, And therefore; place someuer; 20, his vifion; 25, at the border; 28, good man; 29, rounde table; 31, dureffe and myferye; neuer am I; 32, ye not; yf ye; 33, hygh ordre of knyghthode; and alfo of; 34, and sholde be; nor mystruft that; sholde hurte nor fere you.

**651.** 2, She that; 3, lyon (fayd the good man); 23, lyon that; 24, [and he ftryked hym vpon the back]; 27, come; 31, was a; 32, was rychely befeen; 34, in to this.

**652.** 4, And than; 5, fayd fyr P.; who tolde; 6, [Now] Damoyfel fayd fir P.; 10, [knyghte]; 12, shall fommon; 13, [to fulfyll]; 14, [now]; 15, to a; 16, in to that; 18, was his; drowned; 21, lately; truly madame fayd he / I haue eten; 23, good & holy; 29, me this.

**653.** 4, taken from hym; 8, gete them; 9, And bycaufe I; 11, that is; 12, & yf she; 16, to brynge; 21, meet ynough; 22, [ynough]; table moche meet; 23, And there was fo grete plente that fyr P. had grete meruayle therof; 25, as hym; withall; 29, his loue; And than; 30, for bycaufe; 31, [euer]; 32, chafed.

**654.** 1, ye fayre lady; 3, what someuer shall; 4, that I mooft defyre; 9, vpon the; 12, on his; 13, withall; 15, cryed out; 16, [ne]; 17, that was nere; 18, in to the; 20, cryenge / that; 21, that all; 26, my good; 27, self [a]; 28, that whiche; 29, whiche is my; 32, oryent come; 33, And than was.

**655.** 1, how he had done fyth he departed from hym; 2, that lad me; 3, fynne / & tolde hym all; 4, ye her not; [Syr] nay fayd he; 9, vpon the.

### Book xv.

**656.** 1, Now whan; 11, fayd he; 12, [good man]; here deed; 14, a relygyous man; 18, & an; 19, fo hardy; but that he wolde; 26, where as; 31, [the] whiche; 32, fawe that; 33, vnkel [the].

**657.** 9, vpon a day; 12, for to haue; 13, no more; 14, preferred hym; 15, [alle]; 16, man the; 21, in the fyre; 22, and yet was; on the; 24, skynne peryffhed; 26, haue tolde you the trouth; 27, with an horrible; 31, countree fayd the good man; 33, may ye; 35, longe of; were ye.

**658.** 3, fayd fyr; 4, on the; 5, Than fayd fyr; 8, you skynne;

and gretely ; 10, of the holy ; 15, [thenne] ; 16, fyr L. ; 19, more nerer ; 23, good herborowe ; eafe you ; 27, toke of ; 28, to the ; 29, he myght neuer agayn ; 31, hym that he had a vyfyon . That hym thought there ; 32, all be compaffed.

**659.** 1, [the] heuen ; 2, Than fyr L. ; 3, to heuen ; 4, opened ; & that an ; 16, his helme ; 17, And whan ; 21, vnto ; 22, had almoost ; 24, & toke his hors ; 30, fyr L. ; 34, at a.

**660.** 1, Now fyr L. ; 2, haue vnderfande ; 3, this . After the ; 7, a ryght holy ; 10, Lyfyas ; 12, [there] ; 15, 22, [the] whiche ; 19, that thou ; 22, begate vpon ; 24, an erthely fynner ; 27, fyr L. ; 34, [and to alle] vnto.

**661.** 1, fyr L. ; 4, moche the ; 7, praye thou onely vnto god ; 10, that it greued ; 19, theyr horfes ; 20, all vpon ; 21, wherof fyr L. meruayled gretly ; 23, vnto the worste ; 24, [there] ; 26, bothe hors ; vnto ; 30, doo fuche dedes ; 32, to wery ; wynne hym.

**662.** 1, that he ; 3, all they ; 6, and than ; 9, forowe and fayd . Neuer ; 10, [neuer] ; but that ; the better ; 13, in defpayre ; 15, he there ; 17, to pasture ; 18, fyr L. ; 20, lyghtly turned ; 22, he became ; Than he armed hym and ; 25, fyr L. ; 26, bycaufe he ; 28, what he wente ; 31, he told her ; 32, for to tell.

**663.** 1, fyr L. ; 2, meruaylouft ; 3, & the ; 7, lord Iesu Chryft ; 9, for to ; 10, the good kynge ; 12, clothed in ; tell the ; On the daye ; 22, vnto that ; 24, in the ; 29, were foo ; 31, vnto ; 37, with the.

**664.** 9, vnto god ; 12, toke the water ; with a ; 14, and without ony worde fpekyng ; 15, paffed forth ; he became.

### Book xvi.

**664.** 23, and all that whyle coude he fynde ; vpon a ; 24, that fyr G. ; 25, of them made ; fo that ; 26, they two talked vnto the other and.

**665.** 2, they all ; 3, [haue] ; 5, fyr P. ; 6, nor of ; [foure] ; 7, no erthly ; 9, and yf ; four knyghtes ; 11, yf [they] thofe knyghtes ; 12, remenaunt of vs knyghtes of the rounde table to recouer it ; [as] fyr E. and fyr G. ; 13, vpon a ; 14, was all to wafed and broken ; that it femed ; 16, & than thofe two knyghtes ; and there they were in theyr ; 17, And foone after they fet ; 18, And fo as fyr E. and fyr G. fpak ; 19, of other ; 20, full ftraunge & meruaylous aduentures in dremynge . And fyrft of fyr G. ; that he ; 22, the whiche ; 23, [al] ; one of the thre ; 27, Let vs go hens ; 33, fyr G.

**666.** 1, fyr E.; 3, of one; 4, vnto the; 8, And than; 10, of that; 12, fro whens he came; thus alwaye flepyng fir E. dremed that he and his brother fyr L. rode vnto the tyme they came; 14, where at that tyme was; 15, that sayd; 17, a lytell; fyr G. & fyr E.; 18, out of theyr flepe; And eche of them; 19, fyr E.; 20, fyr L.; 22, the hande was; 23, the fame hande henge; [ryght]; 24, full clere; 25, than it; 26, where it became; there came; 27, sayd vnto them; full of; 29, come vnto; of the holy; 30, fyr G.; fyr E.; 31, haue herde; 33, that we; 34, squyer that; 35, vpon a; fayre and curtefly; 36, fyr G.; can ye; vnto ony; Here within a lytell; 37, is one sayd the squyer; 38, on fote.

**667.** 2, in all this; 3, where as; well armed; 6, none that; [and] Now; 7, fyr E.; fyr G.; 9, eyther of them dressed to other for to; 11, and theyr mayles; that one; than that; 12, fyr G.; 15, fadelles downe to the grounde; Than anone; 16, fyr G. arofe; vnto his; 18, for to; fyr G.; 21, here by; 22, fyr G.; 24, you the waye; Than fyr G.; 25, And so fyr G. lepte vpon the fame hors behynde hym for; 26, longe they rode tyll they came vnto; where as; [wel]; 27, and maker; Than this knyght that was wounded to deth prayed fyr G.; 29, fyr G.; what maner knyght he was / and what was his name / as he knewe; 30, Than the hurte knyght answered; & haue ben; 31, thou and I were sworne; 32, and wyte ye well that my; 33, fyr V.; whiche; 34-35, and haue laboured in the quest of the Sancgreall / as thyfelfe fyr G. and many other knyghtes haue done. And my deth I praye to god that he wyll forgyue it the. For now from hens forth it shall be sayd / that the; etc.

**668.** 1, fyr G.; is thus; fyr V.; [moche]; 4, vnto; 5, and vnto all those of the rounde table; 6, for the; 7, fyr G. began; & in lyke wyfe dyd fyr E.; fyr V.; 9, foule departed; 11, his name to be wryten vpon his tombe; 12, So than; fyr G.; fyr E.; 13, they rode; 14, 15, vnto; 17, there was; where as; 18, he that; 19, he espyed; 20, and full curtefly; 21, sayd the heremyte; hath brought; fyr G.; 22, Syrs; 24, for to; 25, fyr G.; 26, whiche he had; fyr E.; 30, that ben; 31, at no tyme; 32, table ordeyned and founden; 34, be vaynquysshed nor ouercomen; 35, that she; And at the.

**669.** 1, dyd ete; 2, set and grounded; 3, And all those bulles; very proude; 5, grete synnes and for theyr outragyous wyckednesse; 6, is for to; 7, excepte; the whiche; 8, whyte bulles; 9, ony spotte or wemme; 11, euer fythen; 12, all his offence; 13, And wherfore; by theyr; for bycause that they; 14, and in; no maner of pryde; 17, of the holy; withoute ony; 18, 19, in to the; 25, the heremyte N.; fyr E.; that fyr; 27, the whiche; 29, whiche is;

30, That is to meane; 31, fro his; sayd the heremyte / and hath; 32, vnto; [lowde]; all his; 33, vestyted and clothed; 34, the whiche.

**670.** 3, vpon in; flepe dremynge; ¶ And also; 5, that he; 7, that men; [hit] to; 8, nyghe vnto; 9, hym as he that; 11, down for to drynke; 13, And bycause he had serued; 17, and there shall he; 20, where as; 22, not into; 24, of our lord I.; 27, of the holy; 28, Certaynly; fyr G.; that fele I; 32, [gladly].

**671.** 2, ye are; 4, well faye; 5, fyth that; neuer flewe; 6, tyll the tyme he come to; 8, And were not that he is so; 9, lyke to; fyr G.; 10, well his; 11, a full holy; 13, fyr G.; 14, wyll nothyng; 17, these wordes; to god; 18, agayn fyr G.; 19, [that] ye; 22, vnto oure lorde; 23, fyr G.; 25, afore &; 26, Than fyr G.; 27, fyr E.; 28, vnto a; 31, fyr B.; 32, vpon; 33, knewe full well that.

**672.** 1, fyr B. / I am; 7, [that]; 8, fyr B.; 10, bothe in to; 13, wylte ete; 14, sayd fyr B.; 16, I well; 21, scarlot; tyll that; 24, therof / and felte; 25, Helyne; 29, ony leues; 31, his byll; 34, fyr B.; 35, that the; dyd not aryfe; 36, and rode forth his; So aboute; tyme by.

**673.** 2, a lufy yonge; and a fayre; 4, to his fouper; 6, of his; 7, And so he did as he was bydden; 13, there came; 16, Prydan; 17, made grete; 22, the whiche; 23, I am; 24, toke vnto her; in keynge; 27, chace; 28, to me; 33, that she wyll haue.

**674.** 2, fyr P.; 4, fyr B.; 5, wolde he; 8, And than; 9, Hym thought there; that one; 10, as ony; and that; 12, Yf thou; 15, and went awaye / And than; 19, she departed; 20, vnto a; 22, lyke to lyles; 23, haue taken from the other her; 24, that the one; 25, came [oute]; 28, groude; 31, fyr B. awaked; 34, fyr B. her; so they; 35, And anone.

**675.** 1, Than fyr B.; his armure; 2, for to take; his refeccon; 5, so departed; 8, me grete; 11, shall withdrawe; 12, that had; [that] his; 13, make all the landes to reioyfe; 18, grounde; 19, fet theyr; 21, ranne downe by theyr; more greter; 22, [more] than; fir P.; 23, a full good; 24, this fyr; 27, backwarde; 31, or elles; 33, neuer more; 34, shall be towarde her; fyr B.

**676.** 1, fyr B. vnto; [tho]; 2, that he; 3, to her; 7, [wel]; 10, vnto an; 11, vnto a; 12, And on the; 13, fyr B.; 15, of [the] two; 16, fyr L.; 20, in more; 21, all bloody; 22, [euer]; 24, for to; 25, loked on; 31, where as; 32, he came nygh her; that he was a; 33, haue had; 34, to hym; 35, ye are; [in]; 36, to the.

**677.** 1, whiche as I; [that]; you a knyght; 3, fyr B.; 4, that he wyft not; 8, sayd all; 10, fyr L.; none of thefe; 11, for our



ladyes fake; 12, And so he dressed; 13, ladde the; to hym . Syr; 14, leue your; 15, was all; 17, 21, fyr B.; 19, fyr B. bete; 22, of hym at; [fir]; 24, I shall gladly do it sayd fyr B.; 26, there as; 27, For yf I; 29, foreft sayd fyr B.; 30, not with; 32, [not]; had taken from me; 34, As she stode thus.

**678.** 1, fyr B.; made they; 3, fyr B.; 5, to god; 6, So than; fyr L.; 8, man whiche was; vpon a; 9, a beer; 10, sayd fyr B.; 11, a lytell space ago; fyr B.; 13, [for]; 14, in a thycke; 15, fyr L.; 16, grounde; 17, there a; 19, he that; 21, [lyghtely]; 22, of the; 23, vnto the; the waye vnto; 24, sayd the man; 29, vnto; & than wyll we come hyther; 30, fyr B.; 31, you sayd fyr B. / that ye wyll tell; 33, whiche befell me; fyr B. began; 34, [foo moche].

**679.** 1, sayd the preeft / I shall; 4, the as; 7, for to; noo fere ne for noo drede that; 10, conquere the prayse and the vaynglorye; 11, yf thou; fyr L.; 15, full easely; 18, for to; 19, he asked; 22, declaracyon; 24, fyr B.; 36, no more; neyther for.

**680.** 1, lady of estate; 2, B. sayd they; we all; 4, lady whiche; 6, was all; 11, fyr B.; 14, 17, [ryght]; fir B.; 19, [that]; 21, sayd fyr B.; of wyse; 22, [hym]; 26, A sayd fyr B.; 27, vp in to; 34, Than fyr B. loked.

**681.** 3, within hym; leuer than he had loft his foule / they; 4, [than he his]; And so; 5, vnto the; that fodeyne chaunce; was ryght fore; 6, full grete; And with that; 7, a full grete; 10, he dyd brynge; 11, to heuen; 13, forth his; 16, he was; 18, yf that; 22, fyr B.; 23, that he; 29, rychely ferued; 31, fyr B.; 32, that he was; 35, in [the]; a foule.

**682.** 6, lorde Iesu Chryft; 10, it dooth; ye toke; 11, ye shall; 14, the whiche; 17, but she is ryght fayre and beautefull; 18, byrde that ye sawe; Sathan the feende of hell; 19, [how]; 21, in maner and condycyon the very feruauntes; 23, full euyll; And whan; 32, fyr L.

**683.** 3, [for]; 11, vnto a; 16, on the one; 17, fyr B.; 23, tyll vpon; 25, grete ioye; 27, fyr L.; fyr B.; 33, ye haue ryght well; from henfforth.

**684.** 3, fyr L.; 4, but dethe; 5, [in]; 7, Syr B.; 8, for thou arte; 11, thou be; at thyne; 12, yf thou do so; vpon y<sup>e</sup>; as thou; 13, on; 14, thyne; that fynne; I not; 17, 18, fyr L.; 19, [fwete]; 21, [to] fyr L. cared not; 23, he wold; Whan fyr L.; 24, otherwyse do; not ryse; 25, fyr B.; 26, [fo] fore; 28, fyr L.; fro his; 29, for to; 32, had he; 34, sayd he; vnto fyr; 35, on me.

**685.** 2, one of; 3, condycyoned; Now so god helpe me; fyr L.; 5, Certaynly; 7, fyr L.; 9, went backward; 12, [foo]; that fyr C.; a knyghte of; 13, as it was; 15, how fyr L.; 18, fyr B.;

Syr L. ; 20, fyr L. ; 27, ony more ; 28, fyr L. ; he put ; 30, Than fyr ; 33, fyr B. ; 34, fyr C. ; 35, fight ; yf that fyr C. flee h̄y ; 38, be his.

686. 1, for to haue ; 2, on his ; [hym] ; tyll that ; fyr C. ; 3, fyr L. ; 4, and had ; 5, fo that ; fo moche ; 10, Certaynly ; fyr L. ; 12, fyr B. ; he arofe & ; 16, cryed fyr C. ; and fayd ; 18, [it] ; 19, [for] to ; 20, of his helme . Whan fyr C. ; 21, Fayre lord Iesu Chryft ; 24, [here] ; 25, fyr L. ; 27, fyr C. ; 29, goddes fake ; 32, on the ; yf I may ; 33, [hand] fayd fyr L. ; fyr B. ; 35, to daye.

687. 2, not gretely ; 4, lorde god I beseche the ; some myracle ; 6, fyr B. ; 7, Than herde ; fyr B. ; 10, in the ; 11, [two] ; 12, fo that ; 14, fyr B. ; 15, fore that god ; 20, agaynst you ; 21, [gladly] ; 25, vnto hym ; 26, [in the myddes of] ; on his ; 28, And he rode ; 29, vpon the ; 30, there he ; 33, was anone fo darke ; 34, not fe nor.

688. 2, [lye] ; And than he ; 4, was all ; and [he] ; 5, fyr B. ; do ye not knowe me ; 6, Certaynly ; 8, And than fyr P. ; 9, made of other ; for to here ; 10, fyr B. ; how that ; 12, [hand] ; 13, in to ; 16, but the good knyght fyr G.

### Book viij.

689. 1, As fayth ; fyr G. ; 2, fyr P. ; 3, he rode ; 4, foude there ; 5, [the] whiche ; 7, y<sup>t</sup> he ; 8, [wonder] ; 9, within were ; 10, And whan ; 12, put forth ; 13, fell to ; 15, dyd there ; 16, meruayled therof ; fyr G. ; 20, [the haute prynce] ; 21, that wolde ; 23, fyr G. ; 25, fyr E. ; 26, fyr G. ; 27, loue bycaufe ; 30, fyr G. ; 31, that ther ; no man ; 32, he became ; fyr G. ; 33, vnto fyr E. / the wordes are true ; fyr L. ; 36, that is in ; and certaynly.

690. 1, of a ; fyr E. ; 2, 3, fyr G. ; 4, in to the ; 6, fyr G. and fyr E. ; 7, 8, fyr G. ; 10, And fo ; 11, full glad whan ; that he ; So whan ; 13, 16, fyr G. ; 15, that ; 17, whiche ; 18, Than fyr ; 19, 22, fyr G. ; 25, So the damoyfell ; myght gallop ; 26, that was ; 27, that was clofed ; 28, with [a] ; hygh and stronge ; 29, with fyr ; 31, the damoyfell fayd to her lady . Madame ; 32, all this nyght ; 33, dyned and slepte a lytel.

691. 1, and he were bothe ; 2, fyr G. ; fayre sheelde and a ; 3, and rode tyll ; 4, fyr B. ; fyr P. ; 7, fayd the damoyfell ; 10, bothe receyued hym ; 12, vnto a ; 13, Than fyr G. toke of ; 14, shyppe came ; 16, [hard] ; 17, fayd fyr ; 19, comen hyther ; 21, A fyr ; fir B. ; yf that ; 23, sholde lacke nothyng ; fyr G.

692. 1, that am ; 2, y<sup>t</sup> ye ; 4, in y<sup>e</sup> shyppe ; 5, it wyll ; in it ;

6, fyr P. knewe; 10, fyr G.; 12, within; they foude it fo; 14, fyr G.; 16, scawberd; 18, in it; 24, it / shall; 28, he shall; 30, whiche he; 33, fyr P.; 35, Syr B.; 36, fyr G.; as reed as.

**693.** 1, scawberde; 3, vnto the; sayd fyr; 4, scawberd; 7, vnto all; [al] onely vnto; 30, scawberde.

**694.** 1, whiche femed; 3, poorely to accounte; 5, He that; 6, yf that; as I; 10, to be; 11, a quenes; 14, fyr P.; 18, neccessyfte; I shall be; 19, vnto; 20, fyr P.; aboute a; of our lorde; 21, the brother; 22, than foure; 24, in [to] the; 25, it befell; 26, and therin; 29, out of that; 31, man sawe; 32, 33, for to; 38, of the swerde; ouer this.

**695.** 4, was in; 7, the one of the other; 8, kynge M.; 13, the scawberde; 14, vpon the bedde; 16, yf ye; 20, O lord; 25, fyr G.; in these; 36, therwithall.

**696.** 1, [hym]; 4, fyr G.; 6, beddes hede; two fayre; 8, ony blode; 9, [thre]; 15, that; 16, And bycaufe; 17, in to y<sup>e</sup> groude; 20, came vnto; 23, that was; whyte became as grene as ony; 24, oute; 33, [and fee]; that tyme that; 37, and of; 38, [dyuerse].

**697.** 2, he displeafed them; 3, voyce answered; 4, vnto; 6, vnto man; 7, forowe or heuynes; that fame; 8, kynge Salomon; 13, a pure; 14, as was; 20, that she; 26, and the best; 27, vnto; 28, all other; 29, and also that shall; 33, take ye.

**698.** 3, [dyd]; 5, for to; 7, at the beddes fete; 8, was the kynge; 10, so bygge a; 13, shall neuer; 17, sayd the carpenter; 19, as the carpenter; 22, well make; 26, done full; 27, they coude not tell; 32, [Now shalle ye here a] ¶ Of the wonderful tale, etc.; 33, king S.; with a small; 34, kyng S. was.

**699.** 4, in the hyltes; 8, was fore; 10, in to the; and it; 11, of it; 13, kynge S.; 16, were acertayned; 17, withoute ony; 19, they founde; fyr P.; 20, a wrytynge; 21, fro whens; 22, fyr G.; 24, sayd fyr P.; 35, well founde; for truly; 36, your techyng ben; 37, vpon the; 38, the thre felowes; ryght name.

**700.** 3, 4, scawberde; 5, vnto fyr; 8, fyr G.; 9, that it; 15, Fayre damoyfell; fyr G.; 17, that other shyppe; 19, it happened; 24, fir G.; 26, they spake; 28, A.'s courte; 29, ye are euyll arryued; 30, cheef fortrefse; 33, be comen; 34, sayd they; 35, [in].

**701.** 2, sholde they dye; 3, therwithall; renne togyder; 5, vpon hym; and in lyke wyfe; fyr G.; fyr B.; 7, had lefte; 8, they began; 9, the knyghtes of the; 10, strongest; folowed after; 11, foo they; 12, right / and; So whan; 13, whiche they; 14, fyr B.; 17, he wyll; 18, 23, fyr G.; 23, put of; 25, ben of the courte; 27, yf ye myght; 28, worlde shall; ye neuer; 29, fyr G.; 32, [that]; [lord] the; [not]; 36, And bycaufe.

**702.** 2, to bete; 6, y<sup>t</sup> they; 9, that our; 10, fir G.; 13, whiche; fyr G.; 14, had he neuer feen; 15, full tendyrly; 18, fyr G.; 19, it. Sir G.; 22, his helthe the; 23, fyr G.; 24, as he; [Ryght]; 25, fyr P.; 29, vnto a; 30, where as; 31, entred in; 32, vnto.

**703.** 4, other vnto; 5, thyrde vnto; 6, theyr siege; where as; 8, that sayd thus; 9, in to the; of the; 10, was not; 11, grounde; 13, themfelfe; 16, ye are; 18, to whome; 19, vnto an; 30, in the; 31, that from; 33, on the; 34, vnto; 35, vnto a; 36, [them].

**704.** 5, fyr P.; place fo euer; 6, she is; oute of the castell; 8, a gentywoman; 12, fyr G.; 13, that of; 14, as longe as; fyr P.; 15, my fayth; 19, vnto; 21, came there; well a; all armed; 22, vpon; 25, are the; doo ye; 27, 29, fyr G.; 30, And fyr G.; 32, whome that; wolde abyde; 33, but that they; 35, helde they; 36, there came.

**705.** 4, we are; 6, accorde therto; 8, fyr G.; 12, the trowth; 13, we haue; 14, other moo; 16, to a; 18, full of the; 20, her helth; 21, therwith; 22, fyr P.; 23, fyr G.; Certainly; and yf; 26, vnto my; 29, than euer; 30, on the; 31, or not; All that; 34, was brought forth tofore her; [the] whiche.

**706.** 1, So anone there came one forth to; 3, vnto; 6, fyr G. fyr P. & fyr B. start; 7, her blode; 8, Than whan; 9, fyr P.; must dye; 11, in to a; 13, vnto the; 15, shall fyr G.; 16, So whan fyr B.; 17, he graüted; 18, voyce sayd; 20, vnto the; 22, hym / the; 29, vnto the; 30, lyghtnyng and reyne; 34, lorde god; 36, aferre; 37, vnto; 38, fyr G.

**707.** 6, *wholly omitted*; 7, [Now] the story faythe; fyr G. and fyr P.; 10, for to wete; betyde of them; 12, but that they ne were; 13, whiche; 19, eueryche of them; 22, fyr P.; fyr G.; 24, toke they; 26, The story fayth; fyr L.; 29, toke his; 32, he had; 33, a grete.

**708.** 2, his armure; 3, [foo]; 4, and oores; 5, moost fwetefst fauour; 7, [fwete]; 9, on the; 10, daye lyght; 12, fyr L. behelde her; 13, a wrytyng; wherin he found all the; 17, in lykewyfe fedde hym; 19, vpon a; 26, fyr L. went towarde hym; 27, Syr ye; 28, him his name; 29, fyr L.; 31, fyr L. / are ye fyr G.; 38, [to] them.

**709.** 1, And anone as fyr G.; 3, & that; 4, 9, fyr L.; 6, fyr G.; 9, tyll now; 11, fyr L. and fyr G.; 13, where as; 16, bycause those; 18, [therof]; [of alle tho aduentures]; 21, crosse of stone; 24, vpon; 25, Syr G.; 26, lepe; 27, ryde where; 28, vnto hym full curteyfly; 29, vnto hym; [fwete]; 30, of our lorde; fyr L.; 31, vnto the; 34, my sone fyr; fyr L.; 35, vnto the father of heuen for to preferue.

**710.** 1, bothe you and me; fyr G.; 2, fyr G.; fyr L.; 5, vnto god; haue a fyght of the holy; 6, vpon a; 8, that opened; 13, [foo] armed; he went vnto; 14, the two; he fet; 15, came there fodeynly; that; hym vpon; 17, y<sup>t</sup> fayd; 18, more in thy; 20, fyr L.; 22, that thou; 28, fyr L.; 32, moche for to; 34, that the.

**711.** 1, fyr L.; he wyfte; 4, my foule; here; 6, that whiche; 7, and with that there; 8, as though all; 10, vnto hym; fyr L.; 12, & was ryght heuy; one of them; 19, vnto fyr L.; there were; 22, fyr L.; 23, that the; 24, haue falle; 25, grounde; 26, he came; 28, foo he; 30, [hit]; 32, it all to brent; 33, groūde; [that].

**712.** 2, on; 3, day lyght; fyr L.; 4, [that]; 7, neyther ftande; 15, fyr L.; 16, as many; whiche [euer]; 17, lyke vnto a; 19, was better; 21, the greate; 24, can tell; & yf my fone had not; 27, as many nyghtes; how it was a; 34, of my.

**713\*.** 1, [that]; 6, ye fe more of; 8, fyr L.; 10, achyeue; 14, fyr L.; 16, And thā; 17, whiche had; 18, 24, kynges Pelles; 19, 22, fyr L.; 20, kynges made; 25, on y<sup>e</sup>; 28, that was there / and; of theyr; 29, chefe hall; than it was so that; 35, that a; vnto; 36, knocked myghtly.

**714\*.** 1, [there]; 4, that hath; 5, Than was he wonders; 8, coundree and realme; 9, fyr E.; vnto the noble knyght fyr L.; 10, kynges P.; [of] that; 11, fyr E.; 14, A lorde god; 15, fyr G.; 16, [to] me; 17, his courfer myght ren; 18, And than; 23, vnto god; 24, vnto an abbey; 25, he had grete chere; 28, lettres of gold; 29, y<sup>e</sup> whiche; 30, he not; 31, fyr L.; 32, yf it had; fyr G.; 34, domage to.

**715\*.** 1, vnto; 2, as fyr G.; 4, to C.; 5, as he; and quene G.; 7, thre of them; that were fyr G. / fyr E. / and fyr L.; 8, other whiche; Than all; 9, And kynges A.; 10, [many]; fyr G.; 11, fyr L.; 13, fyr G. / fyr P. and fyr B.; 15, wolde god; 16, fyr L.; 18, *wholly omitted*; 19, that fyr G.; 20, vnto; 22, on the; 23, fyr G.; 24, [the] whiche; a longe; 25, Sir G.; 26, [fo]; 32, is so taken; 33, was of deed oldnes; Whā fyr G.; 34, hym in his armes.

**716\*.** 1, fayd kynges M.; 4, 8, fyr G.; 7, that; 14, that fyr L.; 16, But Ioseph of; 17, And there he founde; fyr L.; 20, it is a; 21, to an ende; 22, all the knyghtes; 23, fyr G.; 24, they lad hym; vnto a; 25, vpon a fteyres; 28, that hath; 32, [wynter]; fyfty yeres; for to; 33, 35, fyr G.; 36, in to the.

**717.** 3, fyr P.; 5, vpon a; 7, at a; that rode; 9, eche; 10, other theyr aduentures; fyr B.; 11, there men; 15, them all; was there made; 16, he knewe well; 19, fyr B.; 20, yf [that]; foudred it agayne togyder; 21, 22, fyr P.; to fyr G.; 24, toke he; 28, vnto fyr B.; a full.

**718.** 3, fyr G.; hyed fore to be; 12, waye agayne; Syr G.; 14, & anguyffhe as ye fe / haue I; 26, that fayd; 34, the droppes.

**719.** 1, the whiche; 5, toke he; 6, a wapher; in the lykenes; 11, vnto a; 12, vnto fyr G.; 13, And than; 14, as he was bydden / fo he did [anone]; fayd he ye; 26, to fyr; 27, fo after; 29, he fayd; 30, fayd fyr G.; [will].

**720.** 1, vnto; 3, where as; 8, fir G.; 11, wyll I; 14, fyr G.; 16, [after]; bothe his; 20, vnto a; 22, that fayd thus. Myne owne; 25, lorde fayd they; vs foo [thy fynners]; 26, [wel]; 30, fyr G. vnto; [that]; 31, that ye wyl falewe; 32, and all the felawshyp of the; 33, that yf; in those partyes; 34, fyr G. / fyr P. and fyr B.

**721.** 2, [of] before; 6, passyng glad; for to; 8, and fyr; 9, vnto; [that] he myght; 10, And foo; tyll at the laft a; 13, Syr P.; 14, for to; 15, fyr G.; 18, that whan; 21, vnto fyr G.; 23, than he; 26, 29, fyr P.; fyr B.; and fyr; 31, fyt croked; 32, 34, 37, fyr G.; 36, he ranne; 37, there arose.

**722.** 3, fyr P.; 8, [whiche]; 14, [that]; 24, fyr G.; 25, for to; 27, that couered; 29, faye theyr deuocyons; the same daye; 30, after y<sup>t</sup> fyr G.; 31, vnto; 33, whiche had.

**723.** 2, fakerynge of; fyr G.; 3, vnto hym; 4, that whiche; 5, fyr G. began; ryght fore; 8, that whiche; 9, good lorde; 11, vnto fyr; 12, whome I am; 14, [the] whiche; 15, [that]; 16, resembled me in two; One is that; 17, And the other is in that; 18, [haue ben and]; 19, fyr G. went to fyr P.; 25, vnto; 27, his two; 31, for to; 32, fyr P. and fir B. sawe fyr G.

**724.** 1, was he; 3, 8, 9, fyr B.; 4, bycause he; 8, fyr G. 12, by good; 13, And than; 14, where kyng A.; made greate; 15, demed all; 17, kyng A.; 19, fyr B.; 20, his two; 21, was fyr G. and fyr P. [and hym self]; 22, Than fyr L.; 24, vnto; 25, Syr G.; [owne]; 29, fyr G.; for to; 30, this vnstedfast; 31, fall true; fyr L.; 32, Than fyr; 35, me redy; 36, whyle I haue lyfe; 37, fayle you.

### Book viiiij.

**725.** 4, that alle the knyghtes; 7, And specyally; 12, as the frenshhe; for to; 15, in his; 17, vnto god; 18, vpon the; 19, had done; 20, [hand]; 21, moost specially; 22, So it; 24, whiche; 27, always as.

**726.** 3, to hym thus; 8, haue in tyme paff; fyr L.; 11, my deseruyng; [that] my; 15, fone fyr G. / fyr P. / or fir B.; 19, that speke; 20, this place; 23, and rydde; 24, where as; 32, [my pleafyr]; 36, fo she.

**727.** 2, [wel]; 4, of me; 5, fayd she; 7, charge; [this]; 8, wythin this courte; forbydde the; 13, forbydden; 19, whiche fore; 21, whiche fomtime; 22, whose name; 23, Fayre cofyn fayd; 25, forbydden; 29, fyr L.; 31, I rest; 33, cofyn I; 37, with a; 38, [nor].

**728.** 1, but all onely; 2, of outwarde forowe; 3, nor yet; 4, the frenshe; 7, in y<sup>e</sup> cite of; 12, [for]; 16, [fir] La; 18, fyr A.; 19, vnto; 21, [four and twenty]; 23, deyntry meetes and deyntryes; 29, of all; 34, that a good; 35, fyr P.

**729.** 1, toke one of the poyfoned apples; 2, [foo]; 7, fyr G.; 9, [wel]; 11, right fore; 15, vnto the vttermost; And thervpon; 17, none of them; 18, [all]; 19, the dyner; fo fore; 20, *wholly omitted*; 21, fodeyne crye; vnto; 22, And meruayled gretely what it myght be; of theyr; and the fodeyne deth of the good knyghte fyr Patryce; 25, quene G.; 31, of her.

**730.** 2, whiche; 3, vnto; 7, praye you; 8, for to come vnto this; 14, [almighty]; 17, a ryghtwyfe; 18, kynge A. I gyue you day this; 19, ye be; 21, may ye; 27, Than answered the quene; 28, nor; 32, that fore; 34, that ye go vnto fyr B. and praye hym to do that batayle for your; 36, ryght wel I perceyue fayd kynge A.; 37, those twenty; 38, you in felawshyp togyder; was fo traytourfly flayn.

**731.** 3, I can not; 5, full foone; 6, on your; 7, kyng A.; who someuer hath; on his; 8, on; 19, nor yet; 20, haue ye; 22, [by]; I gretely; me how; 24, as ye; 32, to me; 33, kynge A.; 34, in a certaynte.

**732.** 3, me of; 12, come; 15, hertely / & fo departed; 17, Brafyas; 18, happely come; 21, fyr M.; yf he be; 23, fyr B.; 25, vnto the; 27, gretely displeafed; 29, [all]; but that; 35, and the mooft; 36, alwaye.

**733.** 5, was alwayes; 6, alwaye she; 9, a grete; vnto; 13, she oughte hym; 14, the . xx . knyghtes; 15, well faye / that it was for good; 18, some of vs; 20, not pleafed; 25, [for]; 28, do; 29, fayd fyr B.; 32, profytableft; 33, pafte forth; 34, [maner of] the; 35, to the.

**734.** 3, & there was made a grete; 6, nor for; 7, ryghtwyfe; 11, quene G.; vnto; 13, contrary therto; 17, foone preue; 20, the fo; vnto almighty god my maker; 21, thy malyce; 27, but that; 28, to mounthe vpon; 29, M. de la porte; 30, a spere; 34, where as; out of a; 35, armed at all poyntes.

**735.** 1, you to; 8, I can not shewe you fayd; 11, vnto; 13, vnto the; 20, meruayled they; 26, ranne the one agaynst the other; 27, But fyr L.'s; 28, grounde; and had a; 29, and dressed; 32, lyghtely from; 34, to batayle.

**736.** 1, many fadde; 3, they had bē two; 4, a full; 6, groūde; 7, for to; 8, therwithall; 10, ryght fyerfly; 13, grounde. And; 14, for to haue; from his; 16, as an ouercomen knyght; 17, [thy]; but onely; 18, no maner of; 21, clerely I; 24, where as kyng; 25, vnto; other louyngly; 26, vnto hym; 27, And than the; 28, to rest; 30, that he was the noble knyght; 32, by the hand.

**737.** 6, or in; 7, kyng A.; 8, you of youre; 9, downe vpon the; 10, where as she; 17, in the; 18, whiche was called; 27, fyr P.; 29, of y<sup>e</sup> feeft; to the entent; 31, to whome; 33, [was].

**738.** 3, vpon y<sup>e</sup>; 12, forth vntyll; daye the; 13, kyng A.; 24, not goo; 26, [noble]; 27, fyr G.; 28, vnto; 30, that the; 34, paffynge heuy and wrothe; 36, which is.

**739.** 1, vnto her and thus she; 3, wyll faye; 6, vnto fyr; 8, to the quene; 9, [madame]; 10, as at; 11, wyll I; 13, vnto; 14, [ageynfte] all; 15, quene G.; 17, are many; 18, for to; 21, on the; 22, after brake; 23, fo departed; fo longe tyll; 24, that now is called; 25, vnto an; whiche; 27, [dyd] walked; 29, quod kyng; to all; 30, were there; in yonder; 31, [now]; wyll full well; 32, towarde whiche we; 33, many meruaylous dedes of armes.

**740.** 3, So as; 4, & in his chambre vnarmynge; 5, vnto; hym reuerence; 6, maner that he coude; 9, is to moche; 12, whiche were; 14, the fame day that; 16, fyr L.; 18, thofe iustes; wyghty; 20, I befeche you; 23, you hertely; 25, haue his; 27, [that tyme] the; 29, frensſhe booke; 37, for by cause.

**741.** 1, of hers; 7, neuer or this tyme; [erft]; 8, damoyfell; 9, it vntyl that; 11, the fayre; 13, in the mornynge; 14, for the; 17, for to; 21, whiche now is called W.; 23, there was; 26, they foiourned; day the; 27, began to blowe; 31, yf fyr; 32, whan fyr; 34, of Scotlande; 35, vpon kyng A.'s fyde.

**742.** 4, this one; 5, moost noble; 10, [faft]; 14, Scotlande; 17, and alfo; 23, there came; 26, le cueur; 31, [thenne].

**743.** 3, on our; 8, and fyr G.; 19, in the; 20, wote well who he; [as]; 23, but alway me; 24, by cause he; 25, yet bere; 27, [euer]; 29, whiche; 35, to hym.

**744.** 7, vnto the grounde; 9, abode ftyll; 10, vpon; 11, Scotlande; grounde; 14, gate hym; 15, bothe hors; grounde; 17, began to drawe; 18, [y] hurte; 20, vpon; grounde; 23, fyr A.; by that tyme; 25, [all]; 31, maner of wyfe; 34, there lyenge; 35, after; 37, ony man; And alway; 38, was with.

**745.** 1, smote [doun]; 4, rounde table; 5, vnto king; 6, [he] is; 8, let blowe; 9, to the knyght; 22, [al]; 26, fayd he; 28, it almoost; 29, fayne helpe you; 30, drawe; 32, [alle]; [ryght]; 33, [al].



**746.** 2, [fo]; 3, I do now; 6, fyr L.; 8, whiche; [fulle]; 10, vnto; and hath; 11, his poffeffyons; 13, For alwaye; 18, vnto that; 21, ende of; [faft]; me in; 24, whiche is; 25, ryght fore; 28, that was; And whan; 38, was fomtyme.

**747.** 3, where as the mooft noble knyght fyr L. was; 6, alwaye; 14, hyde ye; 17, fyth that; for Chryftes; 24, by that; 25, ryght well; and came to hymfelfe agayne; 26, as it is now in thefe; 33, and his; 34, was the.

**748.** 4, mooft greteft; 10, landes I haue; 13, or [knowe]; not wyte; 14, [man]; [good]; 20, he is; 21, without; 22, not beftyre; 23, fhall knowe; yf I may; 25, and rode vpon two hackneys; 26, But as he wente fo he; 28, to L.; 30, where as; was lodged; 31, for to take his reft; 32, to hym; and alfo his fayre; for to; 33, tydynges he knewe; 35, whiche; 38, dare make it good.

**749.** 1, forty valyaunt; 2, and ryghte; 4, that good; 5, the whiche; man that euer after; 7, [fir]; 10, he came; 19, for to let; 21, yf it wyll pleafe you to; 22, vnto his; 27, a greate.

**750.** 17, [and]; 25, as ye thynke beft; 26, ryght fore; 27, [Ryght]; 29, came vnto; 33, hym fayd; 34, to his.

**751.** 1, fyr L. meruayloufly; but what; 2, after hym for to; kyng A.; all his courte; 3, vnto all; was the noble knight fyr; 6, heuy & a forowfull; 9, for angre and wrath; 11, fayd vnto hym; 15, that he; is but; 16, befeche you; 17, fayd the quene; 19, grete turneymēt; 20, reed fleue; 22, that be of his; 25, Notwithstandyng; 26, fayd fyr B. / faye; 28, quene G.; 29, meruayle it were.

**752.** 2, that; 5, the fayr mayde; 7, as fayre; 9, vnto hym; vnto her; 10, how fareth; 13, [that]; 14, vnto; 16, vnto the; 21, her to hym; 25, be full; 31, to angre; 34, to grete.

**753.** 6, came to; 10, warnyng therof; 12, [with whome he was]; 13, curteys knyghte; 16, vnto the; 19, wepte full; 21, vnto hym thus; 29, of all; where as; 33, or [my]; 34, ye are; 35, hertely welcome; ye fay ouermoche to pleafe me.

**754.** 1, [the] whiche I fought; 2, you euerychone; 3, nyghe; was through; 5, not ben; 6, and frendfhip; 16, by his; whiche he; 24, whiche by no maner of; [not].

**755.** 1, that there; 5, ftyll with; 7, Than they abode there almoft; 10, vnto the father nor wyfe vnto her; 12, dyfpleafed; 15, for to; 17, at all poyntes; 19, he fpurred; 22, So that; 23-24, and hym that was vpon hym / the whiche was the nobleft knyght of the worlde / he ftered hym vygoroufly / and he ftyfly and ftably kepte; 27, for to gete his; 31, helpe me; 32, vnto; 33, vnto the grounde; 34, meafure grete forowe; 35, and dole.

**756.** 3, bothe falfe; and why; 7, ryght wroth; he fayd to

them . Let ; 8, in to the ; 11, of [hym] his body ; 16, for by caufe ; fronge ynough ; 19, [hit] ; yf I ; 27, And than ; 29, I oughte.

**757.** 10, there present ; 16, of Scotlande ; 20, at the fame tyme fyr B. de G. ; 21, he had smytten ; 30, maner of.

**758.** 4, yf that ; were strongly ; 5, ony man ; [the] lyfe ; 10, la blanche ; 11, they were ; 12, fo on ; 14, and her two bretherne fyr T. & fyr L. ; 16, that ye ; 17, [Now] ; 18, for your ; 19, you vnto ; 20, y<sup>e</sup> mayde E. ; 21, but certaynly ; be maryed ; 22, [man] ; 23, sholde I ; 26, fayr damoyfel ; 28, [yet] ; 34, fayre mayde ; 35, the damoyfell.

**759.** 4, doune to y<sup>e</sup> groūde ; gentylwomen ; 5, made euer ; 10, vnto hym thus ; 11, do therto fayd ; 12, 15, me vnto ; 15, nor late ; 19, ryght well ; 22, fythen that ; 25, came to ; 29, And alfo ; 33, whiche made ; 35, And alwaye ; 36, aboute a ; she felte ; 37, shroue.

**760.** 2, fayd she ; 5, is that ; 6, god vnto ; I neuer loued ; 10, for to haue ; 11, whiche I ; be an ; 12, swete fauyour Iefu Chryft ; 13, [on the] ; 15, out of all ; 19, wolde endyte ; 21, she had ; 23, in to ; 27, where as ; 28, put in a ; 35, and all ; 36, put on ; 37, barge to ; 38, ony man.

**761.** 1, and [the] ; 3, in to the ; barge ; 4, it myght mene ; 6, Go ye ; vnto ; 7, fyr A. ; 8, thre ; 10, bedde that euer they fawe ; 11, ende of the ; 12, thre ; 13, had foūde ; 14, [foo] ; 16, went in ; 17, a fayre gentylwoman lyenge ; 20, the lettre ; 21, told the kyng therof ; it in his hande ; 22, I am ; 23, [So] than ; 24, And the kyng ; certayne men to wayte ; 28, it open ; 29, my lorde fyr L. ; 32, yet for my foule that ye praye ; 35, art a knyght peerles.

**762.** 1, of the ; 4, vnto hym ; 5, had herde ; 6, that I am ; 8, my wyll ; vnto her ; 15, or elles ; 17, whiche ; 22, kyng A. ; 27, wente ; 28, And on the ; rychely buryed ; 30, the roūde ; 31, And than whā all was done ; 33, for by caufe ; 36, forowe y<sup>t</sup> I endure ye take ; 37, passed forth.

**763.** 2, [foo] ; 3, the rounde table ; 4, vntyll ; [thenne] ; 5, there were ; that who someuer ; 8, all the ; 9, moost was ; 12, [at] ; 13, to hym many of his ; aduysed them ; 15, vnto ; 18, [and] ; 19, toke a partye ; 20, made [that] of the ; 21, [of the] & the Iustes ; 22, full glad ; 23, maner that they coude ; 24, and whan he was comen she fayd to h<sup>y</sup> in this maner ; 26, For at ; 28, fo there ; 31, cloth of golde ; 34, [haue] ; 35, whose name.

**764.** 1, to rest ; 2, ease y<sup>t</sup> ; 3, Whan fyr L. ; were redy they departed ; 5, And fo ; vnto ; 11, And alway ; 15, hoūdes ; 16, that this ; 20, for to ; 21, that the ; 23, hynde whan she ; 24, to y<sup>e</sup> foyle ; hounde ; 25, fast after ; [veray] ; 26, there came the ; 27, whiche ;

by her houde; [that she had]; 30, [foo] by; 31, brode arowe; 33, whiche; 34, than whan; sayd vnto her; 35, bare thou; 36, made the.

**765.** 2, and our lorde; 5, now haue ye; 6, as well as he; 7, drewe; & the heed abode; 8, [he]; vnto; [more]; 10, so hurte; 11, nor the heremyte wyft not; 15, shedde at that tyme; 16, that fyr L.; 18, knyght that; 28, also broughte; 35, Scotlande.

**766.** 1, good knyghtes; 2, kyng Chalauce; 5, whiche; 7, set vpon; 8, vnto; 22, full stronge; 23, of fyr; 27, fyr G.; 32, vnto them.

**767.** 6, grounde; And in lykewyfe; 11, groude; 13, [and] so; 17, where as; 21, kyng A.; 24, G. of Orkeney; 25, be harde; 30, fyr G. / and that anone; [al]; 31, to rest; 35, frenshe boke; 37, as fast as he myght vnto fyr L.; sayd thus vnto hym.

**768.** 5, [noble]; 9, brake; 14, lay there; 20, hurled; 27, gretely whan; 32, that he had; 36, on; 38, straye and ryght harde.

**769.** 2, almoost nyghte; 5, vnto kyng A.; 7, blode ben; me all; that they; 11, worhyfullyer; 12, me alwaye; vpon payne; 13, is fyr L. hymfelfe; 21, my best; 22, and yf he; 36, and gate hym a.

**770.** 2, kyng A.; 3, they answered with a; 4, were all; 7, wente; 15, also in lyke; 19, for to; 22, me to fe; 26, [more]; 27, for to; 28, in [a]; 30, man shamed; 32, where as; 33, cowarde wyll; 34, knyght wyll; 35, were made; to kynges; 37, vnto his.

**771.** 10, in lyke; 13, [a] rafe; 17, & put away true; 26, vnto god; 28, feuen dayes; 34, lycorous.

### Book xix.

**772.** 7, lusty May; 9, erly in; 10, the mornynge; 13, [outher in fylke outher in clothe]; 18, [the Seneschal]; 20, [le cure hardy]; [of the forest faueage]; 21, & fyr P.; 22, [that was called the knyghte of the reed laundes]; 23, [the louer]; thofe; 24, on the morowe; 25, mayenge with y<sup>e</sup> quene; [in woodes and medowes as hit pleasyd hem]; 27, purposed to haue ben; with the; 28, her purpose at that tyme; 29, the whiche.

**773.** 3, he had; as y<sup>e</sup> frenshe; 5, [for] by; 6, yf fyr L.; 8, that the; 12, they neuer; 16, hygh feest; 18, that [there]; 19, in theyr stedes that were; 27, [for] to; 28, the best; 31, [moffes]; 33, well armed; 34, of areest.

**774.** 2, thynkest; [for]; 4, for to; 5, the hygh ordre of; 9, that I haue; 10, many yeres; 11, a vauntage; 12, [all]; [noble]; 13, all with one voyce & sayd; wete ye well; 16, grete auauntage; 17, on

vs; 18, as leue; 19, otherwyfe; 20, fyr M. fayd; 24, [none]; 25, with theyr; 26, [fyr Ladynas]; 28, fyr P. / fyr Ironfyde & fyr P.; 30, [ten]; 31, [the boldest and]; 33, cryed and fayd; 36, [not].

**775.** 1, fyr M.; 2, my [owne]; 11, [their horses]; 15, knowlege; 19, come and fe me; and that he; 20, thou not; 21, And fo y<sup>e</sup>; 22, moūted vpon his; 23, from them as fast as euer his hors myght renne; 24, fawe the chylde; well that; 27, But the chylde went from; 28, vnto quene G.; ye be; 30, not lyghtly come.

**776.** 3, [that] in; to flee; 4, not to haue; 8, in her; the frenffhe; that fyr; 10, as he; 15, onely that; 20, there was none myght; 22, a poyntement; 23, and went with; 24, that that mooft; [that]; 28, for to; 31, to me vnto the; where as; 32, yf I am; 34, he full; 35, and on alle.

**777.** 1, and as the frenffhe; 3, for to; ouer the ryuer of; Lambeth; 4, [fame]; where; 5, [noble]; 6, [that] he; trace; 7, vnto a; & therin; 8, to turne; 12, vpon thy fete; 20, fyr L.; 21, fayd fawe; 23, whyle on fote; was he; with his armure / sheelde and spere; 26, [for] to; 27, ryght fore; 28, by [hym]; the whiche; 30, for to; 34, fayne speke; 37, thought to; 38, and fayd . Fayre.

**778.** 2, fyr M. castell; 4, droue forth as fast as he coude; 6, quene G.; 7, wyndowe waytynge; 10, to; And than the quene; 15, [Ha]; 17, haft ben; in a cart; 18, lykened hym; 21, to fuche; 23, vnto the gate of the; 26, thou false; 28, I shall; with the; 30, ere; brake; 32, was come; 33, to the quene and.

**779.** 1, ye myght well; 3, is done; 5, in to your; 6, fyr M.; 7, [alle] in to; 10, and all your knyghtes and ladyes; to W.; 11, in to your; 12, than alway; 13, ftryfe is made / the more; 15, whiche; for to; 16, he fayd; forth here; 17, vnto hym; 18, wherfore afke; 20, dyspleafed than; 25, peasfybly; handes; 28, ye are; 30, and full; [A]; 31, yf I; 33, to you; 35, I haue; 37, well that.

**780.** 1, bereth [the]; 4, [euer]; 6, fo that ye; 9, to her; 11, knyghtes were; 12, fo fore wounded; 13, of his comynge; 16, had fet; 18, the one vnto the other; 23, vnto our; 26, vnto a; in to a gardyn; 27, [y] barryd; 28, for to; 30, he forthwith; 32, the whiche; 34, let [ye].

**781.** 1, wounded were; 4, it was fhewed vnto; [all]; 8, [by her chamber]; 9, they lacked; 15, perfone with me at this tyme; And than; 17, vnto a; where as; 21, of [many]; 22, myght come in vnto her; 26, for the loue of you; 27, [he]; 28, a grete; 30, of fyr L.'s hande; 32, And fo to paffe forth; 33, went to; 34, and fo he toke.

**782.** 1, and came to his; 8, And fo forth; 11, fyr L.'s hurte hande; And whan; 12, in hymself; 13, vnto; 16, it well that

it was ; 19, lyege lorde ; 21, & that I wyll ; 23, to them ; 28, fyr M. faye nay with your ; 32, well that ; 34, demed that sholde hyde his ; in this.

**783.** 1, A ha / what ; 4, the whyles ; 5, fay and make good / that my ; 8, haue ye ; 11, it with ; 12, fyr L. ; 15, also what ; 18, batayle that is done ; 19, as vnto that ; 23, is a ; 26, to the ; 27, Vpon what day ; 30, muft do batayle ; I befeche ; 31, ye are ; 32, in the ; 34, of those condicyons ; vnto all ; 35, knewe me / I vfed ; [with] ; 36, to be in the ; vfed treason ; 37, fyr M.

**784.** 1, ye all may ryde vnto ; 2, And than ; vnto ; 3, fetures ; 6, peryls leeft ; 7, is as ; But alwaye ; that dealeth ; 8, man ofte ; in to ; 9, And as ; 12, [ful of] vpon ; 13, made femblaunt as though he had not wyft ; 17, put out of the waye ; 19, past forth ; 20, he had ; horfe lytters ; 23, many other ; wente to ; 24, tolde vnto ; fyr M. ; 26, batayle togyder ; 27, aferd that ; 34, Now returne we vnto ; 35, full grete ; 37, by her.

**785.** 2, come oute ; 4, defende it fayd ; 8, or feke or els in ; 10, [at] ; 11, or els ; 16, shame (fayd fyr L.) ; 20, to fronge herted ; 27, where as ; 29, [the] whiche ; 31, was there ; 32, he comaunded ; 33, to god.

**786.** 1, gallopynge ; 5, And therefore he ; for to ; 6, for to brynge ; [du lake] ; 9, good lord ; may well ; 11, fo that ; 13, now fayd ; 18, quene G. ; 20, but that ; 32, all them that were present ; 37, And fo than ; [els].

**787.** 5, vnto fyr L. ; 8, grounde ; 11, as an ; 15, And than ; 16, towarde ; 17, sholde haue ; 25, and the ; 28, Whan fyr M. herde that / he ; vp on ; 31, vnto his ; 37, were they.

**788.** 8, hym vpon ; 12, be buried ; 14, made moche of ; 15, [hand] ; 17, Hungary ; whose name ; 21, the whiche hyght ; 22, Hungary ; 29, [the] whiche ; 32, tyll that the best ; 33, And in this maner ; 34, her vaūt.

**789.** 1, fyr Vvres moder ; 3, whiche was a ; 4, with her ; 8, So at the laft she ; 9, [by fortune she came nyghe] to the ; 10, at kyng A.'s ; 11, Caerleyll ; 12, how ; 13, that countree for to haue her foone heeled ; 15, countree ; 16, lorde kyng A. ; 17, the whiche ; 21, vnto the tyme that ; 24, coūtree ; 26, a full ; 27, fayd she ; 29, kyng A. ; come hyther ; 30, and yf ony ; 37, fyr V.

**790.** 2, brother by my ; 7, ten knyghtes ; [that tyme] ; 12, in hymfelfe that he had ben a ; 14, out of the ; vpon the grounde ; 15, of cloth of gold ; 16, [noble] ; 17, [for] ; 18, for to suffre me softly to handle thy ; 19, fyr V. ; as it shall please you ; 20, here at ; 22, on ; Than after kyng A. ; 26, Anguyffhe ; 30, Chalaunce ; 33, Gyngayne ; 34, thre were.

**791.** 4, & fyr G. & his fones fayled ; 6, whiche ; 7, So there ; fyr L. ; 13, fayled euerychone ; 15, whiche ; 18, Sadocke ; 20, there came ; fyr Grumwors sone ; 21, whiche at that tyme ; 22, one of the strongest knyghtes of the worlde ; frensſhe booke ; 23, this fyr S. le breufe and fyr L. ; 26, S. le breufe ; 27, maner of wyfe ; 28, L. du lake ; 29, of them promysed vnto other ; 32, and fuche other wylde ; whiche ; 34, as of all the ; 35, to knowe ; 37, Than there came in ; and fyr T. whiche ; 38, but this fyr T. was.

**792.** 1, A. the cowherde had ; begate all these knyghtes ; 3, whiche was one of the ; [one] ; 8, whiche ; 13, whiche was ; by the noble knyghte fyr T. ; 15, le blanke whiche ; vnto ; 19, whiche was ; vnto ; 21, false traytour ; 22, Marke flewe ; 29, fyr A. Lorphelyn ; 30, [flewe kynge M.] ; 31, the corps ; 35, whiche ; 36, Neroueus.

**793.** 5, A. le graunte ; 8, whiche ; 13, fyr Robert ; 14, whiche ; 16, by his ; 18, 19, whiche was ; 19, vnto them ; 20, G. of Orkeney ; 26, whiche came ; and anone it was ; 27, kynge therof ; 29, downe from ; vnto ; 31, vnto her.

**794.** 3, alle those that had ; ferched fyr V. ; 12, to that entent ; 15, as ye be ; 16, and yf ye ; 18, countree ; 22, fayenge thus ; 25, and I shame ; 28, fayenge to hym ; 29, [the] whiche is full fore ; 38, [alle].

**795.** 1, feuen yere tofore ; 2, thre other ; 10, [in] ; 11, vnto god ; 12, deuyfed ; 14, bygge ; Than kyng A. ; 15, fayd he ; 17, fyr V. ; 19, of an ; 20, fo on ; 22, make shorte tale ; 24, them bothe ; 29, vnto ; this knyght ; 33, but alwaye ; 34, in the courte ; 35, But euer.

**796.** 2, [du lake] for to ; 3, ouerſkyppe ; 6, despyte of those knyghtes and ladyes that ; 7, he had ben ; 8, galous ; 10, after [that] ; 12, dyd in those ; 13, of Le cheualer ; 15, vnto the deth.

## Book xx.

**797.** 1, At the season of y<sup>e</sup> mery moneth of ; 4, and be gladde ; 7, [fast] ; 8, there befel ; [and vnhap] ; the whiche ; 10, longe of ; 11, fyr A. ; 12, these two knyghtes ; 14, vnto ; 16, [alle] ; 19, & knowe ; 27, fyr A. ; 28, I byleue ; 31, knowe well ynough ; 33, it vnto ; 34, Ye shall not do it by ; for yf there ; 35, wrathe.

**798.** 3, ben a better knyght ; 7, as whā ; 13, hyde it ; 20, ought I ; euylle of ; 21, [al] ; 22, now is the ; 25, kynge A. ; 26, fyr A. ; whiche I ; 28, and [to] ; 31, And we knowe all ; 34, kynge A.

**799.** 1, for I tell you fyr ; 10, and for his quene ; 20, fyr A. ; 22, hym full ; 23, vpon ; 26, vnto them ; 27, and thus were ; 31, Gromore fomor ioure ; 36, with quene G. ; 38, I alway drede me moche.

**800.** 1, whiche ; for to ; 6, noo doubtte ; 12, that I wyll ; 14, safe and founde ; 15, vndernethe his ; 16, And so that noble knyght wente forth in his mantell / and put ; 20, fyr L. ; 22, therof to make mencyon ; as it is ; 25, and with . . . . fayd thus ; 31, [there] ; 32, I praye you hertely let me haue it.

**801.** 2, many valyaunt ; 4, no refyft ; 7, stande in ; 8, neuer thus ; 10, alwayes [in one] ; 18, and poore ; to my ; 19, day that ; 23, for to ; 24, owne dere ; 27, fhall haue ; 33, well that ; 38, quene G.

**802.** 3, lorde Iesu ; 4, therwithall ; 7, daffhed at ; chambre dore ; 8, daffhyng ; open the ; 13, fyr L. ; 15, a bygge ; whiche was called fyr C. ; 21, And than fyr L. ; 25, Let be ; 28, no fuche ; 31, and before ; 32, [outher els ye all that] ; 34, knyghte oughte to do ; came vnto ; 35, I wyll ; [hit].

**803.** 1, myne owne ; false traytour ; 3, wyll let she to ; that we ; 6, dore wyde open ; 9, he had ; to the cold ; 10, of all ; 11, a buffet ; 14, vnto an ; 17, maner of yll ; and daungers ; 25, to his ; 26, So whan ; 27, was at that tyme ; 28, [why be ye all armed] what may this meane ; 31, were so dremyng ; 35, nede someuer ; 36, ye had ben in ; 38, than euer.

**804.** 2, I befeche you ; 3, be of a ; 5, we all ; welth ; 8, all whiche ; that ye ; 9, is no ; 10, but that ; 11, no meanes ; 12, those that ; 13, [that] ye ; 21, wolde fayne ; 23, do what I may ; 25, you or not ; 26, to hym ; 29, with fyr V. ; 31, made knyghtes ; one of them ; 33, fyr H. ; 35, whiche ; Lorphelyns sone ; 36, dame A. ; [and she] ; 37, [and].

**805.** 3, and anone they ; 4, & on ; 5, and what ; 7, fcore good and valyaunt ; 8, that I ; 9, well wyllynge ; 15, [and treason] ; 19, is not ; 21, [I wote well as is] as ; 32, it pacyently ; 33, our lorde god.

**806.** 2, yf ye ; chrystened of ; 3, ony wrong ; 6, otherwyfe ; 10, and the quene dye so ; 11, O good lord Iesu ; 13, and from ; 14, ye that be of my ; 16, doo yourfelfe ; 19, to be done ; 20, we thynke that the best ye may do is this / that ; 22, to be supposed that yf ye ; 23, or els ; 31, ryght lothe ; 32, for to ; 35, me moche ; 38, fholde refcowe.

**807.** 2, dyd not he kepe ; 4, your bothe aduyfes ; 6, be that ; 9, vnto ; 11, home agayne ; [and loue and thanke] ; 17, flewe that noble knyght ; 18, a sharpe grouded ; 22, well that ; 26, yf it ; on the ; 29 a lytell ; 31, whiche whan ; 34, rode streyght ; and beten.

**808.** 3, dyd ye take hym ; 5, fyr C. ; 8, A Iefu ; 12, wyll holde ; 13, kyng A. ; but that ; 14, [the] deth ; 15, to [the] ; 19, be the ; 27, [it] is ; 31, knyghte alyue ; 35, whiche he had.

**809.** 5, [I dare faye] ; 6, ony vylony ; 14, A. vnto fyr G. ; 15, for trewly ; no grete ; 17, and alfo he had almoost ; 18, . xij . good ; 27, of my fones ; 32, that ye wyll ; 33, best araye ; 35, receyue her.

**810.** 1, do in my lyfe ; 2, that I ; 3, lady quene ; fuche a ; 7, vnto fyr ; 10, [the] whiche ; fall there ; 12, vnto kyng ; 22, vnto her ; 28, one whiche ; 29, her iudgement ; 30, quene was ; vnto ; and alfo that she was ; 31, warnyge therof ; 35, [ful].

**811.** 4, whiche were ; 7, fyr G. ; 15, vnto quene ; 17, that the quene ; 26, many knyghtes ; were fory of ; 27, to ; 32, he was reuyued he ; 33, ony crowne ; I haue now.

**812.** 2, haue I ; 4, neuer more ; 8, [telle] ; 9, nygh go ; 11, all erthly men ; 15, [that] he ; 18, tyll that ; 20, fayd the kyng ; 23, [fayre] ; 25, the kyng ; 29, had ; 31, kyng A. ; 36, in the ; And fo for to ; 37, yf he had not.

**813.** 4, the man / your two bretherne ; 6, all the good of ; 9, fyr L. ; 10, [euer] ; 11, fyr G. ; 13, to haue ben with ; 16, the man ; 17, is all ; 18, downe in a fwoune ; 21, ranne vnto ; 23, and my ; fyr G. alfo ; 25, fell downe in a fwoune ; reuyued agayne fyr G. fpake & fayd ; 28, be buryed ; 30, myne owne lord ; 32, that ye wyll tell me ; 34, neyther of them bothe.

**814.** 1, [of hem both] ; 4, My moost gracyous lord & myne vncler fayd ; 6, that now ; the whiche ; 9, vnto the ; 16, herde ; 19, [he fayd] ; 22, kyng A. ; 23, and in y<sup>e</sup> ; 24, to affemble ; 27, all how ; 29, where as ; 30, many a ; 38, bothe within.

**815.** 1, and fyr G. ; 2, [al] ; 4, full ftronge ; 5, not ryde ; 6, wolde fuffre ; 9, So it ; on a ; [tyme] ; 10, to ; 12, [al] it is ; ye laboure at ; 14, out my felfe ; 16, fyr L. ; 17, in the ; 20, thou well ; 21, wyll be ; 22, and the noble ; whiche ; 25, [lord and] ; 26, wyte you.

**816.** 4, [as ony is lyuyng vnto her lord] ; 11, or that ; 15, my gracyous ; 17, that I had ; [grete] ; 19, as she ; 22, in a ; 26, that my ; 28, it shall ; 31, vpon thy ; 33, [and] ; 36, with thyne ; 38, by Iefu fayd fyr L.

**817.** 1, vnto ; 3, fyr L. ; 4, falfe recreaüt ; 6, that I ; vnto the ; 7, me fore ; 8, that it ; 9, for none ; 13, haft destroyed ; 16, as ye my ; 17, [ye] haue ; 18, and that ; 20, but wyte ; that I ; 21, for it ; [on hand] ; 24, Than fayd fyr G. vnto fyr L. ; 26, at fuche a vaütage ; 28, I shall haue but ; 29, [the noble].

**818.** 2, vnto them ; and fyr S. his brother ; 4, & to hym fayd thus ; 5, that we ; 6, fyr G. ; vnto you ; we befeche you ; 8,



[playnly]; 14, loth to do it; 20, is not this; 26, than on the morowe; 32, in [a]; 33, myddle batayle; 35, as valyaunt.

**819.** 5, vnto the; 6, moo other; [And]; 8, was there; 13, moche damage and hurte; 19, for to; 24, vnto hym thus; 26, vttermeft; but euer; 29, was agayne; 32, rode forth; 34, for to reft; 35, deed bodyes.

**820.** 3, So on; 4, [there]; as grymme; 7, had done hym; 8, all the; 10, furyously; 11, groude; ioyned togyder; 12, a grete; 15, were bothe; 17, that ye; 19, they doo you; 20, For alwaye; 23, at ony vantage; 24, told hym; 29, fete lockes; flayne on bothe partyes; 30, withdrewe; And fo dyd kyng A.'s party. And than; 32, and his party entred in to theyr; 33, deed bodyes; falue to; 35, not halfe fo; orgulous or proude; 38, whiche was.

**821.** 1, mooft noble; 10, the Bulles; wyft not; Gladly he wold accorde with; 18, not be reprovod; 20, with hym; 22, vnto; 23, vnto kyng A.; 25, fyr L. for to; 26, as she; 29 [fayd fyr L.]; 31, [euer]; 32, this that; fure for me & myne.

**822.** 1, that she; 2, for to; 4, for to drede; 5, and my; 6, to were dyftreffed; 13, before me; 14, knowlege; 16, [thenne]; ye may faye; 17, lorde kyng; for my lady the; 19, for kyng A.'s loue; 22, kyng A.'s; 24, all they; 25, to the; 27, had with her; 29, vpon; 32, and fet; 33, And quene Gueneuer; 36, vnto; 37, in to; 38, euery man.

**823.** 3, fate in his fete; 7, many a; [ther]; 9, kyng A.; 10, not one; 12, spake he vnto the mooft noble kyng A. full knyghtly / and lyke a man of grete honour; 13, that by; 15, vnto you; 16, [that] he; 18, vnto you; 20, grete; 21, the tyme; 23, lorde and kyng; 24, vnto grete; 30, agaynst . xiiij . knyghtes.

**824.** 1, kyng A.; 3, lord and kyng; 4, that I; 5, [yow]; 6, done you in diuers; 8, for to; 9, and in; 12, [many]; 13, myne auant; 17, T. de Lyones; L. de Galys; 18, to them; 19, was neuer; 21, full glad; 25, full well; 26, pulled you; 28, your face; 31, fyr T.; 32, of [his]; 37, for to.

**825.** 4, twayne; 11, fere y<sup>t</sup>; 13, all erthely knyghtes; 16, that I shold; 18, [noble]; 25, caufe to make; 26, [that]; 31, is none; 35, [holyer & more]; 36, vnto theyr; than that my; [kyng &].

**826.** 1, [fire G.]; all the; 3, had ben; 6, it shall please hym; 7, the my; 10, fyr L.; 16, for to; 19, warnynge; 21, that thou; comen hyther; 22, yf that; 23, [fayd fyre G.]; 24, [owne]; 30, fayd these wordes.

**827.** 1, varyable; mutable; is no; 6, haue had; 10, [as wel]; 11, with your neuewe fyr; 12, for to werre; 14, I befecche you; 20, with you; Ye no; 24, or [that]; 27, quene G.; 28, all the

knyghtes ; 30, fende me worde ; ye be noyed ; 31, with ony ; let me haue knowlege ; 32, yf that ; 33, And so therwith ; 34, openly that all they that were there myght here hym ; me fe ; 37, vnto.

**828.** 1, but that they all ; 2, of theyr wyttes ; 3, so whan ; for to ; 5, waye to ; 6, And afterwarde he ; 8, fir L. departed ; 9, [holy] ; 10, y<sup>t</sup> ; do as he ; 12, fore at my herte ; 13, banysshed man ; 16, was banysshed oute of this realme ; 18, departed afonder ; 23, countree ; is none ; ben here ; 24, for dyuers ; is this ; 25, Courte of kyng A. ; 26, take parte ; 28, [as] well for ; 30, I thanke ; 31, as to fuche ; 32, [for] to.

**829.** 5, and in ; 6, your grete ; 11, whiche ; vnto his ; 16, for to ; 17, And well an ; 19, departe from hym ; 21, where as ; 22, for to ; 26, his good ; 27, vnto ; 28, had establysshed ; 30, And he made fyr ; to be crowned ; 32, whiche ; 33, whiche was.

**830.** 1, departed his hauour ; 2, those of his ; 3, And fyrst he made fyr B. duke of ; 15, hym erle ; 16, the good knyght fyr P. ; cou<sup>t</sup>ree of Prouence ; 17, Langedocke ; 18, gaue hym ; 20, Angeo ; 25, [to] ; 27, [made] ; 31, all his ; 32, his quene ; kyng A. ; ouer the fee.

**831.** 1, these tydynges ; vnto ; 2, & that they ; 3, [full] ; 4, is grete ; 7, whiche was ; 8, gyue you ; 12, all alyauntes ; 13, vnto fyr ; 14, and your ; 15, hath caufed ; ouer ryde our ; 17, hyde vs in ; the good knyght fyr G. to ; 19, they were without y<sup>e</sup> walles ; 20, [lyke] ; we are ; 25, spake all with one voyce ; 26, ryde out ; 28, whiche ; 31, yet my lordes (!) ; we are full ; [for] ; 32, warryoures that other whyle made kyng C. and my father kyng B. / & myn vncl kyng Bors for to obey ; 36, defyrynge hym to take a tratyce.

**832.** 1, his warre ; 3, vnto the ; 4, whose name was fyr L. ; [&] that fayd ; 6, for to ; 7, fyr L. ; 9, that are ; 10, wold that ; 11, vnto kyng A. ; 14, kyng A.'s ; ryght gladde ; 23, by cause her ; 25, vnto ; 26, ye shall faye ; 27, to fyr L. ; it was but ydle labour / now to fende to myne ; 29, y<sup>t</sup> now ; 31, to god ; vnto the ordre of ; that I ; 34, vnto her ; 35, where as.

**833.** 2, that stode about hym fayd ; 5, in the myddes ; lyghtly be ; 11, and for euery of vs ; 13, as at ; on the ; 14, as the ; 15, sawe how ; was befyeged ; 17, them wyghtly ; 18, armed at all poyntes ; 21, that dare ; 24, And so he ; 25, And anone fir B. ; 26, there came ; 27, vnto ; for to ; 29, ryghte spytefully ; was so fyers / that he ; 32, And thus ; [he] ; 34, of peple there was ; 35, that fyr G. ; 36, vpon a grete courser.

**834.** 1, doost thou hyde ; 4, kynne euery deale ; 5, than his ; fayd all ; 6, vnto fyr ; 13, a recreaunt knyght ; cōmaunded to sadell

his; 14, [lete]; 17, whiche; that I; 22, you halfe; and haue; 24, moche as; 27, to a bay; 28, fayd vnto fyr L. Syr L.; 30, began to arme; 33, [all]; 37, that there; 38, come nyghe.

**835.** 4, horses myght as fast as they; 7, [&] Than; 10, in many; 11, whiche an; 12, gyuen hym; 14, his owne; 17, they fhold; 18, And all this; G.'s fake; 19, yf that; 20, that his; 25, had of hym grete wonder; 30, and his brethe; 31, fadde frokes; 33, [that] he; 36, Than whā fyr L.

**836.** 1, began he to fretche; hymfelfe; 2, fayd to hym these wordes; 3, that ye; 6, vpon the; 7, and than; 8, thou thyfelfe; 10, Syr I fhall; 11, the grace of god fayd fyr L.; wyte you; 13, in to one of; 14, And anone there were leches; [&] whiche ferched his wounde; 15, falued it; 16, ye fhall; 17, brynge out my; 21, warre began; 23, well seen; 27, of kyng; 28, they within; 29, aboute a thre; 33, Benwyck; 34, on hyghe; 38, foule fayenge.

**837.** 1, wyte you well; 4, thou traytour; [fayd he]; 6, y<sup>t</sup>; 10, were at an ende; 18, for to; 20, they ranne; 24, full quykly auoyded; 27, for though.

**838.** 3, houres contynually; 4, fyr L. had grete; [for]; hymfelfe; And after that y<sup>e</sup>; 5, felte veryly; 6, myght and strength; [and that his greate power was done]; 7, haue I well; 22, to the; 27, towarde the towne.

¶ Thus endeth the . xx . boke . And here after foloweth the . xxj . boke / whiche is the last booke of this present volume . In whiche all those that dyspose them to eschewe ydelnesse whiche is mother of all vyces / redynge hyfstoryall maters . Some wyllyng to rede in deuoute medytacyons / of the humanyte and passyon of our fauyour Iesu chryft . Some in lyues and paynfull martyrdomes of holy fayntes . Some in moralyfacyon & poetycall stoyes . And some in knyghtly and vyctoryous dedes of noble prynces conquerours / as of this present volume of this noble conqueroure kyng Arthur / fomtyme kyng of Englande may openly knowe the lamentable deth of hym and the noblest chyualrye of the worlde knyghtes of the rounde table / caufed by fyr Mordred his sone and the subiectes of this realme.

**839.** 2, [that]; 6, he was; 8, to W.; toke [the]; 15, maner [of]; 18, [the took the toure of London]; [and]; 22, was deceyed; 23, And to make shorte; 37, [thou]; 38, that I vtterly defye the.

**840.** 1, that I ought; 2, where as; that my; [&] it is; 3, an abhomynable; 5, heed to be stryken of; 6, curse; 8, And whan the bysshop herde that / he fledde; 10, was a relygyous heremyte;

12, fought vpon; 14 [meanys]; 15, hym not; 18, fyege fro fyr; & that he; 19, for to be; 20, to wryte letters vnto; 21, vnto hym; 27, hym than; we all; 28, [ye not]; 30, knyghtes & men of worfhyp; 31, not we Englyfthe men; holde vs; [them]; 34, Alas alas.

**841.** 2, towarde D.; 6, fangled; 9, carakes; 11, vpon the; was there; 20, noble knyght; 25, there he; [thenne] whan he came to hȳfelfe agayn; 26, [fyr G.]; 34, wounde that; L. du lake; of the; 35, yf fyr L. had; 37, I my felfe am caufer.

**842.** 1, cankered; 5, vnto; a lettre; 6, [thenne]; 7, [thenne] fyr G.; 8, he had ben; 12, vnto the; 14, whiche thou; 16, vnto my; 20, for to; 21, that fame; 28, & vnclē kyng A.; 29, whiche is; hȳfelfe; he wolde; 32, yf she had; 33, lorde & vnclē.

**843.** 1, the as thou arte the; 3, and alfo; 8, fyr G. betoke his foule in to the handes of our lorde god; let bury; 9, castel of D.; 11, to kyng A.; 13, on; 19, made to bury them; And those that were fore wouēd he caufed; 22, wrongfully; 23, the noble; 24, vnto the fee fyde vnto S.; 27, vpon a; 29, vpon that traytour fyr M.; 31, Southery; 33, and vnto kyng A.; 34, that loued; 35, And so vpon.

**844.** 1, hym thought he; 2, vnto a; 5, and a depe; 8, that he; 13, in a flombryng; 14, kyng A. thought that there; hym veryly; 16, so whan; [thenne]; 18, the alyue; 20, that ben comen; 21, the ladyes; 22, a man; 23, in a ryghtwyfe; 25, to you; 27, bothe ye; 31, men that; 32, vnto you; his moost; 34, profre hym; 36, & fhall rescowe.

**845.** 2, lyghtly; 12, grymly; 15, And after the dayes of kyng A. to haue all Englande to his obeyffaunce; 17, So than; 20, And than; 24, for [I]; 25, dyd warne; that yf; 27, euer standeth before; 28, that my; vpon.

**846.** 1, [than]; 4, rode he; 6, raffhyng; 8, But alway; 10, dyd there ryght nobly; sholde do; 11, he neuer; 14, groude; 16, [wode]; 20, [one]; the Butler; 22, kyng A.; 24, vnto myne; 25, [were]; fyr M. is; whiche; 28, to fyr L.; 29, whiche hath wrought all this woo; 32, on hym; My good lord; remembre well your dreame that ye had this nyght; 36, be god.

**847.** 1, is done; 7, vnto hym; 11, with all the; 12, vp to the ende; 13, that he helde; 15, banne; therwith; fell downe; 17, [de butlere]; 24, and he was; 25, went; 32, by myne aduys; 33, you vnto.

**848.** 1, aketh so; 4, warned me; 5, vp [the] kyng A.; on the one; 7, that lyfte / that some of his; 9, kyng A. came to hȳfelfe agayne; 11, 17, 20, kyng A.; 12, vnto me; so to; 14,

than I haue; 15, for to; 22, vnto; 24, thou fhalte fe there; 26, And foo; 27, [the] hafte; 29, in to; 33, fayd he; 35, kyng A.; 36, [ageyn].

**849.** 1, it synne; 4, fayd he; 7, two tymes; 8, vnto me; 12, I cōmaunde the; And yf; 17, water as ferre; 21, vnto; 22, had seen; fro hens; 23, kyng A.; 31, those thre quenes fet them downe.

**850.** 1, kyng A.; 3, for to; 4, euer more; 13, vpon; 14, [was] newly; 15, had banysshed; 16, buryed; My fayre; 18, whiche brought this deed corps; 30, your owne; 31, fyr B. abode; 32, whiche had ben; 35, no more wryten in my copy of the certaynte of his deth; 35, *from "wryton," to next page, 1, "redde," is omitted.*

**851.** 2, a barge; 3, [quene]; 5, Nymue; 6, whiche; fyr P.; 11, vnto his; 14, not of a certaynte; it was; 16, it playnly; 17, Some men yet; 19, Iefu Chryft; 24, we here; 26, And fo; [theyr]; 28, that her lord kyng A.; 29, she stale; 36, that was a.

**852.** 9, wonders wroth [oute of mefure]; 10, now I repēt me; 11, [euer]; 12, to my; kyng A.; [doleful] lettre of fyr G. / that my lorde kyng A.; 19, wyte ye; 23, & fyr; 28, ye go fe; 33, for to; 34, fee & arryued at D.; 36, enquiryed of men; kyng A. was.

**853.** 4, 5, kyng A.; 9, tombe of fyr G.; 10, full hertely; 12, ale as the myghte ete and drynke; 13, dealed; 17, fyr L. offred fyrft; 19, *from " & also," to 20, "pounde," is omitted*; 20, to nyght; 21, vpon his; And in; 22, called vnto hym; 23, thus he fayd; 28, and grete; 29, haue herde; 37, man neyther.

**854.** 1, westwarde; 2, vnto a; 4, thre tymes; 7, this chere; 8, whiche; 9, to call; vnto me; And whan; vnto her; 10, [to all the ladyes]; 11, [hath] all; 13, wyte ye well fyr L.; 15, helth; for to haue; 16, Iefu chryft; at the dredefull daye of dome; 17, synfull creatures; 19, vs two; 20, neuer loke; And fethermore I; 21, behalfe ryghte stryly; and that vnto; shortly thou; 23, the fyr L.; not ones; 24, for bothe; me & the; 25, go thou vnto; 26, I befeche you; 27, lord god; 29, now returne; in to my; 32, you vnto; 33, please god; & specially to praye for you; 34, may not; 35, ye faye well fayd he.

**855\*.** 3, in the quest of; 4, my lady dame G.; 5, you vnto; me vnto; 6, haue I; 8, me for to; realme and countree; 10, [euer]; 11, [yf] that; ony good; 13, neuer more; 14, fuche thynges; And fo they; 17, as though they; 27, threwe abrode; 37, [for].

**856\*.** 3, ryde through all Englund to feke; 4, vnto; 8, came vnto; whan he sawe; 13, [fir Blamour]; 14, abode there styll; 15, sawe that; 20, but that; 21, dyd lowly; 24, & in; 26, fo that; 27, vnto; 28, hym towarde A.; 29, by that tyme; thou come; 30,

puruey the; 31, and br̄ge you; bury it; 32, thryes vnto fyr L.; 34, or it was; 36, this vyfyon; 37, on fote; they wente.

857. 5, or she dyed; 7, for to; 10, And this; 11, all these two; vntyll; 14, Dirige at nyght and the masse on the morowe; 17, his feuen; [hors]; 18, holy & deuout; 20, tyll they came to G.; 27, & than she; 28, after in; put in to; 29, styll vpon the grounde; 30, ye are; 32, well myne; 34, none ende; 35, and call to mynde her beaute / her bounte / and her nobleffe; was as well; 36, kyng my lorde A. as with her; And also whan I sawe the corpses of that noble kyng and noble quene so lye togyder in that colde graue made of erth / that somtyme were so hyghly set in moost honourable places / truly; 38, my wretched; how I through.

858\*. 1, and through my presumpcyon and pryde; 2, the whiche; euer were; 3, of theyr; 4, sanke & imprest; so in to; that all my naturall strengthe fayled me / so that I; 7, but cōtynually morned vntyll he; And than; 10, was as than; shorter by a cubyte; 12, but nedefully as nature requyred somtyme he; & alwayes he; 13, vpon; G.'s tombe; 15, nothyng.

¶ O ye myghty and pompous lordes shynynge in the glory transitory of this vnstable lyf / as in regnyng ouer grete realmes and myghty grete countrees / fortyfyed with stronge castels & toures edifyed with many a ryche Cite. Ye also ye fyers and myghty knyghtes so valyaunt in aduenturous dedes of armes Beholde beholde / se how this myghty conquerour kyng Arthur / whome in his humayne lyfe all the worlde doubted. Ye also this noble quene Gueneuer whiche somtyme fate in her chayre adorned with golde / perles & precyous stons / now lye full lowe in obscure fosse or pyt couered with cloddes of erth and claye. Beholde also this myghty champion fyr Launcelot / pereles of knyghthode / se now how he lyeth grouelynge vpon the colde moulde / now beyng so feble and faynt / that somtyme was so terryble / how & in what maner ought ye to be so defyrous of worldly honoure so daungerous. Therefore me thynketh this present boke called la mort darthur is ryght necessary often to be radde. For in it shall ye fynde the moost gracyous knyghtly & vertuous warre of y<sup>e</sup> moost noble knyghtes of the worlde / wherby they gate prayfng cōtynual. Also me semeth by y<sup>e</sup> ofte redyng therof / ye shall gretely desyre to accustom your selfe in folowyng of those gracyous knyghtly dedes / that is to saye / to drede god / and to loue ryghtwyfnes / faythfully & couragiously to serue your fouerayne prynce. And the more y<sup>t</sup> god hath gyuen you the tryumphall honoure / the meker ye ought to be / euer feryng the vnstableness of this deceyuable worlde. And so I passe ouer and turne agayn vnto my mater; 15,

¶ So within ; 19, that ye wyll gyue ; 20, vnto a ; 21, but a ; 24, I wyll now ; 25, I praye you gyue ; 27, vnto ; 29, Bamborow ; 33, all his ; 34, went all ; 35, byffhop that ; 36, on a ; 37, came vnto.

**859\***. 5, vpon one daye ; 6, towarde heuen ; 18, with the corps ; 19, vnto ; 27, had fought ; 30, E. de Marys ; 32, fynge the feruyce full lamentably ; 33, [wepe].

**860\***. 3, [that] ; of none ; 9, thou were ; 12, in the reste ; 15, vnto his ; 17, whiche was ; 25, Vyllyers le valyaunt ; 34, was bothe ; 36, that fyr L. ; [for] fo to do ; 38, and turkes ; they dyed ; 39, hole booke.

**861\***. 8, For translacyon of this boke was fynyffhed . [The Colophon see on the Plate facing page 17].





## LIST OF NAMES AND PLACES.<sup>1</sup>

- Abbay of the black Crosse**, 402  
**Abbay, the whyte**, 623  
**Abbay of nonnes**, 612  
**Abbey of la beale adventure**, 123  
**Abblasoure, castel of**, 631  
**Abel, son of Adam**, 696  
**Abilleus, Abelleus, syr**, 111, 112  
**Ablamor of the Maryse**, 107  
**Accolon of gaulle, syr**, 89; follows a hart with Arthur and Vryence, 125; comes into the power of Morgan le fay, 126; awaking in the morning he finds himself in a deep well; a dwarf comes to ask him if he would fight for Morgan le fay, he promises to do it, and receives Excalibur and the sheath, 128; tells sir Ontzlake of his intention to fight with the knight, 129; fights with king Arthur, 130; nearly overcomes him, but by Nymue's intervention drops Excalibur, 131; is thrown down by Arthur; tells him Morgan le fay's commission, 133; is brought to an abbey and dies of his wounds, 135, 136; 138; 140  
**Adam, first man**, 696  
**Adtherp, syr**, 318, 319  
**Agente,<sup>2</sup> earldom of**, given to syr Clegys by syr Launcelot, 830  
**Aglouale, syr**, brother of Percyual, 256; 258; 451; 586, 587, 588, 589; 636; 790  
**Agrauayne, syr**, brother of syr Gawayne; comes with queen Morgause and his brothers to Arthur's court, 65; assists at his father Lot's burial, 88; fights in a tournament near the Castel peryllous, 258; marries the niece of lady Lyonesse, 270; is thrown down by Palomydes, 433; defeated by Breuse saunce pyte, 454, 455; fights against Tristram, but is overcome, 507; kills Lamorak with his brothers, 512, 513; accuses with Mordred queen Gueneuer, 726; is at the queen's dinner in London, 728; is smitten down by Launcelot, 743; does not rejoice with king Arthur in Launcelot's return, 759; is sent by Arthur to examine the barget, 761; fights in a tournament at Candlemas, 766; thrown down by Launcelot, 767; rides out maying with the queen, 772; is smitten down by Mellyagraunce, 774; handles Vrre's wounds, 790; is the cause of king Arthur's death, 796; accuses the queen openly of adultery, 797;

---

<sup>1</sup> This is the first complete and critical Index to "Le Morte Darthur" ever compiled. There occur about 850, and, counting all the various spellings, nearly 1000 names in the text. It was a tedious and difficult task, on account of the bad orthography and carelessness with regard to the names of persons. As the geography of the whole book is confused and unintelligible, I have abstained from giving any conjectures. In cases where I felt sure, I have stated my opinion. The numbers refer to the pages. In some cases I have stated in foot-notes the readings of names of persons and places as they occur in the French and English sources respectively, in order to show how little one can depend on them.

<sup>2</sup> Agente may be either Agen, a city in France, capital of the department of Lot and Garonne, a bishop's see, or the Agenticum (afterwards Sens) of the ancient Gaule; perhaps also Araegenus (Argentan).

- tells king Arthur about her, 798; advises the king to go hunting and to take the queen by surprise, 799; comes to capture Launcelot, 800; calls him a traitor, 801; is killed by Launcelot, 803; 805; 809; 823
- Aguarus**, syr, nephew to the dead man whom syr Launcelot finds in a chapel, 656, 657
- Agwysaunce**, **Anguyssaunce**, kyng of Ireland, 52; 54; 56; 60; 257; 259, 260
- Aladuke**, lord, 171
- Alardyn of the Ilys**, syr, 106
- Albons**, St., 39
- Aleyn**, syr, 427
- All halowmasse**, **al halowmas**, 49 (the mass or feast of all Saints, 31st of October)
- Almayn**, 162; 175; Germany
- Almesburye**,<sup>1</sup> 851; 856\*, 857\*
- Alphegus of spayne**, syr, 788
- Alps**, mountains, 162
- Alyduke**, **Alyduk**, syr, a knight of the round table, not identical with the above Aladuke,<sup>2</sup> 196\*; 728; 744
- Alys la beale pylgrym**, 475, 476, 477; becomes wife of Alysander le orphelyn
- Alysander the grete**, the myghty Conquerour, 1; 177; 827
- Alysander le orphelyn**, son of kyng Marke's brother prynce Boudwyne, comes with his parents to the court of king Mark, 466; is taken to the Castel Magouns, after his father's death, to be educated, 467; is made knight and receives his father's doublet, 468; is well equipped, 469; Trystram advises him by letter to go to Arthur's court, 470; he does not follow the advice; smites down four knights of Morgan le fay and fights and overcomes Malegryn, 472; is taken to Morgan le fay's castle, where he promises, in order to get healed, to stay twelve months, 473; a damoysel helps him, 474; he fights against several knights, 475, 476; becomes enamoured of Alys la beale pylgrym and marries her, 477, 478; 744; his death referred to, 792
- Alysaundrye** (? country or city), 163
- Amant**, syr, 423, 424; 436
- Ambage**, country of, 163 (? one of the provinces or towns of the Roman Empire)<sup>3</sup>
- Andred**, **Andret**, syr, nephew of kyng Marke, cosyn to syr Trystram, 297; 321; 325, 326; 368; 401, 402, 403, 404; 459
- Anglides**, **Anglydes**, wife of Boudwyn and mother to Alysander le Orphelyn, 466, 467, 468, 469
- Anguysshe**, kyng of Ireland, once mistakenly (161) called kyng of Scotland, sends to king Mark to ask truage for Cornwall, 277; receives the wounded Tramtryst in his country, 285; arranges a great tournament, 286; asks Trystram why he does not fight, 287; allows Trystram to leave his country safely, 290; is summoned by Bleoberys and Blamor to appear before king Arthur, 302; has to send within three days a knight who will fight for him, 304\*; gladly accepts Trystram's offer, 305; yields to Trystram's wish to save Blamor's life, 307; takes Trystram to Ireland and tells all the people about his valiant deed, 308; gives his daughter la beale Isoud to Trystram as wife for king Mark, 309; 314; 372; 410, 411; 529; 554; 738; 741, 742; 757; 763; 765; 790
- Anguyssaunce**. See **Agwysaunce**
- Anioye**, duke of, 830; Dynas the seneschal is made duke of A. by Launcelot
- Anneccians**, syr, god-son of kyng Bors, 60

<sup>1</sup> Almesbury is a town in Wiltshire not far from Salisbury. Originally the name was Ambrosebury, then Ambresbury, and from this has been made the present name.

<sup>2</sup> E. Brock, "Morte Arthur" (Thornton MS.), in his Index, apparently considers Aladuke, Aliduke, and Alidoyke as names belonging to the same person.

<sup>3</sup> "Morte Arthur" (Thornton MS.) reads "Ambyganye."

- Annoure**, lady, a sorceress, 361, 362  
**Ansirus**, **Anserus**, duke, 475; called le pylgrym, father of Alys  
**Antemes**, syr, 63  
**Anwyk**, 858\*; one of the places where Launcelot's body is supposed to be buried, perhaps identical with Ioyous gard  
**Anyause**, kyng, 673; 675  
**Arabe**, mounte of, 168; in Wales  
**Arabye**, 163; Arabia  
**Arbray**, castel of, 495  
**Archade**, syr, 482, 483  
**Archbyssshop of Caunterbury**, *see* Caunterbury  
**Argustus**, sone of kyng Harlon, 663  
**Arguys**, syr, 459  
**Armathye**, *see* Ioseph  
**Armynak**, syr Lauayne is made erle of Armynak by syr Launcelot, 830  
**Arnolde de Brewse**, 220; 233; 259  
**Arrage**, country of, 163 (? one of the provinces of the Roman Empire)<sup>1</sup>  
**Arrok de greuaunt**, syr, 793  
**Arrouse**, erle, 483  
**Arroy**, foreste of, 144  
**Arthur**, kyng of Brytayne, son of Vtherpendragon and Igrayne, begotten in the castel of Tyntigail, 37; born, delivered to Merlyn, who takes him to Ector, 38; rides with Ector and his son Kay to London; pulls a sword out of a stone, and gives it to Kay, 41; pulls the sword out again before Ector; promises to make Kay seneschal after his becoming king, 42; draws the sword out again before the lords and commons at Christmas, Candlemas, Easter and Whitsuntide, and is crowned king of England, 43; makes Kay seneschal, Baudewyn of Brytayne constable, Vlfyus chamberlain, Brastias warden of the north; goes to Wales; orders the next feast of Pentecost to be celebrated at Carlyon, 44; many kings and lords refuse to recognise him, 45; speaks to the rebellious; fights against them with his sword Excalibur, 46; kills many knights; goes to London and assembles his lords and barons; by Merlin's advice, and with the assent of the lords, he sends for the kings Ban and Bors, 47; receives Ban and Bors, and gives in their honour a great festival and tournament at Hallowmas, 49, 50; fights against the seven kings, 51-62; delivers king Lodegreaun; sees his future wife Gueneuer for the first time, 63; rides to Carlyon after Ban's and Bors' departure, 64; falls in love with Lot's wife, his sister, whom he does not yet know; begets on her Mordred, who afterwards destroys him; has a marvellous dream; the next morning, to distract his thoughts, goes to hunt; meets the questing beast; a knight takes his horse away, 65; Merlyn finds him pensive; tells him that Igrayne is his mother; returns to him as a child and as an old man, 66; is told that God is dissatisfied with him; asks Ector and Vlfyus about his birth; sends for Igrayne, 67; finds that Merlyn has told him the truth; embraces Igrayne, 68; makes Gryflet knight, 69; receives the ambassadors from Rome; refuses to pay the truage; saves Merlyn from some ruffians, 70; meets Pellinore, fights with him, is thrown down, and his sword broken, 71; by Merlyn's intervention he is saved from death; is healed by a hermit; returns with Merlyn, 72; sees in the middle of a lake a hand holding a sword; promises a gift to the lady of the lake, and gets the sword; intends to fight with Pellinore, but is dissuaded by Merlyn, 73; learns the qualities of Excalibur; refuses to send his beard to king Ryons; on the contrary, threatens to conquer his country, 74; in order to avoid Merlyn's prophecy with regard to

<sup>1</sup> "Morte Arthur" (Thornton MS.) reads here "Orcage."

Mordred, he orders all children<sup>1</sup> born on May-day to be destroyed; Mordred, however, is preserved, 75; cannot pull out the sword of a damoyssel sent by Lylle of Avelion, 76; requests Balyn to remain in his court, 78; hears from the lady of the lake the name of the sword; refuses to grant her the gift she asks; banishes Balyn from his court, 79; orders the lady of the lake, killed by Balyn, to be richly buried, 80; hears from Merlyn that Balyn has defeated and taken prisoner king Ryons; prepares his army to meet Nero, Ryons' brother, 86; overcomes king Lot by Balyn's help, 87; buries king Lot with great honours, and orders a monument to be erected on his tomb, 88; gives Excalibur to the charge of Morgan le fay, his sister, 89; graciously receives Balyn again, and tells him to fetch back a mourning knight, 89; orders this knight, who is killed by Garlon the Invisible, to be richly buried, 90; by Merlyn's advice he overcomes gradually all his enemies; tells Merlyn his wish to marry Gueneuer; after in vain trying to dissuade the king, Merlyn yields to his desire and sends to king Lodegrean, 100; receives Gueneuer and the round table with a hundred knights; tells Merlyn to find out the best knights of the country; grants young Gawayn's desire, 101; grants the wish of Aries the cowherd, 102; makes Tor, Pellinore's son, and Gawayn, his nephew, knights, 103; is wedded with great solemnity to Gueneuer in St. Stephen's Church at Camelot, 104; is displeased with Gawayn for killing a lady, 109; gives armour and a sword to Tor as reward for his valour, 113; receives Pellinore, 117; gives lands and properties to his knights; tells them to be brave and virtuous,

and makes them to swear that they would keep his orders and the principles of the round table, 118; is warned by Merlyn to keep his sword, 119; holds a feast at Camelot; returns to Cardoylle; hears that several kings have invaded his country; goes to defend his country; takes Gueneuer with him to the north, 120; is attacked unexpectedly during the night, but is saved by the courage of his knights, 121; defeats his enemies; thanks God for the victory, 122; wishes to replace the knights of the round table killed in the battle, 123; prefers Tor to the son of Bagdemagus, 124; hunts with Vryens and Accolon; they follow a hart; they find a little ship, 125; twelve damoyssels receive the king and his companions; they are well entertained and go to rest; the next morning Arthur finds himself in a dark prison, 126; is ready to fight and to deliver all the prisoners, 127; prepares at once to fight; receives by a damoyssel a sword like Excalibur, 129; fights with Accolon, who has Excalibur, 130; is nearly overcome, but is saved by the damoyssel of the lake; gets Excalibur, 131; recognises the treason; overcomes Accolon; forces him to tell all he knows, 132; pardons Accolon, 133; is healed in an abbey, and sends Accolon's body to Morgan le fay, 135; is robbed of the sheath of Excalibur by Morgan le fay; follows her, 137; refuses, by the advice of the lady of the lake, the cloak of gold and jewels sent by Morgan le fay, 139; receives Gawayn, Vwayn, and Marhaus, 159; sends word to the emperor Lucius, in answer to his demand for truage, that he will make war against him, 160; consults with his lords what to do, 161; sends the ambassadors back

<sup>1</sup> This passage is most likely suggested by the well-known Biblical incident of Herod's murder of the children. It is very similarly told in the Huth "Merlin."

and prepares for war, 162; trusts his kingdom to Baudewyn and Constantyn, takes leave of Guenever, goes to sea at Sandwich, 164; has a marvellous dream on the ship, which a philosopher interprets to him, 165; arrives at Barfleete in Flanders; resolves to fight against a giant, 166; goes to St. Mychels mount and kills the terrible giant; pikes the giant's head on a pole and shows it to all people; gives all the riches and treasures of the giant to his people, reserving for himself his club, 167, 168; sends Gawayn, Borce, Lyonel, and Bedewere to Lucius to ask him to leave the country, 169; fights against the Romans, 170, 171; overcomes them, sends the prisoners to Paris, 172; fights again, does personally great deeds of arms, kills the giant Galapas; is hurt in the face by Lucius, 173; cleaves Lucius' head with Excalibur; defeats the Romans entirely; orders the wounded to be attended to, and the dead to be buried, 174; continues his victorious career through Lombardy and Tuscany, 175; conquers many cities, 181; comes to Rome; gives rich reward to his allies and knights; returns home; is received by Gueneuer at Sandwich, 182; keeps his court, 183; receives Pedyvere at Winchester; holds Whitsuntide with his knights; is glad of Launcelot's return, 211; hears from Kay and others of Launcelot's valiant deeds, 212; grants to Gareth two wishes, 214; allows him to take the adventure of damoyssel Lynet, 216; receives at Pentecost all the knights that Gareth has overcome, 250; asks news about Gareth, 251; declares to the queen of Orkeney, who reproaches him for having badly received her son, that he did not know him, 252; tells her how Gareth came to his court, and consoles her, 253; sends to lady Lyonesse; she comes to him; they agree to have a great festival on

Assumption day near Lyonesse's castle, 255; comes to the Castel peryllous beside the yle of Auylyon, 256; seeks Gareth in vain, 262; finds him at last, and is very happy for his sister's sake; wonders that Lyonesse does not come; sends to fetch her, 268; finds that Lyonesse and Gareth love each other; orders their wedding to take place at next Michaelmas, 269; comes to Kynkenadon; gives Lynet to Gaheris as wife, and the niece of Lyonesse to Agrauayne, 270; Breunor le noyre comes to his court, 338; finds out that Breunor is a brave man, 339; makes him knight and gives him a quest, 340; comes into the Forest perillous, is kept prisoner by lady Annowre, 361; is saved by Trystram, whom he does not recognise, 362; is at the tournament near the Castel of Maydens, 384-87; does great feats of arms; is thrown down by Trystram, 391; rides to Launcelot's help; seeks Trystram, 395; declares he never saw a knight doing so well as Trystram; makes a great festival, 395; blames Launcelot for Trystram's departure; sends ten knights out to seek him, 397; hears by a lady that the shield of Trystram is made by Morgan le fay to dishonour him, 411; fights against Trystram, but is overcome, 412; is pleased at Trystram's arrival at his court; gives him the seat of Marhaus at the round table, 422; is very angry at king Mark's unknighthely behaviour, 436; allows Launcelot to bring back king Mark, but orders him to spare his life, 437; pardons Mark again, 438; hears how his fool Dagonet had frightened king Mark, 445; is glad at Dynadan's return, 446; asks him about his adventures; orders a tournament to take place near a priory, 447; meets Lamorak, 448; reconciles Trystram and king Mark, 449; makes Percyual knight, 451; is told by Launcelot that Gawayn and his brothers seek to destroy Lamorak, 453; hears

from Trystram and Isoud; writes to them, 455; gets a letter from king Mark, 456; understands by this letter the king's evil intentions, 457; 487; 499; 532, 533; fights against Dynadan, 534; is thrown out of the saddle by Trystram, 535; 536; 539, 540; wishes to see la beale Isoud; is smitten down by Palomydes, 541, 542; 545; comes with Launcelot to call on Trystram and Isoud; praises Isoud's beauty, 551; asks Trystram why he fought against him in the tournament; reproaches Palomydes, 552, 553, 554; goes to Camelot with his knights, 556; hears about the knight who shall sit in the Syege Peryllous, and win the Hooly Grail, 571; meets Elayne, mother of Galahad, 581; makes Helyn le blanck, the son of Bors, knight of the round table, 604; sees Launcelot again after his madness, 605; keeps Whitsuntide at Camelot, 612, 613\*, 614\*, 615; 618, 619, 620, 621; rejoices in his knights' return from the quest of the Sangreal, 725; is asked by Mador de la porte to burn Gueneuer; blames the queen for having offended Launcelot; tells her to find a knight who is ready to fight for her, 730, 731; Gueneuer tells him that Bors will take up her cause, 733; 736; thanks Launcelot for having saved his wife, 737; 741; sees on the Thames a barget; sends Kay, Brandyles, and Agravayn to see what is in it; goes to see himself; finds a letter in the fair maiden's hand, 761; sends for Launcelot; asks him to bury the maiden, 762, 763; 766; 769, 770; 786, 787; thanks Launcelot for having again rescued his queen, 788; receives Vrre's mother; resolves to handle Vrre's wounds, and to ask all his lords and knights to do the same, 789, 790; asks for Launcelot, 793; declares if Launcelot cannot heal Vrre's wounds, there will be no knight able to do it, 794; thanks God for Vrre's healing; makes a great tournament;

makes Vrre and Lavayn knights of the round table, 795; asks why the knights quarrel, and hears of the love between Gueneuer and Launcelot, 798; listens to Agrauayne's advice; goes hunting, 799; learns from Mordred what has happened, 807; sentences Gueneuer to death, 808; consults with Gawayn, 809; tells Gareth and Gaherys to be present at the queen's death, 810; hears that Launcelot has delivered the queen, and killed, amongst many others, Gareth and Gaherys, and faints for great sorrow, 811; tells Gawayn about all, and regrets that through this fatal deed all his court is destroyed, 812, 813; resolves to go to war against Launcelot, 814; besieges Ioyous gard, 815; fights against Launcelot and his knights, 818, 819, 820; receives letters from the pope, 821; gets Gueneuer again; is inclined to pardon Launcelot, but prevented by Gawayn, 823; 829; leaving the government of his country in Mordred's hands, he crosses over with Gawayn and many knights to attack Launcelot in his own country, 830; 832; besieges the city of Benwyk, 833; 835; falls sick for Gawayn's sake, 837; receives news from England that Mordred has made himself king, 838; arrives at Dover and fights against Mordred; is nearly out of his mind when he hears of Gawayn's death, 841, 842; lets Gawayn be buried in the chapel of Dover Castel; goes to meet Mordred at Salisbury, 843; has a wonderful dream; Gawayn's ghost appears to him, and warns him not to fight the next day, 844; sends to Mordred to offer him Cornwall and Kent, and to make peace, 845; fights desperately, 846; wants to kill Mordred, but is wounded to death by his dying son; falls down to the ground, 847; regrets that Launcelot is not there; tells Bedwere to throw his sword Excalybur into the sea, 848; feels that Bedwere deceives him; repeats his order, and

- finally declares he would kill him if he refuses to throw the sword into the sea; is carried by Bedwere to the shore, and received by four queens in a little boat, 849; declares to Bedwere he wishes to go to the valley of Avylyon to heal his wounds; requests him to pray for his soul, 850; 861\*
- Arundel, castel of, in Southsex,**<sup>1</sup> *see* **Magouns, 467**
- Arystause, erle, 790**
- Aryes, the Cowherd, also called le vayshere, 102, 103; 430; 791**
- Astamor, syr, 728; 791**
- Astlabor, kyng, 558; 561**
- Astolat, towne, according to Malory it is in "Englysshe called Gylford," 738, 739**
- Astolat, fayre maiden of. See Elayne le blank**
- Asey, 163, Asia**
- Auffryke, 163, Africa**
- Avelyon, lady lylle of,<sup>2</sup> 76; 81**
- Avylyon, yle of, 255, 256; vale of, 850**
- Babyloyne, country of, 724**
- Bagdemagus, Basdemagus, kyng of Gore, 89; 124, 125; 188; 190, 191, 192; 212; 254; 260; 479, 480; 483, 484; 486; 493, 494; 623\*, 624\*, 625; 714\*; 716\*; 831<sup>3</sup>**
- Balan, brother of Balyn, syr, 63; 79; 82, 83, 84; 86, 87, 88; 97, 98, 99**
- Balyn, Balen le Saueage, syr, called the knyght with the two swerdes; as poor knight in Arthur's court, desires to pull out a sword, 77; succeeds; thanks the king for his kindness, 78; strikes the lady of the lake's head off; is banished from the court, 79; tells his squire about his misfortune; resolves to overcome king Ryons, in order to gain Arthur's favour again, 80; fights against Launceor, 81; kills this knight; is sorry for it; meets his brother Balan, 82; tells him his plans, 83; finds Merlyn, 84; recognises him again through his disguise; follows his advice; takes Ryons prisoner, 85; brings him to Arthur's court and gains the king's good grace, 86; helps the king in the battle against Nero, 87; comes to Arthur; is told to fetch back a knight, 89; finds the knight, who is ready to go with him, but is killed by Garlon; goes with the dead knight's lady into a forest, 90; buries the knight; comes to a castle; refuses first to give his lady, but afterwards yields; hears a noise, 91; promises his host to help him; comes to the castle of king Pellam, 92; kills Garlon; fights with king Pellam and gives him the dolorous stroke, 93; is taken up by Merlin, who tells him that they shall never meet again in this world; promises his help to a knight whom he finds in the forest, 94; goes to the castle and finds the knight's lady in the arms of another; fetches him to see his lady, 95; is warned to go no farther; hears a horn; comes to a castle; exchanges his shield; is again cautioned by a damoyssel, 96; finds his brother as a red knight; does not recognise him, and is not recognised by his brother on account of the strange shield; fights against his brother, 97; kills him, and receives himself mortal wounds; dies; is buried by Merlyn, 99; 419**

<sup>1</sup> The identification of Magouns with Arundel in Southsex is of course Malory's idea. The original French MS. does not contain anything of the sort; there is only spoken of "li chastiaus de magance."

<sup>2</sup> Thomas Wright, "Morte Darthur," vol. i, page 59, note 3, suggests that Lady Lylle of Avelyon may be a corruption of "lady de l'yle d'Avelyon," simply meaning the lady of the yle of Avelyon. Wright, without having seen the original version, has conjectured rightly; Huth, "Merlin," i. p. 213, indeed, reads: "la dame apielee la dame de l'isle d'Avalon."

<sup>3</sup> King Bagdemagus dies and is buried on page 714\*; Galahad visits his tomb on page 716\*; on page 831 he is said to have spoken again to Launcelot. As Malory used different versions, such anachronisms are natural and not infrequent.

- Bamborow**, 858; one of the names of the place where the body of syr Launcelot was supposed to have been taken to; perhaps another name for Ioyous gard
- Ban of Bewwyck**, kyng, 47, 48, 49; 51; 53; 56; 58; 60; 64
- Bandes**, kyng, 488
- Baramdown**, 843; Barham Down, near Canterbury
- Barflete**,<sup>1</sup> in Flanders, 166
- Barnard**, **Bernard**, of Astolat, father of Elayn le blank, 739, 740, 741; 748, 749; 758, 759, 760
- Basdemagus**. *See* Bagdemagus
- Bawdewyn**, **Baudewyn** of Bretayn, 43; 44; 46; 164; 746; 756
- Bayen**, 829; supposed name for **Benwyk**
- Beale valet**, castel of, 455
- Bearne**, 830; Bearne, a former province of France; syr Vyllyars the valyaunt is made erle of Bearne by syr Launcelot
- Beaumayns**, surname given by syr Kay to Gareth, *meaning* Fair-Hands. *See* Gareth
- Beaume**, 829; another supposed name for **Benwyk**
- Bedegrayne**, bataylle of, 53-64; castel of, 51, 52; 62; forest of, 51
- Bedewere**, **Bedyuere**, syr, 166; 169, 170; 257; 743; 792; 846, 847, 848, 849, 850, 851; 860\*
- Belangere**, conestable of the castle of Magouns, 467, 468, 469
- Bellangere le beuse**, son of Alysaunder le orphelyn, 743; 792; 804; 819; 828; 830
- Bellangere le orgulous**, syr, 792
- Bellaus**, syr, 60
- Belleus**, **Bellyus**, lord, 189; 212
- Bellinus**,<sup>2</sup> a fictitious kyng of Bretayne, 161
- Bellyaunce**, **Belleaunce le orgulus**, syr, 337, 338
- Bellyas of Flaundrys**, syr, 56 (perhaps identical with syr Bellaus, 60)
- Bendelayne**, syr, 264, 265
- Benoye**, country of, 478
- Benwyk**, by some called **bayen**, by others **Beaume**, also spelled **Benwyck** or **barwyk**, 48, 49; 51; 63; 119; 829; 833; 836; 842
- Berel**, **Beriel**, syr, 170; 172
- Berluse**, **Berluses**, **Bersyles**, and **Bersules**, syr, 423, 424; 427, 428; 436
- Bernard of Astolat**. *See* Barnard.
- Berraunt le Apres**, **Baraunt**, generally only called the kyng with or of the honderd knyghtes, 44; 52; 54; 56, 57, 58; 60; 388; 390, 391; 394; 491; 517; 530; 738; 748; 757; 765, 766; 768; 790
- Bertelot**, **Bertolet**, syr, 595
- Black crosse**, abbay of, 402
- Black knyght**, the. *See* Perard
- Blamore**, **Blamor**, or **Blamour de ganys**, syr, 259; 295; 299; 303; 305, 306, 307, 308; 311; 345; 372; 386; 397; 410; 483; 728; 744; 790; 804; 830; 856\*; 860\*
- Bleoberys de ganys**, syr, 57; 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301; 305; 308; 342; 344; 373; 376; 385; 397; 399; 410; 416; 421, 422; 479; 483; 485; 501, 502, 503, 504; 534; 555; 556; 728; 743; 768; 790; is made duke of **poyters**, 830; 856\*; 860\*
- Blewe knyght**, the. *See* Persaunt of Inde
- Bleyse**, mayster of Merlyn, 61, 62
- Bloyas de la flaundres**, syr, 55
- Bloyse de la caase**, syr, 60
- Blyaunt**, syr, 594, 595; 603; castel of, 600, 601
- Bohart le cure hardy**, syr, 793; son of kyng Arthur
- Bochas**, 2; Boccacio (Caxton's Preface<sup>3</sup>)

<sup>1</sup> I did not find any town in Flanders that could be possibly supposed to be Barflete. As can be seen from the Thornton MS., Flanders is Malory's addition. Barflete is an old spelling for Barfleur, in the peninsula of Cotentin, Normandy; it is the harbour from which William the Conqueror set out for England in 1066.

<sup>2</sup> "Morte Arthur" (Thornton MS.) reads here "Belyne."

<sup>3</sup> The work referred to by Caxton is a book printed in the year 1475 by Georg Husner in Strassburg (folio). It contains 155 leaves, 55 lines making a full page; it



**Boloyne,<sup>1</sup> godefray of, 1** (Caxton's Preface)

**Book, the frensshe, the book, booke, or the Romaunce** referred to, *i.e.*, Malory's French and English sources, 40; 63; 143; 182, 183; 207; 211; 227; 233; 271; 284; 311; 328; 333; 353; 363; 393; 396; 399; 408; 463; 475; 478; 480; 536; 554; 571; 580; 601; 701; 740, 741; 744; 752; 757; 767, 768; 773; 775; 776, 777; 780; 788, 789; 791; 796; 799, 800; 811; 817; 822; 835; 837; 842; 858

**Borre, 62**; child of kyng Arthur and the damoyssel Lyonors

**Bors, Borcē de ganys, syr, son of kyng Bors, 143**; is sent as messenger to Lucius, 169, 170; 172; is numbered among the noble knights, 232; fights with the red knight, 259; meets Trystram, 373, 374; 386; 390; 397; 410; smites down Bromel; comes to kyng Pelles, 576; is told that the child Galahad is to sit in the peryllous syege; is confessed; he has a child with the daughter of king Brangoris; goes to bed in a room with many doors; declines to unarm himself, 577; sees a great spear that comes straight towards him; the point of the spear burns; it hurts him on the shoulder; a knight comes and asks him to fight with him; they run against each other; he smites the knight down, and orders him to go to Arthur; sees many arrows come through the window; afterwards a hideous lion; he cuts his head off, 578; then he sees suddenly a dragon with a golden inscription on its forehead; when he has killed the dragon, appears an old man, who sings about Ioseph of Arymathye; sees the Holy Grail;

the old man speaks to him, 579; sees a sword hanging over his head; hears a voice which tells him that he is not yet worthy to be in this place; the next morning he leaves the place, and finds Launcelot; tells him all he has seen, 580; when Elayne tells him about Launcelot, he rebukes her; goes to seek Launcelot, 584; goes to Gueneuer and blames her for her behaviour; goes with Ector and Lyonel in search of Launcelot, 585; sends a message to Gueneuer, 586; comes to king Brandegore; finds his son, Helyn le blanck, and takes him with him to Arthur's court, 604; 612, 613\*; 669; meets a man of religion on a donkey, and is recognised by him as one of the knights of the Sangreal, 671; is told that the Holy Grail can only be got by sinless people; has to eat bread and drink water, to wear a garment; sees a great bird, who kills himself in order to feed his young ones with his blood, 672; is lodged in a tower; refuses a fine dinner, and asks for bread and water; hears the lady's story, 673; offers to be her champion; has a vision while he sleeps; rises and goes to the chapel, 674; refuses again to eat; fights with Prydam, and overcomes him, 675; gives the land back to the lady who is the right owner of it; meets two knights who lead his brother Lionel bound with them; wishes to deliver his brother; there comes a lady who implores his assistance, 676; he is doubtful what to do; prays for his brother and succours the lady; kills the knight, 677; twelve knights lead him to the lady's father; he refuses to stay with them, and goes to seek his

---

has no title-page and is without pagination and registration. On fol. 1 recto it commences: "Ioannis Bocacii de Cercaldis historiographi prologus in libros incipit." It ends on fol. 155 verso: "Finit liber nonus & ultimus . . . de casibus virorum illustrium." The eighth book contains one chapter entitled "De Arturo britonum rege."

<sup>1</sup> "Godefray of Boloyne" was printed by Caxton in 1481. The book has no title-page, and the pages are not numbered; 142 leaves, and 40 lines to a full page. After a Preface and Table of Contents occupying eight leaves, it begins on fol. 9: "Here begynneth the boke intituled Eracles, and also of Godefrey of Bolyne," &c.

- brother; finds a man of religion, who comforts him, and tells him that his brother is dead; then he interprets his visions, 678; is led to a high tower, where he is well received, and finds a fair lady, 679; the lady makes love to him, and declares, if he does not love her again, she would throw herself down from the tower, 680; he resists the temptation; the demons disappear; he thanks God; comes to an abbey and stays there; tells the abbot his intentions, 681; the abbot explains to him the meaning of the trees, 682; comes into a forest and meets a man who tells him about a tournament; finds his brother; is very pleased, but his brother rejects him, 683; is compelled to fight against his own brother; kneels down before the feet of his brother's horse; is trodden down, but is saved by the hermit, 684; prays for the hermit's life; Colgreuance appears in the extreme moment and separates the brothers, 685; after Colgreuance is overcome, Lyonel attacks him again; with tears in his eyes he takes his sword, 686; on the point of killing Lyonel, he hears a voice which tells him to stop; both are separated by a cloud, and become unconscious; the voice tells him to leave his brother and to seek Percyual; comes to an abbey; finds a ship, enters it, and falls asleep, 687; awaking, he sees Percyual and tells him how he came into the ship, and what temptations he had, 688; meets with Galahad, 691; touches a sword, 692; 699; 701; 704; 707; 715\*; 717; 721; 723; 724; 727; is sent for, and requested to fight for the queen, 731; the king entreats him to yield to Gueneuer's wish; he promises to do so; rides to Launcelot, and tells him all; appears at the court again, and is blamed by his fellows, 732, 733; declares the queen is innocent, and makes himself ready to fight for her, 735; tells Arthur that a better knight than he has taken up the queen's cause, 735; 743; 751, 752, 753; finds Lauayne, who tells him where Launcelot is; is taken to Launcelot, 753; tells Launcelot that the queen is angry with him; sees the maiden of Astolat, 754, 755; is sent by Launcelot to the tournament; comes to Arthur and tells him about Launcelot, 756; reproaches the queen; fights at the tournament; smites twenty knights down; returns to Launcelot, 757; 763; 766; 769; 791; 799, 800; 803, 804, 805; 807; 819; is made king of the lands formerly belonging to Claudas, 829; 833; 855\*, 856\*; 858\*, 859\*, 860\*
- Bors**, kyng of gaule, 47, 48, 49; 53; 56, 57; 60; 63, 64
- Boudwyne**, the noble prynce, brother of kyng Mark, father of Aly-sander the orphelin, 465, 466, 467; 469
- Braban**, 175; **Brabant**
- Bragwayne**, **Brangwayne**, dame, mayde of La beale Isoud, wyfe of kyng Mark, 309; 316, 317; 327; 353; 369, 370; 380; 389, 390; 397, 398; 404, 405.
- Brandegore**, **Brandegoris**, **Brangorys**, kyng of stranggore, 52; 54; 56; 577; 604
- Braundel**, **Brandyles**, syr, 257; 359, 360, 361; 430, 431, 432, 433; 761; 772, 773, 774; 776; 792
- Bracias**, **Barcias**, **Brasias**, or **Brastias**, originally a knight of the duke of Cornwall, is made "wardeyn to wayte vpon the northe fro Trent forwardes" by kyng Arthur, 37, 38, 39; 44; 46; 48, 49; 53, 54, 55, 56; 60; 62; becomes afterwards a hermit in the forest of **wynde-soure**, 727; 732; 764
- Brenius**,<sup>1</sup> a fictitious king of Bry-tayne, 161

<sup>1</sup> The Thornton MS. has here the form "Bremyne" (line 277); there is moreover a third king of the name "Bawdewyne" mentioned.

- Breunor**, syr, of the **castel Pluere**, 310, 311, 312
- Breunor**, **Brewnor le noyre**, generally called **La cote male tayle**, 214, 215; comes to Arthur's court; is called, on account of his bad-shaped coat, **la cote mayle tayle** (*mal taillé*), 338; tells his father's death; kills a lion in the king's absence, 339; is made knight, 340; takes the adventure of the black shield; smites down **Dagonet**; is mocked at by the **damoyssel**, 341; is thrown down by **Bleoberis**; requests the lady not to scold him any more; smites down **Mordred**, 342; fights against a hundred knights, and overcomes them by a lady's assistance, 343; joins his **damoyssel**, and is laughed at again, 344; meets **Launcelot**; is continually rebuked by his lady, 345; smites a knight down, but is taken by five knights prisoner to a castle, 346; is delivered by **Launcelot**, 347; rides with him, 348; enters a fortress, 349; overcomes several knights, and is grievously wounded, 350, 351; refuses **Plenorius'** castle, provided this knight is ready to come to Arthur's court; gets the castle of **Pendragon** and all the surrounding land; comes back to Arthur's court, 352; weds the **damoyssel Maledysaunt**, 353; 728; 791
- Breuse saunce pyte**, **Breunis**, the **broune knyght wythoute pyte**, 265; 271; 304; 379, 380; 397, 398; 407; 414, 415; 421; 454; 470; 483; 500, 501; 566; 568
- Bretayn**, little or **petyte**, **royame** of, 164; 411; duchesse of, wyfe of **Howel**, cosyn of **Arthur**, 166, 167
- Bretayn**, **Grete**, 175; 626; **Britannie**, lat. gen. for *Britanniae* (*Caxton's Preface*), 2
- Briant**, **bryaunte**, **Bryan de la foreyst saueage**, syr, 56; 60; 106
- Bromel la pleche**, syr, 575, 576
- Bruse**, syr, 595
- Bryan of the Ilys**, syr, 115; 256; 258; 347, 348; 352
- Bryan de lystynoyse**, syr, 196\*; 792
- Bryaunt of Northwalys**, syr, 382, 383
- Brysen**, dame, mayde of **Elayn** the daughter of **kyng Pelles**, 573, 574, 575; 580, 581, 582; 584; 598, 599
- Burgoyne**, **Burgoyn**, 164; 169; **Burgundy** or **Bourgogne**
- Cador of Cornwaille**, syr, 161, 162; 164; 171, 172
- Calabre**, 163; country of **Calabria**
- Callyburne of pauye**,<sup>1</sup> syr, 170
- Calydone**, 692; country of (?)<sup>2</sup>
- Cambenet**, **Candebenet**, **Canbenec**, **Canbenek**, **Eustace**, duke of, 52, 53; 56, 57; 60
- Cambynes**, duke, 492
- Camelard**, **Camelard**, **Cmyliarde**, land of, 8; 63; 100
- Camelot**, according to *Caxton's Preface*, a town in **Wales**; called in *Englysshe wynchestre*, as stated several times in the text,<sup>3</sup> 2; 83; 99; 104; 111; 116, 117; 120; 123; 126; 135; 159; 302; 423; 436; 439, 440; 451, 452; 605; 612; 738; 741; 748; ryuer of, 414

<sup>1</sup> The Thornton MS. gives here no name, but speaks of "a paynyme of Perse." *Callyburne* is the name given to Arthur's sword in this romance. *Malory* may have profited by this name, as he generally calls that sword "Excalibur."

<sup>2</sup> "La Queste del Saint Graal," ed. F. J. Furnivall (1864) for the Roxburghe Club, reads here, p. 182, "qui conuerse in calidoine."

<sup>3</sup> *Camelot* is neither situated in **Wales** as *Caxton* states, nor is the English *Winchester* identical with it. *Camel*, near *South Cadbury*, *Somerset*s, is the place where the remains of the old city of *Camelot* are still to be found.—I am indebted to *Sir Edward Strachey* for submitting to me a lecture delivered by *J. A. Bennet*, at a public meeting in *Somersetshire* in 1887, which endeavours to establish the claims of *Cadbury* and *Camelot* to be the places referred to in the romance. There is besides an interesting account given of the different quotations of these places in other English writers.

- Candelmasse, Candalmasse, Candalmas,** 43, 765; **Candlemas,** the candle feast, a festival of the Rom. Cath. Church in honour of the second purification of the Virgin Mary, February 2nd
- Canterbury, Caunterburye,** town of, 839; 843; archbyssshop of, 40; 42, 43; 46; 49; 101; 270; 839, 840; 850, 851; 855\*; 857\*; 859\*, 860\*
- Capadoce,** 163; country of Cappadocia, province of Asia Minor
- Carados,** kyng of Scotland, 44; 46; 52; 257; 260; 303; 306; 315; 377; 385, 386; 470; 790
- Carados of the dolorous toure,** syr, 256; 258, 259; perhaps identical with kyng Carados
- Carados, syre,** 148
- Carbonek, Carboneck,** castel of, 644; 690; 713; 717
- Car de Gomoret,** syr, 471
- Cardef, capytayn,** 175
- Cardok,** syr, 791
- Cardol,** syr, 49
- Cardoylle,** cyte of, 120; Carlisle
- Cardycan,** castel of, 589
- Cardyf,** place, 361; 829, 830; Cardiff
- Carleil, Carleyl,** town of, 789, 790; 795; 807; 810; 822; castel of, 799; suffrecan of, 611
- Carlyon,<sup>1</sup>** cyte of, 44, 45; 51; 64; 67; 73; 74; 215; 250; 456
- Carteloyse,** castel of, 700
- Case,** castel of, 574
- Castel blank,** 594, 595
- Castel Orgulous,** 342, 343
- Castel peryllous,** besyde the yle of Auylyon, 255, 256; 353
- Castor,** syr, 597, 598; 600
- Cateland,** 163; country of (?)
- Caulas,** syr, 60
- Cayer,<sup>2</sup>** 163; (?)
- Caym,** 696; brother of Abel and son of Adam and Eve
- Cezar, Iulius,** conquerour, 1; the fyrst emperour of Rome, 160
- Chalauce, Chalenge, Challyns, Chaleyns,** duke of Claraunce, 484, 485; 491; 766; 790
- Champayne,** 169; Champagne
- Chappel peryllous,** 205, 206
- Charlemayn, Charles the grete,** 1 (Caxton's Preface)
- Charyot,** castel, 186
- Chestelayne,** syr, 180; child and ward of syr Gawayne
- Claryauce, syr, de la foreist saueage,** most likely identical with **Claryauce,** or **Claryaus,** kyng of Northumberland, 52; 54; 56; 60; 790
- Clarysyn,** countesse, 181
- Claryus, Clarrus, Clartus, Claras of Cleremont,** or of clere mounte, syr, 792; 805; is made a duke of Normandy by syr Launcelot, 830; 856\*; 860\*
- Claudas,** kyng, 47, 48; 63; 119; 164; 580
- Claudyne,** son of kyng Claudas, 720
- Clegys,** syr, sometimes called of **Sadok,** 175; 792; 805; 830; received from Launcelot the erldome of Agente
- Cleremond,** syr, 175
- Cloddrus,** syr, 792
- Clyazar,** syr, 663; son of kyng Pelles
- Coleyne,** 163; † Cologne
- Colgreuauce, Colgreuance, de gorre,** syr, 60; 376; 685, 686; 793; 799; 802; 808
- Collybe,<sup>3</sup>** sea of, 690; (?)
- Colombe, Columbe,** lady, 84; 419; 426
- Comange,** erle of, 830; this is the dignity given to Hebes le renoumes by syr Launcelot
- Constantyn,** son of Heleyne, kyng of England, 161
- Constantyn,<sup>4</sup>** countrey of, besyde Bretayne, 166

<sup>1</sup> This is Caerleon-upon-Usk, the Roman Isca Silurum.

<sup>2</sup> The Thornton MS. reads here "Crete." I am led to think that the copy of the MS. that Malory used was very badly written; this only would explain such blunders.

<sup>3</sup> "La Queste del Saint Graal," ed. F. J. Furnivall (1864), reads here, page 179: "si entrent en vne forest qui duroit iusc'a la mer, et estoit chele forest apielee chelibe," &c.

<sup>4</sup> This is the Cotentin peninsula, in the North-west of Normandy, supposed to be named after the Emperor Constantine.

- Constantyn**, son of syr Cador of Cornewaylle, 164; 720; 792; 860\*
- Corbyn**, castel of, 575; 603; cyte of, 597; pounte (*i.e.*, bridge) of, 571; 576
- Corneus**, duke, 49; father of Lucas the bottlere
- Cornewail**, **Cornewaille**, **Cornewayle**, duke<sup>1</sup> of, or also called duke of Tyntagil, 35; 37; marches of, 64; country of, 75; 255; 277, 278; 291; 302; 309; 325; 334; 367; 370; 402; 404; 423
- Corsabryn**, syr, 488, 489
- Cradoks mantle**, 2 (Caxton's Preface)
- Cradulmas**, **Cardelmans**, **Cradelment**, kyng of Northwales, 52; 54, 55, 56; 60
- Crosselme**, syr, 791
- Cryst**, **Cryste**, lord Ihesu, 94; 98; 128; 152; 620; 694; incarnation of, 1 (Caxton's Preface)
- Crystmas**, **Cristmasse**, 40; 43; 763
- Curselayne**, syr, 799
- Cypres**, 163; † Cyprus
- Cyte**, the reed, 519, 520; 522, 523
- Dacie**, 2 (Caxton's Preface); lat. gen. for Daciae
- Dagonet**, syr, fool of kyng Arthur, 341, 342; 366, 367, 368; 432, 433; 445
- Dalan**, syr, 454
- Damas**, syr, 126, 127, 128, 129; 134
- Damaske**, 163; Damascus, city in Syria
- Damyete**, 163; † Damietta, town in Egypt
- Daname**, syr, 398
- Darras**, syr, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400; 405, 406; 792
- Dauyd**, kyng of Iherusalem, 1 (Caxton's Preface); 697
- Degrane saunce velany**, syr, 793
- Delectable yle**, 520
- Denmarke**, country of, 718; kyng of, 120
- Dodynas le saueage**, syr, 156; 259; 297; 298; 394; 418, 419; 528; 742; 772; 774; 791; 855\*, 856\*; 859\*, 860\*
- Dolphyne**, 178; † Dauphiny, a late province of France
- Dolorous gard**, 828: thus was the Castel Ioyous gard afterwards called (*see* Ioyous gard)
- Dornar**, **Dornard**, syr, 259; 281; 451
- Douer**, castel of, 2 (Caxton's Preface); 841; 843; 855\*; town of, 51; 181
- Dragon**, description of, 165; spyt-tyngye fyre, 572
- Dryaunt**, syr, 322; 324
- Duchemen**, duke of, 179
- Durnore**, syr, 791, 792
- Dynadan**, syr, 259; 372, 373, 374, 375, 376; 382; 384, 385; 388; 392; 395, 396; 398, 399; 405; 407; 417; 426; 429, 430, 431; 434, 435, 436; 438, 439-447; 450; 454; 457, 458; 464, 465; 479; 481, 482; 484; 486; 488, 489; 491, 492, 493; 505-511; 513; 515, 516; 525; 529; 532; 534-538, 539; 545-555, 556; 591
- Dynas**, syr, seneschal of kyng Mark, 256; 322; 363; 371; 401; 404, 405; 458, 459, 460, 461; 466; 469; 495; 497, 498; 792; 805
- Dynaunt**, syr, 369, 370; 373
- Ebel**, syr, 518; 520
- Ector**,<sup>2</sup> syr, father of syr Kay the seneschal, 37, 38, 39; 41, 42; 60; 67, 68
- Ector de Maris**, syr, brother of syr Launcelot, asks a forester if he knows any adventures, 184; beats on the basin; fights with Turquyne and overcomes him, 185; 196\*; 203; 211; 232; 302; 373; 386; 397; 410; Gueneuer complains to him, 411; does great deeds of armes in the tournament at the priory, 447; is smitten down by Launcelot, 479; 485, 486; is thrown down by Bleoberis, 502, 503, 504; 534; smitten down by Tristram, 537; 545; 554, 555; 560; 566; 585; fights with

<sup>1</sup> Geoffrey of Monmouth, "Hist. Brit.," calls him Gorlois dux Cornubiae; in the Huth "Merlin" and in the ordinary "Merlin" he is called "duc de Tintaguel."

<sup>2</sup> He is called "Auctor" in the Huth "Merlin;" "Antor" in the ordinary "Merlin."

- Percyual, 591; sees the holy vessel, and is healed by it, 592, 593; 601, 602, 603; asks Launcelot to return to Arthur's court, 604, 605; meets Gawayn, 664; finds an old chapel; has a wonderful dream, 665; has a vision; tells Gawayn about it; hears a voice that tells him he cannot come to the Sangreal, 666; wishes to joust with a knight, 667; weeps; comes to Nacyen, and tells him all about the vision, 668; Nacyen explains it to him, 669, 670, 671; 689, 690; 714\*, 715\*; 727, 728; 743; 744; 768; 791; 818; is crowned king of Benwyk, 829; 856\*; 859\*, 860\*
- Ector of Troye**, 827 (*see also* Hector)
- Edward of Canaruan**, syr, 792
- Edward the Fourth**, kyng of England, 1; 861 (Caxton's Preface and Colophon)
- Edward of Orkeney**, syr, cosyn of syr Gawayn, 532, 533; 793
- Edward of the reed castel**, syr, 156, 157, 158
- Edwardes, St.**, shryne, 2 (Caxton's Preface)
- Eester**, feste of, 43; 163
- Eestland**, quene of, 187
- Elamye**,<sup>1</sup> 163; ? a province of the old Roman empire
- Egglame**, syr, 73
- Egypte**, 163; 174; Egypt
- Elayne**, the daughter of kyng Pelles, and mother of syr Galahad, 574, 575, 576; 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585; 598, 599, 600, 601; 603; 605, 606
- Elayne**, wyfe of kyng Nentres, 38
- Elayne**, wyfe of kyng Ban, 119
- Elayne le blank**, the fayre mayden of Astolat, 740, 741; 748, 749, 750, 751, 752; 754, 755; 758, 759, 760, 761
- Eleyne**, daughter of kyng Pellenore and the lady of the rule, 117, 118
- Elyan**, Helyn, Hellayne, once
- **Elayne le blank, le blanck**, child that syr Bors begot on the daughter of kyng Brangoris, 577; 604; 672; 792
- Elyazar**, syr, once spelt **Clyazar**, son of kyng Pelles, 717 (comp. 663)
- Elyas**, capytayn of the Sessoyns, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464
- Elyas de gomeret**, syr, 471
- Elyot**, harper, once misprinted Elyas, 457; 464, 465
- Elys, Elyses, Elyse, la Noire**, syr, 484; 486
- Elyzabeth**, quene of Lyonas, mother of syr Trystram, 273, 274; 291
- Emerause**, syr, 60
- England**, 35; 38; 45; 75; 159; 255; 273; 286; 302; 329; 423; 494; 580; 586; 599; 789; 814; 821; 838; 841; 845; 851, 852; 859\*, 860\*; Englyshmen, 840
- Epynogrys, Epynegrys**, syr, son of the kyng of Northumberland, 256; 258; 505, 506; 526; 532; 558, 559, 560, 561; 742, 743; 793
- Ermynyde**, syr, 792
- Ertanax**,<sup>2</sup> a fish, 692; found in the ryuer of Eufrate
- Ertayne**,<sup>3</sup> 163; ? province of the old Roman Empire
- Estorausse**, cyte of, 722
- Estrake**, 830 (?); syr Vrre is made erle of, by syr Launcelot
- Estsex**, 843; county of Essex
- Ethelwold**, syr, 179
- Ethyope**, kyng of, 174
- Ettard**, lady, 147; 149, 150; 152, 153; 793
- Eufrate, Eufrates**, ryuer of, 163; 692
- Europe**, the large, 163
- Euaungelystes**, the four, 36; 109; 117; 703
- Eue**, 696; first woman
- Euelake**, kyng, 625, 626, 627; 645; 660 (*see* Mordrayns)
- Ewayns le blanche maynys**, son of kyng Vryens (*see* Vwayne)

<sup>1</sup> Thornton MS. reads here "Elamet."

<sup>2</sup> "La Queste del Saint Graal" reads here, p. 183: "si conuerse el fin d'euftrate, et non mie en autre aigue, et chil poissons est appieles orteniaus."

<sup>3</sup> Thornton MS. reads here "Irritayne."

**Excalybur** (Cut steel), kyng Arthur's sword, 46; 79; 89; 128, 129, 130; 132; 135; 137; 173, 174; 848, 849

**Faramon's** (kyng of Fraunce) daughter, 279; 287; 371

**Feldenak**, syr, 170

**Felelolye, Felelolle**, 769; 795; syster of syr Virre

**Felot of Langduk**, syr, 110

**Felot de lystynoyse**, 156

**Feraunt**, syr, 179; of Spayn

**Fergus**, erle, 155, 156; 365; 371; 380; 455; 466; 469

**Flanedreus of the castel of ladyes**, syr, 60

**Flaundres**, 162, 163; 166; 175

**Florence, Florens**, syr, 175; 179, 180

**Florence**, syr, son of Gawayn, 790; 809

**Florydas**, syr, 179; 181

**Florys**, syr, 181

**Forest peryllous**, 361; 716\*

**Four Stones**, Castel of, 83

**Foyse**, erle of (?), 830; dignity conferred by syr Launcelot on syr Plenorius

**Fraunce, gaule**, 47; 163; 166; 273; 276; 286; marshal of, 161; lordes of, 829

**Frolle, of the oute yles**, syr, 335, 336, 337

**Gahalantyne, Gahalaytyne, Galahantyne, Galahatyne**, syr, 190, 191, 192; 212; 790; 856\*; 860\*

**Gaherys, Gaheryse**, syr, brother of syr Gawayn, 65; 88; 105-108; 193, 194; 211; 237; 256; 258; 375, 376; 385; 393; 395; 400-405; 410; 421; 425; 452, 453; 483; 487; 490; 507; 512, 513; 532; 587; 728; 743; 766, 767; 790; 809, 810; 812, 813; 816, 817

**Galagars**, syr, 123

**Galahad, Galahalt, Galahault, the haute prynce**, son of Launcelot and Elayne, daughter of kyng Pelles, 94; 99; 571; is begotten, 574; christened and brought up, 575; 577; 581; 583; 597; 600; 605, 606; 611; is brought by twelve nuns to Launcelot, who makes him knight, and wishes to take him to

Arthur's court, but he declines, 613\*; comes with an old man to the court, without shield and sword; the old man declares that his companion is the desired knight, and leads him to the Peryllous syege; he sits down in it, 616; is greatly honoured, and recognised as the son of Launcelot; tells the king that the adventure of the sword belongs to him, 617; he draws it out of the stone; in a great tournament, given in his honour, he overcomes all knights save Launcelot and Percyual, 619; is asked by the queen about his father; she tells him he need not be ashamed of his father; is led to Arthur's chamber and rests on the king's bed, 622; rides in the quest without a shield; comes the fourth day to an abbey, 623\*; in this abbey is kept a white shield; it is brought to him; he takes it, and his arms, mounts his horse, and leaves his fellowship; comes to the white knight, 625; is told about the origin of the shield, and that he is destined to carry it in the quest of the Holy Grail; promises to make Melyas, his squire, knight; is led to a tomb in a church by a monk, 627; he is unarmed; enters the tomb; a voice tells him not to approach; he advances; smoke in the shape of a man comes out; he finds a dead knight in the tomb; he returns to the abbey to rest himself; the next morning he makes Melyas knight, and leaves the place, 628; leaves Melyas, who takes the left-hand road; comes to save Melyas, who has attacked a knight for the sake of a golden crown, 630; a good man tells him why Melyas did not succeed; he rides forth, 631; enters an old chapel to pray there; a voice tells him to go to the Castel of Maydens, and rid it of its bad customs; a very old man points this castle out to him; he goes thither; meets seven knights, 632; attacks them, and forces them to flight; an old man

brings him the keys of the castle; he opens the gates; is welcomed by many people; hears from a gentlewoman that the seven knights will return again at night; receives a horn of ivory; blows it; a priest comes to tell him the history of the castle, 633; the knights of the castle do him homage; hears next morning that the seven brothers are slain by Gawayn and Vwayn, 634; meets Launcelot and Percyual, but they do not know him; fights against them; throws Percyual down; a recluse tells him that he is the best knight of the world, 636; Launcelot and Percyual, on hearing who he is, follow him, but he escapes them, 637; saves Percyual; follows his adversaries, 646; 688; comes into a waste forest and has many adventures; takes his way to the sea; comes to a castle and helps the knight at a tournament; is recognised; smites Gawayn down; leaves secretly the place, 689; comes to the castle of Carboneck; sleeping in an hermitage, he is called away by a lady, who takes him to another castle, 690; from there he proceeds, with the maiden and the lady, to the sea, where they find a ship; Bors and Percyual are in it, and welcome him; he enters the ship; it starts; he asks them about the ship; finds another ship, 691; he enters it with the lady and his fellows; finds a bed and a crown of silk and a sword, 692; likes to draw the sword; arrives in Logryns, 693; 696; 699, 700, 701; the dying earl Hernox requests him to go to the maimed king to heal his wound, 702; 704, 705, 706; departs from Percyual, 707; meets Launcelot his father, 708; tells him about his sword, and remains with him half a year in the ship; a white knight comes to tell

him that he has been long enough with his father; they part from each other, 709; comes to king Mordrayns, who kindly receives him, 715\*; buries the king; comes to a forest, and finds a well with boiling water; puts his hand into it; the water ceases at once; comes to Bagdemagus' tomb; quenches the fire in an abbey; passes the night in it, 716\*; follows Percyual; finds him; they come to Carboneck; Galahad joins the pieces of the sword, 717; nine knights come to salute him, three from Gaul, three from Ireland, three from Denmark; four ladies bring a sick man on a bed to him, who has a golden crown on his head, 718; is kissed by Ioseph of Arimathia; receives the holy sacrament; is told to take some of the blood of the spear with him; heals the maimed king; leaves with Percyual and Bors the other knights, 720; prays long and instantly; comes to Sarras, 721; is made king of the holy city; orders a table and a precious chest to be made for the Holy Grail, 722; sees closely the holy vessel; prays God to take his soul from him; kisses Bors and Percyual; sends greetings to his father Launcelot; dies, 723; is buried, 724

**Galahad, Galahalt, Galahault, the noble or the haute prynce, syr Breunor's sone, duke, lord, syr, of the cuntry of Surluse, 257; 260; 313, 314; 445; 478; 480-484; 488, 489; 491; 493; 528; 738; 742; 745; 748; 757; 765; 766**

**Galapas, a giant, 173; killed by kyng Arthur**

**Galardoun, syr, 416**

**Galatyn, 176; name of Gawayn's sword**

**Galfrydus, 2 (Caxton's Preface); Geoffrey of Monmouth<sup>1</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> The first printed edition is that of I. Cavellati, Paris, 1508, fol.: "Britanie utriusque regū & principū origo et gesta insignia ab Galfrido Monemutensi ex antiquissimis Britannici sermonis monumentis in latinū sermonē traducta; & ab Ascensio cura &



**Gallacye**, 163; Galatia, province of Asia Minor

**Galleron, Galeron of Galway**, syr, 609; 611; 742, 743; 791; 799

**Galyhodyn**, syr, 256; 259; 397; 492; 527, 528 (a kynge wythin the countrey of Surluse), 529; 728; 743; 768; 804; 830; 856\*; 860\*; syr Launcelot makes him duke of Sentonge

**Galyhud**, syr, 256; 397; 728; 743, 744; 768; 830, 831; 856\*; 860\*; syr Launcelot makes him erle of perygot

**Galyndes shield**, 196\*

**Garaunt of Camlyard**, syr, 471

**Gawayne**, surnamed **Beaumayns**, 65; 88; comes to Arthur's court leaning on two men's shoulders as if he were unable to walk, 213; asks two gifts of king Arthur, the first being that he should feed him one year; is called **Beaumayns** by Kay, 214; is patronised by Launcelot and Gawayn, 215; asks for his second gift, the adventure of damoyse Lynet; the lady mocks at him, and calls him kitchen knave, 216; beautifully fitted out, he leaves Arthur's court and follows the lady; he throws down Kay, who rides after him; fights against Launcelot, 217; tells Launcelot his real name, and is made knight by him; overtakes the damoyse, who continues to abuse him, 218; follows a man whose master has been taken by six thieves; delivers this knight, 219; stays the night with this knight; comes to a water; fights against two knights in the water and overcomes them, 220; fights with the black knight, 221; kills him, and follows the damoyse, 222; meets the green knight, 223; throws him down, but grants him his life on the condition that he goes to Arthur's court, 224; stays with the green knight; the damoy-

sel still mocks at him, 225; encounters with the red knight, 226; conquers him also, and sends him to Arthur, 227; meets with the blue knight Persant of ynde, 228, 229; defeats him also; now Lynet asks his forgiveness for her bad conduct, 230; spares Persant's life on the condition that he goes like his brothers to king Arthur; hospitably received at Persant's house, he spares his daughter, and is so much the higher esteemed, 231; tells Persant that he is going to fight for lady Lyonesse, and that Launcelot made him knight, 232; finally discloses to him his right name, 233; receives a message and food from lady Lyonesse by her dwarf, 234; after having reposed himself at the hermitage, he rides forth to meet the red knight of the red lands; his damoyse encourages him, 235; he blows the horn, 236; sees lady Lyonesse at the window of her castle; fights against the red knight, 237, 238; is newly encouraged by the sight of lady Lyonesse, but nearly overcome; Lynet reminds him of his former success; defeats finally the red knight, 239; at the request of Lynet and the knights of the castle, he grants him his life if lady Lyonesse pardons him, 240; is unarmed, and his wounds are dressed; desires to see Lyonesse; rides to the castle, 241; is not received, and mournfully leaves the place, 242; lays himself down to sleep; finds his dwarf gone; learns from a man that Gryngamor has taken his dwarf away, 243; comes to Gryngamor's castle and asks for his dwarf, 244; is well received at the castle, 245; sees Lyonesse; becomes deeply enamoured of her; is told by Gryngamor that his sister loves him again, 246; is very happy, 247; fights against a knight; is sorely wounded, 248; fights against another knight,

impedio magistri Iuonis Cauellati in lucem edita:" etc. Caxton must refer to a manuscript.

- and cuts his body into a hundred pieces, but is much worse wounded, 249; is healed by Lynet, 250, 251, 252, 253; asks Lyonesse not to tell Arthur where he is, but to propose a great tournament to be held at her castle on Assumption Day, 254; is healed and strengthened by Lynet's drugs; hears by the red knight from Arthur, 255, 256; receives a ring from Lyonesse, by which he can appear in different colours, 257; appears at the tournament; fights bravely and excites general admiration, 258; 260; spares Launcelot, who recognises him, 261; gives his ring to the dwarf; forgets to take it again; comes back to the tournament in his ordinary shape, and is recognised by a herald, 262; he, however, disappears from the field; comes to a castle and asks lodging, 263; is taken in and well treated, and starts the next morning, 264; fights with Bendelayne, and gives him a mortal wound; is attacked by twelve of his knights, but bravely resists them; comes to a castle which is in the power of the brown knight; he overthrows him and kills him, 265; meet the duke de la rouse, and defeats him, 266; is hurt by a knight, who is no other than his brother Gawayn; Lynet appears in time to tell them; he is very happy to find his brother; Lynet dresses their wounds, and rides to fetch Arthur, 267; Arthur and Morgawse and many knights and ladies come to see him, and are highly pleased to have finally found him, 268; tells Arthur that he loves Lyonesse, 269; is wedded at Michelmas, in the castle of Kynkenadon, to Lyonesse, with great solemnity, 270, 271, 272; 510; 512; 517; rides with Trystram, 530, 531, 532; is compared by Arthur to an eager wolf, 533; is thrown down by Ector de Maris, 534; is horsed again by Trystram, 535; 539; 543, 544; 547, 548, 549; 552; 553; 555, 556; 728; does great deeds of arms at a tournament, 757, 758; 766, 767, 768, 769, 770; handles Vrré's wounds, 793; is killed by Launcelot, 811, 812; 816, 817
- Garlon the inuysybel**, syr, 90; 92
- Garlot**, country of, 38 (kyng Neentres)
- Garnysshe of the mount**, syr, 95
- Gallie**, 2 (Caxton's Preface); lat. gen. for Galliae
- Gaule** (France), 49; 718; 720
- Gaunter**, syr, 202, 203
- Gautere**, **Gauter**, syr, 256; 259; 792
- Gawayn**, **Gauwayn**, **Gaweyn**, kyng Arthur's nephew, son of kyng Lot of Orkeney; Gauwayn's skull kept in Dover Castle, 2 (Caxton's Preface); comes with his mother and brothers to Arthur's court, 64; comes again with his mother to his father's burial, 88; requests Arthur to make him knight, 101; is made knight, 103; declares he will slay Pellinore, 104; accompanies Vwayne, 140, 141, 142, 143; rides forth with the youngest of the three ladies, 144; finds a knight who is lamenting, 145; is asked to decide who shall have the lady, the knight or the dwarf; leaves the decision to the lady; fights with two knights; his lady is taken from him, 146; he accords with his adversary, and passes the night at his house; hears about Pelleas, 147; meets Pelleas; consoles him, and promises to help him to win Ettard's love, 148; promises to be true and faithful to him; rides to Ettard's castle, 149; forgetting his promise, he falls in love with Ettard and stays with her, 150; Ettard finds out that he has told her an untruth; leaves her, 151; 154; meets Marhaus and Vwayn again, 158; is sent for by Arthur, 159; is sent as messenger to Lucius, 169; kills a knight of Lucius who speaks ill of the "Bretons," 170; is sent with Florence to find provisions, 175; steals away from his fellowship; meets a knight of Tuskany; fights and overcomes the knight, who is called Pryamus,

176; tells Pryamus first that he is page of Arthur, afterwards that he is knight of the round table, 177; is told by Pryamus how there are many knights close at hand to fight against Arthur, 178, 179; comes back with many provisions and great treasures; requests Arthur to make Pryamus knight of the round table, 180; 203, 204; 211; sees at Pentecost three riders coming, and tells king Arthur about it, 213; is angry at Kay, and protects Beaumayns, 214; asks him to come to his chamber; offers him gold, 215, 216, 217, 218; 232; 241; 251, 252; 254; 256; 258; 261, 262, 263; fights with his brother Gareth, 267, 268; 270; 287, 288; 315; takes away a sleeping knight's lady; fights with this knight; is smitten down, 336; meets Trystram; warns him to mistrust his damoyssel; goes with him to the castle of Morgan le fay, 378, 379; 410; 416; meets Trystram, 417; 421, 422; 425; 430; passes all his fellowship, 447, 448, 449; 452; is said to have slain Pellinore; is angry that Gaherys slew his mother, 453; is not trusted by Lamorak, 493; is said to have feloniously slain Lamorak, 504; 507; 513; 528, 529; 532, 533; 571; 586, 587; at Arthur's request he tries to pull the sword out of the stone, 615; 617; makes a vow to go in the quest of the Holy Grail, and induces the greater part of the knights to follow his example, 620, 621, 622; comes to the white abbey and asks for Galahad, 634; meets Gareth and Vwayne; goes to the Castel of Maidens; comes to an hermitage and asks for lodgings; tells the hermit his life; is blamed, 635; declares he cannot do penance, and leaves the hermit, 636; rides long without finding any adventures; meets Ector, 664; they ride together more than eight days; come to a chapel; they fall asleep, and have a strange dream, 665; they see a hand which holds a bridle

and a candle; a voice tells them that for want of faith they cannot come to the Holy Grail; they ask a squire for a hermit, 666; Gawayn meets a knight; is wounded, but smites him down; takes the knight to an abbey to die there; there this knight tells him that he is Vwayne, the son of king Vryence, 667; buries him; comes to Nacyen; tells him his adventures, and learns the signification of his dream and vision, 668, 669, 670, 671; is smitten down by Galahad, 689; is borne into a castle; a physician tells him it will take him a month to recover; he declares that his quest is done, 690; 714\*; returns to the court, 715\*; is said to like much fruit at dinner, 728, 729; 737; 741; 743; 745; rides to seek Launcelot; comes to Astolat; finds out that the knight with the red sleeve was Launcelot, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752; 754; smites down twenty knights, 757; 759; 766, 767, 768, 769; 791; dissuades his brothers from accusing Launcelot, 797, 798, 799, 800; tells king Arthur not to act overrashly; supports Launcelot, 808, 809; refuses to assist at Gueneuer's punishment, 810; 812; hears of Gareth's and Gaherys' death; will at first not believe it, 813; swears to revenge his brothers and to make war against Launcelot, 814; accuses Launcelot of murder and adultery, 815, 816, 817, 818; fights against Launcelot's knights, 819, 820; 823, 824; declares he will not be accorded with Launcelot, even if the king is inclined, 825, 826, 827; comes with Arthur into Launcelot's country, 830, 831; induces the king to refuse Launcelot's request for forgiveness, 832; comes before the gates of Benwyck and insults Launcelot, 833, 834; fights against Launcelot; his strength increases till the middle of the day; Launcelot is in great danger; finally Gawayn is overcome, 836; challenges Launcelot again; they fight again, 837; he is again defeated

- and sorely wounded, but yet he is not contented, and will fight for a third time as soon as he has recovered; has to return to England, 838; is found half dead in a boat; tells Arthur that the hour of his death has come; acknowledges that he was the cause of the last terrible war, 841; is set up; writes a letter to Launcelot; asks his pardon, and requests him to come to help Arthur, 842; receives his Saviour; dies; is buried in the chapel of Dover Castel, 843; his ghost appears to king Arthur and warns him not to fight the next day, 844, 845; 852; his tomb is visited by Launcelot, 853
- Gawdelyn**, syr, 588
- Gaynus**, nyghe cosyng to Lucius, 169
- Germanye**, 175; **germanie**, lat. gen. for *germaniae*, 2 (Caxton's Preface); comp. **Almayn**
- Geryne le grose**, or only **Geryn**, syr, 473; 488
- Gherard**, a knyght of walys, 180
- Gherard de breusse**, syr, 220; 233
- Glastyngburye**,<sup>1</sup> monasterye of, 2; (Caxton's Preface); 851; 856\*
- Glatysaunt beest**, also **glastyngye**.  
*See Questyngye beest*
- Godard**, town, garneson of, 178
- Godofray of boloyng**, 1 (Caxton's Preface)
- Godelake**, syr, 257
- Goneryes**, **Gonoreys**, **Gomoryes**, syr, 480; 482
- Goodewyn**, **Godewyn**, syr, a baroune, 587, 588
- Goothe**, castel of, 644
- Gorre**, **Gore**, land of, 139; 499; 716\*; quene of, 187
- Gouernayle**, seruaunt of syr **Trystram**, 276; 281, 282; 296, 297; 304; 309; 319; 326, 327, 328; 353; 364; 380; 384; 418; 420
- Gracian**, **Grastian**, **Grasian**, **Gracyens le casteleyn**, syr, 50, 51; 60; 63
- Grece**, 163; Greece
- Grene knyght**, the. *See Pertolepe*
- Gromere Gromorson**, **grummore gummursum**, syr, a knyght of Scotland, 256; 258
- Gromore somyr Ioure**, syr, 799; probably identical with syr **Gromere Gromorson**
- Gryflet**, **le fyse de dieu**, once mistakenly spelled **le fyse the dene**, sone of Cardol, 49, 50; 54, 55; 60; 68, 69, 70; 121, 122, 123, 124; 287; 431, 432, 433; 530; 636; 742, 743; 767; 792
- Gryngamore**, syr, brother of lady **Lyonesse**, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246; 248, 249, 250; 254, 255; 257, 258; 268, 269
- Gryp**, erle, 328
- Gueneuer**,<sup>2</sup> **Gweneuer**, daughter of kyng **Lodegreaun** of **Camylarde**, wyfe of kyng Arthur, 63; 100, 101; 104; 117; 121; 136; 164; 167; 182; 187; 201; 203; 207; 211; 258; 329; 339; 358; 389; 410, 411; 417; 422; 439; 455; 456; 482, 483; 485, 486; 489, 490, 491, 492; 557; 572; 580, 581, 582, 583-586; 606; 622, 623; 725, 726-731; 734; 739; 751; 757; 759; 761; 763; 772, 773, 774, 775; 777, 778; 780, 781; 786; 796, 797; 800; 816; 821; 828; 830; 851, 852, 853, 854; 857\*
- Gumret le petyte**, syr, 287
- Guy of Camylard**, syr, 471
- Guyart le petyte**, syr, 792
- Gwenbaus**, syr, brother of **Ban** and **Bors**, 50
- Gwymyart de bloy**, syr, 54
- Gwynas de bloy**, syr, 55, 56; 60; not improbably the same as syr **Gwymyart**

<sup>1</sup> Glastonbury is a town in Somersetshire, said to have been founded by Joseph of Arimathia. The ruins of the famous abbey are still to be seen. About the abbey of Glastonbury, and its signification for the introduction of Christianity into Britain, see W. W. Skeat, "Joseph of Arithmathie," an alliterative romance, A.D. 1350 (from the unique Vernon MS., Bodleian Library, Oxford), E.E.T.S. 1871, Introd. p. xxiii. ff.; also Paul's and Braune's "Beiträge," Halle a.S., vol. iii., p. 304, ff., F. Zarneke, "Zur Geschichte der Gralsage," and A. Nutt, "Studies on the Legend of the Holy Grail," ch. ix.

<sup>2</sup> "Hist. Brit.": Guanhumara.

- Gyan**, 829; Guienne, late province of France; syr Ector de marys was made by syr Launcelot kyng of Benwyk and kyng of alle Gyan
- Gyaunt of St. Mychaels Mount**, 167; killed by kyng Arthur
- Gylbert the bastard**, syr, 205; 207
- Gyllemere, Gylmere**, syr, 202, 203; 792
- Gyngalyn**, syr, 790; 799; son of syr Gawayn
- Hard roche**, castel of, 408
- Harlon**, kyng, 663
- Harre le fyse lake**, syr, 502; 792; 804
- Harsouse le berbuse**, syr, 476
- Haruys de le marches**, syr, 477
- Hebes le renoumes, Heles**,<sup>1</sup> syr, 287, 288, 289, 290; 791, 792; 804; 830
- Hector of Troye**, 1; 177; 827. *See also Ector*
- Hectymere**, syr, 792
- Helake**, syr, nephew of kyng Hermaunce, 523, 524
- Hellawes**, the sorceresse, 207
- Hellyas le grose**, syr, 660; one of the seven kings overcome by kyng Euelake
- Helyor le preuse**, syr, 559, 560
- Helyn, or Hellayne, le blanck**, 604; 792. *See Eliyan*, child of syr Bors
- Helyus, Helyas**, syr, nephew of kyng Hermaunce, 519; 523, 524
- Herawde**, lord, 171
- Herlews le berbeus**, syr, 90
- Hermaunce, Harmaunce**, kyng and lord of the reed cyte, 514; 518, 519, 520
- Hermel**, duke, 95
- Hermonyne**,<sup>2</sup> 163; ? Armenia, a province of the old Roman Empire
- Hermynde**, syr, brother of kyng Hermaunce, 521, 522
- Hernoxx, erle**, 701, 702
- Heruys de la forest saueage**, syr, 793
- Heruys de reuel**, syr, 86; 123
- Heruyn**, syr, 683
- Heryngdale**, lord, 171
- Hewe de la montayne**, syr, 383
- Hewgon, Heugon**, syr, 476
- Hooly Grayle**. *See Sancgreal*
- Hongre, Hongry**, country of, 788; Hungary
- Hontzlake of wentland**, syr, 114, 115
- Howel**, syr, kyng or duke of litle Bretayne, cosyn of kyng Arthur, 166, 167, 168; 328; 766
- Hue of the reed castel**, syr, 157, 158
- Humber**, ryver, 120, 121; 513; 517; 520; 525
- Huntresse**, a lady who wounded syr Launcelot with an arrow, 764; 770
- Hurlame**, kyng, 693
- Hyllary**, 164; St. Hilary, a festival, the 13th of January
- Hymeson**, syr, 407, 408, 409, 410
- Ider**, syr, sone of syr Vwayne, 162
- Idres**, kyng of Cornwayle, 52; 54; 56; 64
- Idrus**, syr, the good knyght, 170; most likely identical with syr Ider
- Igrayne**, wyfe of kyng Vtherpendragon, and mother of kyng Arthur, 35, 36, 37, 38; 45; 65, 66, 67, 68; 189
- Ireland, Ireland, Yreland**, 45; 81; 164; 175; 255; 283; 301; 499
- Ironsyde**, syr, the reed knyght of the reed laundes, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241; 245; 250, 251; 254; 259; 261, 262; 271; 728; 792
- Isoud, la beale**. *See La beale Isoud*
- Isoud la blaunche maynys**, daughter of kyng Howel of Brytayne, 327, 328; 330; 334; 345; 453; 411

<sup>1</sup> The form Heles occurs in the eighth book several times for Hebes. In the French "Tristan" the name is always spelled "Hebes." This is either a misprint in the Caxton, or a mistake on my part, as it is often very difficult to distinguish le and be, these being in Caxton's type double letters.

<sup>2</sup> The "Morte Arthure" (Thornton MS.) reads here "Ermonyne."

- Israhel**, chyldren of, 1 (Caxton's Preface)
- Iagent**, castel of, 426; near Camelot
- Ianeweyes** warryors, 163; ? Genoese soldiers
- Iherusalem**, 496; 625; 641
- Ihesu**, Ihesus. *See* **Cryst**, lord Ihesu
- Ionas**, a king overcome by kyng Euelake, 660
- Iordanus**,<sup>1</sup> Iordans, syr, knyght of the duke of Cornwall, 37, 38
- Ioseph of Armathyes**, **Armathe**, **Armathe**, once corrupted into **Abarimathe**, fyrst bysshop of Crystendom, 94; 573; 616; 625, 626, 627; 645; 660; 716\*; 718; 723
- Iosue**, duke, 177; 697
- Ioyous** gard, castel of, afterwards called **Dolorous** gard (somme men saye it was anwyk, & somme may saye it was bamborow), 288; 302; 499; 506, 507; 517; 525, 526, 527; 563, 564, 565; 568, 569, 570; 601; 611; 807; 811; 814; 821, 822; 828; 858\*, 859\*
- Ioyous yle**, 601; 604
- Iubaunce**, a gyaunt, 180
- Kay**, **Kaynus**, **Kaynes**, syr, son of syr Ector, seneschal of kyng Arthur, 41, 42, 43, 44; 46; 49; 54; 60; 166; 172; 200, 201; 203, 204; 212; 214; 217; 257; 339, 340; 359, 360; 377; 379; 387; 402-404; 417; 421; 426; 553; 614; 728; 742, 743; 761; 772; 790
- Kaynus le straunge**, **Kay de straunges**, syr, 553; 791
- Kehydius**, syr, son of kyng Howel, brother of Isoud la blanche maynys, 328; 330; 332; 334; 353; 356; 363, 364; 367; 567
- Kente**, 843; 845; county of Kent
- Kyng wyth the honderd knyghtes**. *See* **Berraunt le Apres**
- Kynkenadonne**, **Kynke kenadon**, castel of, 213; 269, 270
- La beale Aduenture**, abbay of. *See* **Abbay**
- La Beale (beale) Isoud**, **Isoulde**, daughter of the kyng Anguysshe of Ireland, wyfe of kyng Marke, and love of syr Trystram, 164; 285, 286, 287; 289; 291; 301; 308, 309, 310, 311; 316-321; 323; 325-329; 345; 353; 355; 365; 367, 370-372; 380; 401; 409; 423; 368; 425; 435; 455, 456; 464; 497-500; 507-509; 516, 517; 527; 531, 532; 535, 536; 538; 540, 541; 545, 546, 547; 549, 550, 551, 552, 553; 558, 559; 566-570; 606, 607; 610
- La beale regard**, a castel, 473, 474, 475, 476
- Labor**, kyng, 693
- La cote mayle tayle**. *See* **Breunor le noyre**
- Ladynas**, or **Ladynas de la rouse**, a knight of kyng Ban, 50; 60
- Ladynas of the forest saueage**, 772; 774
- Lake**, kyng of the, 123
- Lake**, lady of the, 73, 74; 79, 80. *See also* **Nymue**
- Lambayle**, erle of, 492; 790
- Lambegus**, syr, 318, 319; 321; 326; 792
- Lambehythe**, 777; **Lambeth**
- Lamerak**, **Lamorak de galys**, 72; 226; 232; 259; 261; 271; 322, 323-325; 330-338; 354-359; 363; 372; 390; 410; 425, 426, 427; 433; as knight with the red shield, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445-455; 486, 487, 488; 490; 493; 507; 512
- Lamyel of Cardyf**, syr, 793
- Landok**, duke of, 830; province of Languedoc, in the south of France; syr Palomydes is made a duke of L. by syr Launcelot
- Lardans**, syr, 55
- Launcelot de galys**, 258; brother of syr Percyuale
- Launcelot du lake**, syr, son of kyng Ban of Benwick and Elayne, originally called Galahad, 84; 99; Merlyn comes to king Ban, there

<sup>1</sup> Here Geoffrey's "Hist. Brit." has "Iordanus de Tintagol." The Huth "Merlin" reads "Jourdain."

he sees young Launcelot, who is first called Galahad; he prophesies that he will become a man of great worship, 119; 143; suddenly<sup>1</sup> introduced, 171, 172; excels all other knights; is a great favourite of Gueneuer; sets out with his nephew Lyonel to seek adventures; lies down to sleep under an apple-tree, 183, 184, 185; is found asleep by four queens; taken to Morgan le fay's castle; does not know how he came there; hears that he is a prisoner, 186; refuses Morgan le fay and her companions; on condition that he will help her father, king Bagdemagus, in a tourney, a damoyssel promises to deliver him, 187; escapes from the castle by the maiden's help; comes to a pavilion, and enters it to repose himself there; the owner of the pavilion finds him, 188; they fight together; Launcelot overcomes the knight; explains to him how he came thither; tells his name; asks the knight to come to Arthur's court, 189; comes to an abbey, where the damoyssel expects him; her father is sent for; is well received; he tells Bagdemagus to send him three knights with white shields, 190; comes to the tournament; throws down Mador de la porte and Mordred; fights against Gahalan-tyne, 191; overcomes him also; returns to Bagdemagus' castle; is much cheered; starts to seek Lyonel; is told by a damoyssel that there lives near at hand a strong knight, 192; he beats on a basin; rides along the gates of the manor of this knight, Turquyne; sees Gaherys tied to a horse, and meets Turquyne, 193; fights against him, 194; overcomes him; delivers Gaherys, 195\*; tells Gaherys to deliver the other knights out of prison, 196\*; fights and defeats Perys de foreyst saueage, 197; tells the damoyssel his ideas about love, and leaves her; smites a fellow down who tries to

prevent him from passing a bridge; comes to a castle, 198; kills three giants; delivers sixty ladies; the castle is called Tyntygayl; departs from there, 199; is lodged at the house of an old gentlewoman; sees Kay in great distress; jumps out of the window; fights and throws down his persecutors, and compels them to yield themselves to Kay, 200; returns to his lodging; the next morning he takes Kay's armour and shield, and rides forth before Kay awakes, 201; is mistaken for Kay; overcomes three brothers, Gaunter, Raynold, and Gylmere, and bids them go to queen Gueneuer and render themselves to her grace; meets Sagramor, Ector, Gawayn, and Vwayn; is attacked by them, 203; throws them all four out of their saddles, and disappears; comes into a forest; sees a brachet, 204; follows the brachet to a wounded knight; is told that this knight is Gylbert the Bastard, and that he can only be healed by a piece of cloth and a sword which must be fetched out of the Chappel Peryllous, 205; engages himself to go to the Chappel Peryllous; arrives there; enters it in despite of many knights, 206; takes the cloth and sword; comes out; refuses Hellawes the sorceress; heals Gylbert, 207; catches a falcon which has escaped to a tree; is treacherously attacked by its owner, 208; gets with great efforts out of this difficulty, 209; meets a knight and a lady; the knight kills the lady; Launcelot sends him to Gueneuer, who shall punish him for his bad behaviour; comes in Kay's armour to the court, 211; all his valiant deeds are told to Arthur, 212; 214, 215, 216; fights with Gareth, 217; makes him knight, 218; 226; 232, 233; 241; 251; 254, 255, 256; 260, 261, 262; 270; 272; 300; 303\*; 305\*, 306\*, 307, 308; 315, 316; 322, 323, 324; blames

<sup>1</sup> Launcelot is here very abruptly introduced; how he came to Arthur's court and how he was made knight, as well as the early part of his life, are entirely omitted.

Trystram for being faithless to Isoud, 329; 333; 336; follows Breunor le noyre, 345; gets a letter from Trystram; answers it; throws down Nerouens de lyle, 346; comes to the castle of Pendragon, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353; 357, 358, 359; 361; 376, 377; 381; 383, 384; 387; does wonderful feats of arms; the prize is given to him, but he renounces it in favour of Trystram, 394, 395; 397, 398; 400; 404, 405; 408; 411; meets with Trystram; they do not recognise each other; Merlin's prophecy is realised; they fight together a terrible combat near the tomb of Launceor and Columbe; neither of them overcomes the other, 420; tells Arthur about his meeting, 421, 422; 431, 432, 433; follows king Mark and brings him back to Arthur, 437, 438, 439; 441; 445, 446; 448; 453; cautions Trystram to beware of king Mark, 454, 455; reads the letter which Mark sent to Gueneuer, blaming her for her relation to Launcelot, 457; 463; 470; 476; 479; 482, 483, 484, 485, 486; 489, 490, 491, 492; gets the prize in a tournament, 493, 494; receives a ring from la Beale Isoud, to tell him that Trystram is at the tournament, 498; gives Trystram and Isoud his castle Ioyous gard, 499; 506; 509; 513; 533; smites Trystram down, 534; recognises Trystram, and is sorry, 535, 536; his horse is smitten down by Palomydes; pardons him, 537, 538, 539, 540; throws down Palomydes, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545; 547, 548, 549, 550; comes with Arthur to Trystram and Isoud, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555; 557; 561; 563; delivers Palomydes, 564, 565; 570; comes to the bridge of Corbyn; is received with cries: "Welcome, Launcelot, flower of all knighthood," 571; delivers a lady from great pains; fights with a dragon at a tomb, 572; has a sight of the Holy Grail, 573; begets Galahad on Elayne, daughter of

Pelles, 574; will kill Elayne, but afterwards pardons her, 575, 576, 577; is told that, though he is the strongest knight in earthly things, he is not so in heavenly ones, 579, 580, 581; sleeps again with Elayne, 582; leaps out of a window; becomes mad and runs into a wild forest, 583, 584, 585, 586; 588; 591, 592; wanders about; lives on water and fruit for two years; comes to a tree on which hangs a white shield and two swords; he takes one of them, and beats with it on the shield; a knight clad all in scarlet appears, 593; Launcelot is taken to Selyuaunt's castle, 594; one day he breaks his fetters, and delivers Blyuaunt, Selyuaunt's brother, 595; sees a great boar; follows it and kills it, but is seriously wounded, 596; taken to an hermitage; runs away, and comes to Corbyn, 597; is found and recognised sleeping in a garden by Elayne, 598; is brought into a tower and healed from his madness by the Holy Grail; is told how he came into the country; requests them not to tell anybody who he is, 599; calls himself le chevaler malfet, 600; lives with Elayne in the castel Blyuaunt, which he calls Ioyous yle; has the better of five hundred knights, 601; fights with Percyual, 602; tells him who he is, 603, 604; resolves to return to Arthur's court; does so, and is well received, 605, 606; 611; is fetched away from the table round to go to an abbey, 612; finds his son Galahad, and makes him knight; returns to the court, 613\*, 614\*; 617; hears from a lady that, since Galahad's arrival, he is no longer the best knight of the world, 618, 619; 621, 622, 623\*; fights with his son Galahad, and is smitten down, 636; comes to a chapel, wishes to enter, but finds no door; lays down to sleep near a cross, 637; sees how a knight is healed by the Holy Grail; his helm and sword are taken away, 638; hears a voice, which tells him to go away



from this holy place; finds out that his sins prevented him from touching the Holy Grail; goes to a hermit, 639; the hermit tells him that his life had displeased God; he must never have the queen's company; he promises it, 640; is told about the signification of the words that the heavenly voice said to him, 641; repents his sins, 642; gets a new horse, helm, and sword; rides forth from the hermit; comes to a chapel, where he finds a dead old man, 656, 657; is told to put the hair of the dead man next to his skin, and not to eat any meat as long as he is in the quest of the Holy Grail; sleeps the night at a cross; has a vision, 658; smites a knight down; comes to a hermit and asks him about his vision, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666; 669, 670, 671; 679; 707; meets his son Galahad; passes half a year with him on a ship, 708, 709, 710; 712, 713\*, 714\*; 724; loves Gueneuer still; all his thoughts are with her, 725; tells her he must hold afar from her, 726; is banished from the court by her, 727, 728; 730, 731, 732; fights for the queen against Mador de la porte, 734, 735; overcomes him, and is again graciously received by the queen, 736, 737, 738, 739; comes to Bernard of Astolat; the fair maiden of Astolat, Elayn le blank, falls in love with him, 740; asks him to bear a red sleeve of hers at the tournament, 741; departs secretly with Lauayne, 742; fights bravely in the tournament; nobody knows him, but some suspect him, 743; smites down thirty knights; the prize is given to him; is seriously wounded, 744, 745; is taken to Baudewyn of Bretayn, a noble surgeon, 746; is recognised by him, 747; 751; Elayne of Astolat comes to him and nurses him, 752; Bors finds him, and tells him about the queen's displeasure, because he bore the red sleeve, 753, 754; tries to mount his horse and

to handle his arms; his wounds burst out again, 755; sends Bors to a tournament, 756; refuses to wed Elayne of Astolat, 758; rides away with Lauayne, 759, 760, 761; buries the maiden of Astolat; is pardoned by the queen, 762; promises to wear a sleeve of gold for the queen, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769; is hurt by a bow-shot in the thigh, 770; 773; 775, 776; comes to deliver the queen out of Mellyagraunce's castle; rides on a cart; is called le chevalier du chariot, 777, 778, 779; goes in the night to the queen's chamber, 780, 781, 782; agrees with Mellyagraunce to fight for the queen in fifteen days, 783; is taken in a trap and thrown into a deep cave, 784; is delivered by a damoyssel; rides forth to Westminster, 785; comes to the place where the fight is to take place, 786; fights against Mellyagraunce, 787; kills him, 788; 791; 793, 794; handles Vrre's wounds and heals him, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799; goes to the queen, 800; speaks to her in her chamber, while Mordred and other knights of Gawayn's kin are before the door, 801; opens the door; takes Colgreuance's armour; kills some knights; forces the others to flight; returns to Bors, 802, 803; calls his knights together and tells them what has happened, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809; delivers Gueneuer in the moment when she shall suffer death by fire; kills many knights, among them Gareth and Gaherys, 810, 811, 812, 813; withdraws with Gueneuer to Ioyous gard and is besieged by Arthur and Gawayn; is insulted by Gawayn, 815; justifies himself, and requests Arthur to pardon him, 816, 817, 818; fights against Arthur's host; orders his knights to spare Arthur, 819, 820; the pope sends to him, to order him to send back Gueneuer, 821; takes Gueneuer back to Arthur, 822; asks Arthur again to pardon him, 823, 824; makes

- great offers, 825, 826; takes leave of Gueneuer, 827, 828; returns to his own country with his faithful knights and rewards them with his lands, 829, 830; is besieged in his city of Benwyck by Arthur and Gawayn, 831; sends a lady and a dwarf to king Arthur to request him to make peace, 832; Gawayn comes before the gates of Benwyck and uses bad language against him, 833; tries to reconcile him in vain, 834; fights with Gawayn, and after a hard battle overcomes him, 835, 836; fights again with Gawayn and defeats him, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841; 844; receives Gawayn's letter; returns to England; finds that he comes too late, 852; goes to Gawayn's tomb; goes to seek Gueneuer, 853; finds her in a convent; his offers are refused, 854; becomes a monk, 855\*; has a vision, 856\*; buries Gueneuer, 857\*; becomes weaker from day to day, 858\*; dies, and is buried with great honours in Ioyous gard, 859\*, 860\*
- Launceor, Launcyor**, syr, son of the kyng of Ireland, 80, 81, 82; 419
- Laundes**, erle of the, 830; this dignity is conferred on syr Bellangere le bewse by syr Launcelot
- Laundes**, lady of the, 286
- Laurel**, dame, 270; niece of lady Lyonesse; becomes wife of syr Agrauayne
- Lauayne**, syr, son of syr Bernard of Astolat, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747; 750, 751, 752, 753; 755; 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770; 780, 781, 782; 786; 795; 801; 804; 820
- Le cheualer du charyot**. *See* **Launcelot du lake**
- Le cheualer malfet**. *See* **Launcelot du lake**
- Leomye**, syr, 172
- Listinoyse**, country of, 499
- Lodegreauce, Lodegryaunce, Lodegreans, Lodegrean, Lodegreans**, kynge of camylyard, father of quene Gueneuer, 63, 64; 100, 101
- Logrys**, realme of, 332; 367; 400; 404; 411; 419; 498; 520; 599; 601; 606; 691; 693; 714; 719; 724
- Lombardy**, country of, 178; lordes of, 180
- Lonazep, Lonezep**, castel of, 509; 512; 524, 525; 527; 529; 533; 559; 562, 563; 594
- London**, cyte of, 40; 44; 47; 76; 728; 839; toure of, 840; 842
- Longeus**, syr, 94
- Longtaynse**, kynge of the yle of, 120
- Lorayne**, duchye of, 102; duke of, 175; 178
- Lorayne le saueage**, syr, 117
- Lott**,<sup>1</sup> kynge of Lowthean and of Orkeney, father of Gawayn, etc., 37; 46; 52; 54; 56; 59; 86, 87; 104; 108; 148
- Louel**, syr, son of syr Gawayn, 790; 809
- Lucas the bottlere, Lucan the bottler, Lucanere the butteler**, son of the duke of Corneus, 49, 50; 54, 55; 60; 398; 543; 743; 767; 792; 832; 845, 846, 847, 848; 850
- Lucyus**,<sup>2</sup> the emperour of Rome, 160; 163, 164; 169; 172, 173, 174
- Lyanowre**, duke, 633
- Lylle**, lady of auelyon, 76; 81
- Lyllye**, kynge of, 171
- Lymosyn**, in gyan, 830; Limosin or Limousin, as well as Guienne, are two ancient provinces of France
- Lynet, the damoyssel saueage**, systor of lady Lyonesse, 216, 217, 218, 219-242, 243; 246, 247, 248, 249; 267, 268; 270; 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347-353
- Lyonas**, country of, 273, 274; 280
- Lyonesse, Lyones**, lady, becomes wife of Gareth of Orkenay, 232;

<sup>1</sup> "Hist. Brit.": has "Lot de Loudonesia" (Lot of Lothian). Huth "Merlin" reads "Loth d'Orcanie."

<sup>2</sup> "Hist. Brit.": "Lucius Tiberius." "Morte Arthure" (Thornton MS.) reads either "Lucius" or "Lucius Iberius."

- 234; 237; 239; 242; 244, 245;  
246-249; 254, 255; 257; 263;  
268, 269, 270
- Lyonel, Lionel, syr,** 169, 170; 183,  
184, 185; 190; 192; 196; 397;  
585; 604; 612, 613; 676, 677;  
678, 679; 682-686; 743, 744;  
818; becomes king of France, 829;  
855\*
- Lyonors, erlys daughter,** 62
- Lyonnes, lord of the country of  
payarne,** 48; 56; 60
- Lysays, one of the seven kings over-  
come by kyng Euelake,** 660
- Lystynoyse, country of,** 499; kyng  
of, 529; 538
- Lytyl Bretayne, royame of,** 164
- Machabeus, Iudas, I** (Caxton's  
Preface); 177
- Macydone, 163; Macedonia**
- Madok de la montayne, syr,** 383
- Mador de la porte, syr,** 191; 212;  
728, 729, 730; 734, 735, 736, 737,  
738; 799
- Magouns,<sup>1</sup> castel of, called, according  
to Malory, Arundel in southsex,  
467; traitours of, 494, 495**
- Maledysaunt, damoysel, afterwards  
called bien pensaunt, or beau  
viuante, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344,  
345; 349; 353**
- Malegryne, Malgryne, syr,** 256;  
258; 470, 471, 472
- Malorye, Maleore, Thomas, syr,  
3; 861\*** (Caxton's Preface and  
Colophon)
- Manassen, Manessen, cosyn of syr  
Accolon of gaule, 138, 139**
- Manuel, kyng or duke of walys, 660;  
his daughter is mentioned in con-  
nection with Ionas**
- Margawse, Morgause, quene, wyfe  
of kyng Lot of Orkeney, and mother  
of syr Gawayn, 38; 64; 88; 233;  
252, 253, 254; 268, 269; 357**
- Marhalt, kyng, father of syr Mar-  
haus, the good knyghte, 529**
- Marhaus, syr, brother of the quene  
of Ireland, knyght of the table  
round, the good knyghte, 141, 142,  
143, 144, 145; 153, 154, 155-159;  
172; 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283,  
284, 285; 291; 422, 423**
- Mariet de la roche, syr, 60**
- Mark, Marke, kyng of Cornewaile,  
uncle of syr Trystram, husband of  
la beale Isoud, 83; 273; 278; 280,  
281; 291-296; 301; 317; 321,  
322-325; 363; 367, 368; 400, 401-  
406; 423-430, 431, 432, 433-437;  
445; 449, 450; called kyng Fox,  
455, 456, 457; 460, 461-469; 478;  
493, 494, 495, 496-498**
- Marrok, syr, 172; 793**
- Marsyl, kyng of the yland of Pomy-  
tayn, 483; 485**
- Mary, Marye, saynte, vyrgyne,  
677; 697; 703**
- Masauke, erle of, 830; syr Launce-  
lot conferred this dignity on syr  
Selyses**
- Matto le breune, syr, 368**
- Maurel, syr, 172**
- Maydens, castel of, 377; 380; 384;  
388; 408; 423; 512; 632; 634**
- Melane, 181; Milan**
- Meliодas quene, second wyfe of  
kyng Meliодas, daughter of kyng  
Howles of Bretayne, stepmother of  
syr Trystram, 275, 276**
- Mellegaunt, Malegeaunt, Melya-  
gaunt, Melyagaunce, Melyaga-  
nus, Mellyagraunce, syr, son of  
Bagdemagus, 257; 356, 357, 358,  
359; 479, 480; 482, 483; 773, 774,**

<sup>1</sup> Comp. my note to "Arundel," p. ix.—Through the kindness of Lady Milbanke, of Earham, Chichester, I was enabled, while staying under her hospitable roof, to visit Arundel Castle, the seat of the Duke of Norfolk (February 14, 1890), and to inquire on the spot about the possible identity of "Arundel" and "Magouns"; there is, however, nothing whatever known on this subject at the castle. Arundel is probably mentioned for the first time in the will of Alfred the Great. Some indisputably certain references to "Arundel" are to be found in the Chronicles of Robert of Gloucester, Peter Langtoft, and Robert Manning of Brunne (see the editions of Hearne, Oxford, 1724 and 1725, printed again 1810), on the occasion of the arrival of the Empress Maud in England and her reception at Arundel Castle. (For further particulars see James Dallaway, "A History of the Western Division of the County of Sussex, etc., London, 1819, 4to, vol. ii. pp. 83 and 95 ff.)

- 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787
- Melot de la roche**, syr, 54
- Melyas, Melleaus de lyle**, syr, 628, 629, 630; 634, 792
- Melyodas**, kyng of Lyonas, father of syr Trystram, 273, 274, 275, 276; 292, 293
- Melyon de Tartare**, syr, 586
- Melyon of the montayne**, syr, 791; 799
- Melyot de logurs, logrys**, syr, 115; 206, 207; 212; 257; 742, 743; 779; 799
- Melyot**, castle of, 89
- Menadeuke**, syr, 791; 830
- Merlyn, Merlyon**, meets in a beggar's array Vlfius; tells him that, if Vther will reward him, he shall have his wish realised; comes to Vther, 36; declares the child must be delivered to him immediately after its birth; comes to the king again to lead him away from Tyntigayl, 37, 38; carries the infant Arthur to Ector; asks Vther before all the barons who shall be king after him, 39; advises the archbishop of Canterbury to call the lords together, 40; justifies Arthur, and tells how and by whom he was begotten; comes to Arthur, 45, 46, 47, 48; passes the sea; returns to Arthur, 51, 52, 53; 61; goes to his master Bleyse to make him write about Arthur's battles; comes to Arthur as a beggar, 62, 63; comes as a child, and afterwards as an old man, to the king, and tells him that Igrayne is his mother, 66; shows himself in his ordinary shape; tells Arthur that he has committed a great sin, and slept with his sister, and that God is angry with him, 67; gives witness as to Arthur's birth, 68; is saved from three ruffians by Arthur; tells Arthur again he must die, 70; 72; shows Arthur the sword in the lake, 73; tells the king that the sheath is worth ten swords, 74; is more blamed for the murder of the children than Arthur, 75; tells the king that the damoysel who brought the sword was the falsest lady of all, 80, 81; buries Launcelot and his lady; prophesies that in this very place shall be done a battle between Launcelot and Trystram; and tells Balyn, that for the death of the lady he must do the dolorous stroke, 84; comes disguised to Balan and Balyn, and shows them how to overcome king Ryons, 85, 86; makes king Lot's tombstone, and tells them the tapers will not burn after his death, 88; predicts the great battle between Arthur and Mordred near Salisbury, and other things, 89; tells Balyn that they will not meet again in this world, 94; buries Balyn and Balan, and makes a golden inscription on their tomb, 98; makes a bed in which nobody should ever lie in without becoming mad; tells Arthur about the dolorous stroke, 99; tries to dissuade Arthur from wedding Gueneuer, but afterwards yields and sends for her, 100; finds out the best knights for the round table, 101; tells Arthur why there are two places void at the round table, 103; 113; becomes enamoured of a damoysel that Pellinore brought to the court, and follows her everywhere; tells the king that he shall soon be gone, and how he will miss him, 118; warns him further to keep well his sword and the sheath; teaches the damoysel many of his crafts; goes to Benwyck, where he sees young Launcelot; prophesies of his great glory, and tells that his first name was Galahad; then he goes away with the lady; shows her a great rock; he goes under it, and the lady causes by her crafts that he can never come out of it, 119, 120; delivers king Melyodas out of prison (!), 274; 419; 523; is said to have made the round table in token of the roundness of the world, 643
- Meur of Blood**, sheath of syr Galahad's sword, 700
- Mondrames**, syr, 626
- Monkes**, abbay of, 140
- Mordrayns**, kyng, 695; 715\*
- Mordred**, syr, son of kyng Arthur

- from his own sister, kyng Lot's wife, is begotten, 65; escapes with his life; is found by a good man, and nourished till he is fourteen years old; then he is brought to the court, 75; 87; shall be one day against his own father, 89; 190; is thrown down by Launcelot, 191; rides with la cote male tayle; is thrown down by a knight of the castel Orgulous, 342, 343; blames the damoyssel Maledysaunt for rebuking la cote male tayle, 344; seeing Launcelot, he leaves their company, 345; gives his shield and armour to Dagonet, 432, 433; is smitten down by Breuse saunde pyte, 454, 455; tries to lead Alysaunder's horse away, 477; 487; 512; gives Sir Lamorak a mortal wound, 513; 532; 590, 591; tries to find fault with Launcelot, 726; 742, 743; does not join the knights to receive sir Launcelot on his return, 759; 766; is thrown down by Launcelot, 768; 791; declares he will accuse queen Gueneuer, 797; tells king Arthur, 798, 799; goes with twelve knights to capture Launcelot, 800; calls him a traitour, 801; is grievously wounded, but escapes, 803; comes to Arthur to tell him about Launcelot's deed, 807, 808; is made chief ruler of England during Arthur's absence, 830; forges letters stating that Arthur is killed in a battle; assembles the parliament, and is crowned king of England; asks Gueneuer's hand; besieges Gueneuer in the Tower of London; defies the Archbishop of Canterbury, 839; hears of his father's return; excites the barons to make war against Arthur; finds many followers, 840; fights against Arthur at Dover, 841, 842; gathers his knights at Baramdown to fight another battle, 844; agrees to make peace on condition of receiving Cornwall and Kent, 845; fights at the risk of his life; all his knights are killed; is wounded to death; dying, he kills his father with his sword, 847; 850, 851, 852, 853
- Morgan le fay**, Arthur's sister, wife of king Vryence, of the land of Gore, 38; 67; 88, 89; 123; 126, 127, 128, 129; 132; 139; 186, 187; 324, 325; 332; 373; 378, 379; 407-412; 440; 457; 470, 471; 473, 474; 572
- Morganore**, **Morganor**, sencial of the kynge of the honderd knyghtes, 55; 58; 302; 792; once mistakenly called kyng M.
- Morgause**, Arthur's sister. See **Margawse**
- Morris**, forest of, 402
- Mortayse**, **Mortoyse**, water of, 652; 707; 727
- Moryans**, of the castel of maydens, syr, 60
- Morys de la roche**, syr, 54
- Morys**, syr, 172
- Moyses land**,<sup>1</sup> marquys of, 180
- Mychels**, St., 169; mounte of, 167
- Myles of the laundes**, syr, 117
- Mylis**, syr, 68
- Nabon le Noyre**, syr, 330; 332, 333
- Nacyen the heremyte**, 618; 621; 627; 660; 668, 669; 694, 695
- Nanowne le petite**, syr, 330
- Nappus**, a holy man, 660
- Naram**, syr, 75
- Nauntys**, cyte of, in Brytayne, 64
- Nentres**,<sup>2</sup> **Nauntres**, kyng of the land of garlot, or garlott, or garloth, 38; 52; 54; 56; 60; 64; 790
- Nero**, syr, brother of kyng Ryons, 64; 86, 87, 88
- Nerouens**, **Neroneus**, **Neroueus**, syr, 346; 348; 792; 804; 830
- Normandy**, duke of, 830; this dignity is conferred on syr Clarrus by syr Launcelot
- Northfolk**, 843; Norfolk
- Northgalys**, **Northwalys**, kyng of, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192; 212; 377; 383; 385, 386; 391; 534, 535; 545; 738, 739; 742; 745; 755, 756, 757; quene of, 187

<sup>1</sup> The Morte Arthure (Thornton MS.) reads here "the maches of Mees" (Metz).

<sup>2</sup> In the ordinary "Merlin" he is called "kyng Nanters of Gerlot."

- Northumberland, country of, 62; 77; 80; kyng of, 538; 738; 742; 745; 768
- Nygramous, castel, 207
- Nymue, Nyneue, the lady of the lake, 115; 118, 119; 131; 139; 151, 152, 153; 159; 361, 362; 737; 793; 851
- Ontzlake, syr, 126, 127; 129; 137, 138
- Orgulous, castle, 342, 343
- Orkeney, quene of. *See* Margawse
- Ossaise, Ossayse, of Surluse, syr, 490; 492
- Ouerne, 830; Auvergne, a late province of France; syr Galalantyne is made a duke of Ouerne by syr Launcelot
- Oute yles, quene of, 187
- Ozanna le cure hardy, syr, 156, 430; 433; 742, 743; 791, 792
- Paas peryllous, 226
- Palamydes, Palomydes, syr, the sarasyn, the good knyghte, 342; 344, 345, 346, 347; 357; 365, 366, 367; 372; 375, 376; 381, 382; 386; 390, 391; 393; 395, 396; 399; 400; 405; 413, 414, 415, 416; 419-421; 435; 438, 439-445; 447; 455; 481, 482; 484; 486; 489; 493; 500-504; 510; 512-515; 517, 518; 520-537; 541-546-570; 606-611; 728; 742; 757; 766-769; 804; 818, 819, 820; 828; 830
- Pampoylle, 163; ? Pamphylia, a province of Asia Minor
- Pardyak (?), erle of, 830; syr Neroneus is made erle of P. by syr Launcelot
- Parys, cyte of, 171, 172; 178
- Pase, erle of, 474, 475
- Passe Brewel, 380; name of syr Trystram's horse
- Patryce, Patryse, syr, a knyght of Ireland, 728, 729; 734; 736, 737, 738
- Paue, land of, 181; ? Pavia, town and province of Northern Italy
- Payarne, country of, 48
- Pedyuere of the strayte marches, syr, 210, 211; 578
- Pellam, kyng of Lystyneuse, 91, 92, 93; 99
- Pellandrys, syr, 351
- Pelleas, Pellias, syr, a knyght, admirer of lady Ettard; afterwards becomes husband of the lady of the lake, 143; 147, 148, 149; 151; 159; 202; 737; 768; 772; 775, 776
- Pelles, kyng, father of Elayne, mother of syr Galahad, 572; 574, 575, 576, 577; 580; 597, 598, 599, 600; 612; 616; 618; 660; 663; 695; 714\*; 717; 718
- Pellinore, Pellinre, kyng, syr, the knyghte with the straunge beeste, 37; 66; 72, 73, 74; 103; 377; 449
- Pellogris, syr, 351
- Pellounes, Pillounes, Pellownus, syr, 351; 380, 381
- Pelownes, castel of, 563
- Pendragon, castel of, 346; 348; 352
- Pentecoste, penthecost, 43, 44; 158, 159; 208; 213; 606; 612; 620; 763; Whitsuntide
- Perard, syr, the black knyghte, 221, 222; 231
- Percyual, Persyual of walys, syr, 72; 232; 256; comes to Arthur's court; is made knight, 451; a damoyssel, that has hitherto been dumb, suddenly speaks, leads Percyual to the seat on the right hand of the Siege peryllous, and dies soon after, 452; Percyual seeks Trystram, 496; delivers him out of prison, 497; 502, 503, 504; sets out to find Launcelot, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590; fights with Ector, 591; both are wounded to death but healed by the Holy Grail, 592, 593; 601; finds Launcelot and Galahad, but he does not recognise the latter, 602, 603, 604; 619; 636, 637; comes to a recluse who is his aunt, 642; is told of his mother's death and that a red knight who has not his equal has been with him, 643; comes to a castle and prays there, 644; is told about the Holy Grail, 645, 646, 647; is tempted, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655; 687; meets Bors, 688; finds Galahad, 691; enters a ship with Bors and Galahad, 692; 694; 702; 704, 705, 706, 707; 715\*; 717; 720,

- 721, 722, 723; dies, after having passed one year in serving God at an hermitage, 724
- Percydes, Persydes**, a knyght, 381, 382; 385; 390; 395; 589, 590
- Percyuale's syster**, 91; 699; 702; 704, 705, 706; 708; 722
- Perrymones, syr, the reed knyghte**, 226, 227; 250; 259; 270; 793
- Persant, Persaunt of inde, syr, the blewe knyghte**, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234; 250, 251; 255; 257; 261; 270, 271; 728; 772; 774; 776; 793
- Pertelope, Pertolype, Pertilype, syr, the grene knyghte**, 223, 224, 225; 231; 250; 252; 259; 270; 793
- Perygot**, a kind of falcon, 208
- Perygot, erle of**, 830; this dignity is conferred on syr Galyhad by syr Launcelot
- Peryn de moutebeliard, syr, 90**
- Perys de foreyst saueage, syr, 197**
- Pescheours, Peschere, kyng, lord**, 616; 638
- Petersaynt**,<sup>1</sup> land of, 181
- Petypase of wynkelsee, wynchelsee**, 257; 791; 799
- Petyte Bretayne. See Lytle Bretayne**
- Pharyaunce, syr, 48; 56, 57; 60**
- Phelot, syr, a knyght of the kyng of Northgalys**, 208, 209
- Placidas, syr, 51**
- Playne de amours, syr, 349**
- Playne de force, syr, 349**
- Playns, erle of, 683**
- Plenorius, syr, 350, 351, 352, 353; 782; 804; 830**
- Plesaunce, land of, 181; Placenza, in Italy**
- Pluere, castel, 310; 372**
- Polycronycon**,<sup>2</sup> 2 (Caxton's Preface)
- Pomytayn, Pometayne, yland of, 483**
- Pope of Rome, apostle pope, 496, 497**
- Portyngale, 163; Portugal**
- Pounce, 163; ? Pontus**
- Powlis**,<sup>3</sup> church of, 40; St. Paul's Cathedral
- Principum, de casu, 2** (Caxton's Preface); a book by Boccaccio. *See Bochas*
- Prouynce, 830; Provence, a former province of France; Sir Palomydes is made a duke of P. by syr Launcelot**
- Pryamus, syr, 177, 178, 179, 180; 182**
- Prydam le noyre, syr, 673, 674**
- Pynel, a good man, 54**
- Pynel, Pyonel, syr, 728; 737**
- Quene of the waste landes, 642, 643; a recluse, aunt of syr Percyual**
- Questyngge beest, beste Glatysaunt, glastyngge beest**, "that hadde in shap a hede like a serpente's hede, and a body like a lybard, buttocks lyke a lyon, and foted lyke an herte, and in his body was suche a noyse as it had been the noyse of thyrtly coupel of houndes questyng," 65, 66; 355, 356; 434; 445; 480; 500, 501; 520; 523; 611
- Raynes, town in Brytayne, 857\***
- Raynold, Reynold, syr, 202, 203; 792**
- Reed Castle, 156, 157; Powis Castle**
- Reed Cyte, 518, 519, 520; 522, 523**
- Reed knyght, the. See Ferrymones**
- Roche deure, 410**
- Roche, lady of the, 157**
- Roche peryllous, 695**
- Rochestre, bishop of, 821**
- Roerge, erle of, 830; Rouergue, a former province of France, forming now the department of Aveyron; Syr Menadeuke was made erle of Roerge by syr Launcelot**
- Romaunce, the frensshe, 182. See Book**

<sup>1</sup> The "Morte Arthure" (Thornton MS.) reads for this form, line 351, "Petyrsande."

<sup>2</sup> Ranulphus Higden's "Polychronicon," printed by William Caxton, 1482, fol., black letter. I have seen the copy in the British Museum.

<sup>3</sup> Of course, St. Paul's Cathedral did not exist in the days of king Arthur, and therefore "some men" were wrong.



- Romayns**, 161; 163; 170, 171, 172; 178
- Rome**, cyte of, 273; pope of, 211; publyke wele of, 160; the empyre of, 163
- Rouse, de la Rowse**, duke, 264; 266; 271
- Rule**, lady of the, 117
- Ryons**, kyng of Northwayls, once; of all Ireland, and many yles, 62; 64; 74, 75; 83; 85, 86
- Sadok, Saduk**, syr, 256; 259; 467; 469, 470; 494, 495; 498; 532; 543; 792; 830
- Safere, Safyr**, syr, 232; 258; 439; 445; 470; 485, 486, 487; 558; 561, 562; 608; 742; 804; 818, 819; 828
- Sagramour le desyrus**, syr, 156; 203; 211; 256; 259; 287; 297, 298, 299; 377; 379; 390; 418, 419; 475; 528; 586; 772; 774; 791
- Salamon**, king of Iherusalem, 696, 697, 698, 699
- Salysbury**, 89; 727; 843; Salis-bury, a town in Wiltshire
- Sanam**, erle, 62
- Sangreal, Sangraille, Sangrayll, Sangraylle, sank greal, hooly Grayle**,<sup>1</sup> 88; 91; 94; 99, 100; 124; 159; 455; 571; 592; 599; 602; 606; 615; 617, 618; 620, 621; 631; 635; 638; 641; 643; 645; 650; 657, 658, 659; 663; 665, 666, 667; 669, 670, 671, 672; 674; 682; 703; 711; 713\*, 714\*; 717; 721, 722; 724, 725, 726; 854; 861\*
- Sandwyche**, 162; 164; 182; 825; Sandwich, in Kent
- Sarasyns**, 61; 64; 163; 171; 188; 465
- Sarras**, cyte of, 625; 645; 706; 719; 721
- Sauseyse**, syr, 480
- Saynt Mychels mount**, 167
- Saynte Mary**. *See Mary*
- Saynte steuyns**, chirche of, in Camelot, 88; 104
- Scotland**, 45; 75; 159; 255; 273; 286; 499; 586; 859\*
- Scottes, or Scotland**, kyng of, 410, 411; 420; 531, 532; 554; 557; 738; 741, 742; 744; 757; 765, 766
- Sege, syege, peryllous**, 571; 577; 614, 615, 616, 617; 660
- Segwarydes**, syr, 256; 258; 294, 295; 300, 301; 330, 331, 332; 334; 439; 517; 561; "his wyfe," 293, 294; 296; 298; 300
- Selyses of the dolorous toure**, syr, 793; 804; 830
- Selyses**, syr, nephew of the kyng of the honderd knyghtes, 530
- Selyuaunt**, syr, 594, 595, 596; 604
- Semound the vylaunt**, syr, 482
- Sentonge**, duke of, 830; Saintonge a former province of France; syr Galyhadyn is made a duke of S. by syr Launcelot
- Sentraille de lushon**, syr, 326
- Sentrayle**, syr, 792
- Seruage, yle of**, 330; 334, 335
- Seruause le breuse**, syr, 791
- Sessoynne**, 172, 173; 458, 459; 463, 464 ? Soissons
- Sherewood, forest of**, 62
- Soleyse, kyng of**, 120
- Sorhaute**, cyte of, 64
- Southfolke**, 843; Suffolk
- Southland**, sarasyns of, 178
- South marchys, the, duke of**, 154, 155
- Southsex**, 843; Sussex
- Spayne**, country of, 788
- Spolute**, 181; Spoleto, town and duchy of Italy in the Ecclesiastical States
- Stroke, the dolorous**, 88; 99; given by syr Balan the worshipful knyghte to kyng Pelles
- Suppynabyllis, Suppynabyles**, syr, 329; 792
- Surlat**, erldom of, 830; (?); conferred on syr Sadok by syr Launcelot
- Surlouse**, forest of, 106; very likely Sorlouse and Surluse are identical
- Surluse, Surlouse**, country of, 349; 405; 478; 488; 499; 512
- Surrey**, 843; county of Surrey

<sup>1</sup> For an exhaustive account of the literature of "The Holy Grail," see Alfred Nutt's "Studies on the Legend of the Holy Grail," London, 1888, 8vo.



- Surrye**, 163; Sowdan<sup>1</sup> (sultan) of, 174; Syria
- Symyan**, tombe of, 716\*
- Syuarne**, ryuer, 632; ? Severn
- Table round, or the Round Table**, 44; 62; is the property of king Lodegreaun of Camyliard, 101; is brought to Arthur with a hundred knights as dowry of Gueneuer, 102; eight of the best knights are killed, 123; they are replaced, 124; 153; 160; 163; 165; 175; 180; 183; 185; 193; 195\*; 212, 213; 251; 261; 267; 278; 296; 336; 347; a feast of, 417; 422; 424; 448; 493; 502; names of the knights, 532; 552; is to be broken when the holy vessel goes about, 573; 586; 612; 614\*; 618, 619; knights of, are fed with all sorts of meat; vow to depart in the quest of the Holy Grail, 620; a hundred and fifty knights go in the quest, 623\*; 638; signifies the world; Merlyn made it round because the world is round, 643; 650; 685; many of the knights are destroyed in the quest of the Holy Grail, 715\*; the remnant returns to Arthur, 725; Launcelot wins the prize of all the knights, 746; 759; 766; 769; the knights handle Vvre's wounds, 791, 792; 800; thirteen knights are killed, 808; fellowship is broken up for ever, 829; 861\*
- Tarce**, 163; Tarsus, now called Tarrasso, seaport of Cilicia, Asia Minor
- Taulas**, a giant, 155
- Tauleas**, a giant, 369; 372
- Taulurd**, a giant, 155
- Temse**, river, 728; 736, 737; 760, 761; 777; Thames
- Terrabyl**,<sup>2</sup> tarabil, castel of, 36, 37; 83
- Tirre, Tyrre**, syr, 740; 749; 758; 760
- Tolleme**, kyng, 626, 627
- Tor**, syr, son of kyng Pellenore by the wife of Aryesthe cowherd, therefore called **Tor le fyse aries, le fyse vaysshoure**, 102, 103; 109, 110, 111, 112, 113; 359, 360; 427; 429, 430; 444; 791
- Toure**, the dolorous, 271
- Towre**, lady of the, 98
- Tramtryst**. See **Trystram**
- Tremble**, port<sup>3</sup> of, 181
- Trent**, river, 44; 51
- Tristram, Trystram**, syr, son of kyng Melyodas of Lyonas, 84; 143; 164; 234; 256; 259; 261, 262; 271, 272; is born, 273; christened Trystram, *i.e.*, sorrowful birth, 274; is in danger of being poisoned by his stepmother, 275; prays for her, and obtains her pardon from his father; is sent to France; learns the French language, to handle arms, to play the harp and other instruments; gives much time to hunting and hawking, 276; all the terms of hunting and hawking are invented by him, 277; requests his father to let him fight for the truage of Cornwall against Marhaus; receives a letter from the daughter of the king of France,

<sup>1</sup> The form "Sowdan," the Middle-English soudan, for sultan, seems to have entirely escaped Wright as well as Strachey. The former passes it over in silence; the latter mentions it separately in his Glossary without giving an explanation.

<sup>2</sup> Geoffrey of Monmouth, "Hist. Brit.," calls this castle "castellum Dimilioc." In the ordinary "Merlin" as well as in the Huth "Merlin" in the corresponding passage this castle is only spoken of as "a second castle," and no name is given. The name "Tarabel" occurs, however, in the Huth "Merlin," *i. pp.* 241, 252-261, where it is the castle in which the army of king Ryons is defeated and where king Lot is killed. Where the place was situated I am utterly unable to ascertain.

<sup>3</sup> The "Morte Arthure" (Thornton MS.) always reads "Pounte" for "port."

<sup>4</sup> There are a considerable number of MSS. in the British Museum which treat of hunting and hawking—*e.g.*, Cotton Vespasian B. xij, "The Mayster of the Hunt"—but none of them bears the title "Syr Trystram's Book," nor can I find any reference in them to the existence of such a book. The earliest printed book on this subject in English is Lady Juliana Berners' "Booke of St. Albans," printed for the first time by the schoolmaster-printer of St. Albans in 1486 (reproduced in facsimile by William Blades,

279; comes to king Mark; is made knight, 280; goes to meet Marhaus; finds him near his ship, 281; fights with him, 282; overcomes him, 283; returns to Mark; is wounded with a poisoned spear; can only be healed in the country where the spear is made, 284; goes to Ireland; gains the king's favour by his harping; calls himself Tramtryst, 285; Isoud, the king's daughter, nurses and heals him; requests him to fight at a tournament, 286; is nearly discovered; appears on a white horse, and with white shield and harness, given to him by Isoud, 287; makes Hebes le renoumes knight; overcomes Palomydes, 288; is discovered through his sword, 289; leaves the court of Anguysshe, 290; takes leave of Isoud, 291, 292; after calling on his father, returns to Mark's court; becomes, as well as king Mark, enamoured of the wife of Segwarydes; meets Mark, and smites him down, 293; is betrayed by the wife of Segwarydes, who fights against him, 294; Trystram throws him down, and rides to Tyntagil, 295; is rebuked by a lady; rides after Bleoberis, 296; meets Sagramor and Dodynas, and smites them both down, 297; joins Bleoberys and the wife of Segwarydes, 298; fights against him, and overcomes him, 299; the lady refuses to go with him, 300; returns to Tyntagyl; is sent to Ireland by king Mark to ask for Isoud's hand for him, 301; is driven to the coast of England; smites down Ector, 302; hears that king Anguysshe is accused of treason; resolves to help him, 303\*; comes to the king, 304\*; is accepted, and Anguysshe promises to give him

whatever he will ask, 305\*; fights against Blamor, 306; overcomes him, but requests the kings to save his life, 307; is joyfully received by Anguysshe, and goes with him to Ireland, 308; asks for Isoud's hand in the name of king Mark; returns with Isoud to Cornwall; on the way takes a love drink with her, 309; fights against Breunor, and rids the castel Fluere of its bad customs, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320; is betrayed by his cousin Andred; king Mark lifts his sword up to kill him, but Trystram puts him to flight, 321; kills two brothers, knights of king Mark, and wounds about thirty other knights; is sent for by the barons, and reconciled with Mark, 322; refuses to do anything that is against his knight-hood; fights with Lamorack, 323, 324; goes daily and nightly to Isoud; is taken by Andred and twelve knights; they bind him and intend to kill him; 325; asks his cousin Andred for mercy; breaks his fetters, and escapes; defends himself in a chapel, where his men join him, 326; delivers Isoud; is hurt by a poisoned arrow; goes to Bretayne, to king Howel's daughter, Isoud la blanche maynys, to get healed, 327; becomes enamoured of her, and marries her, 328; hears that Launcelot blames him for his conduct, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335; 344, 345, 346; 348; receives a sorrowful letter from Isoud, Marke's wife; resolves to go to see her; is driven ashore near the Castel peryllous; leaves his fellowship with Kehydus, 353, 354; fights and overcomes Lamorack; is henceforth his friend,

1881, 4to), later by Wynkyn de Worde and many others. In this book Trystram is once thus alluded to:—

“Wheresoeuer ye fare by fryth or by fell,

My dere chylde take hede how Tristram dooth you tell.”

From some passages in another book, “The Noble Art of Venerie and Hunting,” by G. Tuberville, London, 1611, 8vo, it appears, however, that in days past there existed a “Book of Syr Trystram.” Comp. p. 40, “Trystram's lore;” p. 96, “for noble Tristram's sake;” p. 148, “Yet our Tristram reckoneth the bore for one of the foure beasts of Venerie;” p. 174, “but our old Tristram calleth it hallow.”

355, 356; 359, 360; is told that Arthur is in great danger, 361; saves him, but does not tell him his name, 362; sails to Cornwall, 363; reproaches Isoud for faithlessness, 364, 365; is mad; comes to a lady, but soon escapes; lives with shepherds in a wood; throws Dagonet into a well, 366, 367; the rumour is spread by Andred that Trystram is dead, 368; kills the giant Tauleas, 369; is taken to Marke's court; is recognised by a little brachet, which was given to him by the daughter of the king of France, 370; is banished from the court of Mark for ten years, 371, 372; is told that Launcelot is in great danger, 373; fights against thirty knights, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391; fights with Launcelot; is wounded; leaves the field, 392; smites down Palomydes, 393; wins the field, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398; Trystram comes to a castle; its owner recognises in him the knight who killed his sons, and he is put into prison, 399, 400, 401; 404; is still in prison, but is assured that Darras will not kill him, 405; falls sick; is delivered out of prison; reposes himself, and recovers; leaves his fellows, 406; comes to a castle to ask for lodging; is well received, but learns that he has fallen into the hands of Morgan le fay, 407; the queen promises to set him free on condition that he carries a shield which she will give him in the tournament near the castel of the hard roche, 408; smites down Hemyson, a lover of Morgan le fay, 409; stays with a knight; arrives at the castle where the tournament takes place, 410, 411; fights with Arthur, 412, 413, 414; agrees with Palomydes to meet with him in a fortnight at the tombstone, 415, 416, 417, 418; comes to the tombstone, 419; fights with Launcelot, thinking that he is Palomydes; at last they recognise each other, 420; goes to king

Arthur, 421; is made knight of the round table, and gets the seat of Marhaus, 422, 423, 424, 425; 427; 431; 435, 436; 438; 441; 448; is reconciled with king Mark, 449; returns to Cornwall with him, 450, 451; 453; 456, 457; is seriously wounded at a tournament; is asked to fight against the Sessoyns, 458; tells the messenger that he will come as soon as he is recovered; comes with ten of Arthur's knights, 459; asks leave to do what he thinks best; destroys the ships of the Sessoyns by fire, 460; fights successfully against them, 461; fights with Elyas, the captain of the Sessoyns, 462, 463; kills him, 464, 465, 466; 469, 470; 493; fights in a tournament; is grievously wounded; king Mark, under the pretext of nursing him, takes him to a castle, gives him a drink, and, when he is under the influence of this charm, puts him into prison in another castle, 494; receives a forged letter from king Mark, 495; refuses to yield to his request, 496; is delivered by Percyuale, but imprisoned again by king Marke, 497; is delivered again by Dynas and flees with Isoud; appears at a tournament of king Arthur, 498; receives Ioyous gard from Launcelot for his residence, 499; they live very happily there; one day he meets Breuse saunce pyte, and soon after Palomydes, 500, 501; 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513; finds a ship; enters it; reads the letter which the dead king has in his hand, 514; gives Palomydes the adventure; comes to a castle; is recognised by the owner as the knight who slew his brother; departs, 515; the knight follows him; he fights against him and overcomes him, 516; fights against Beraunce; rides to Ioyous gard, 517; 521; receives Palomydes after his return from the Reed cyte, 525, 526; rides with Isoud, both arrayed in green, to Lona3ep; meets on the way

Galyhodyn, who wants to take Isoud from him; he smites him down, 527; meets Gawayn, Vwayn, Sagramor, and Dodynas, 528, 529; declines to tell Arthur his name, nor which party he belongs to, 530, 531, 532, 533; is brought to the ground by Launcelot; gets the horse of the king of Northgalis, 534; throws Arthur out of the saddle; reappears in red harness; smites down five knights, 535, 536; smites down Ector, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543; fights very bravely, 544; rides secretly out of the field, 545; arrays himself all in black; returns with Dynadan to the tournament; smites down three knights, 546; fights against Palomydes, who has disguised himself; afterwards with Launcelot, who does not recognise him, 547; helps Dynadan; is recognised by Launcelot, 548; gets the degree of the day; returns to his pavilion with Isoud, 549; hears from Isoud about Palomydes' falsehood; pardons him, 550; receives Arthur and Launcelot in his pavilion, 551; tells Arthur why he was against him, 552; meets with Kay, and throws him down from his horse and three other knights as well; surpasses all other knights, 553, 554; returns to king Arthur's party; the prize is given him again, but he refuses it in favour of Launcelot; returns to his pavilion, 555; returns to Ioyous gard to rest himself seven days, 556, 557, 558, 559; 561; rides to the castel Pelownes to save Palomydes, 563; meets Launcelot, 564; requests him to stay with him at Ioyous gard, 565; hears how Palomydes, alone at a well, talks about his love for Isoud, 566; reproaches him for his perfidy, 567; agrees to fight with him, in fifteen days, near Camelot;

returns to Ioyous gard; one day, being out hunting, he is shot in the thigh by an archer, 568; tells Palomydes that he cannot fight at the day fixed, 569; gets great renown by his valiant deeds of arms; the people of Lyonas send him letters and presents, 570; 606; meets, unarmed, Palomydes, yet fights with him, 607, 608; takes Galleron's armour, shield, and sword, and fights again with Palomydes, 609; overcomes him, 610; leads him to Carleil and causes him to be christened, 611; his death referred to, 768; 807

**Tryan**, syr, 427

**Turkes**, or myscreantes, 860\*

**Turkye**, 163; Turkey

**Turquyne**, syr, 185; 193, 194, 195; 197, 198; 211, 212; 256; 261; 824

**Turnaunce**, yle of, 694

**Tursank**, erle of, 830; (?) this dignity is conferred on syr Melyas de lyle by syr Launcelot

**Tuskane**, 175, 176; 181; Tuscany, a grand duchy in Italy

**Tyntagil**,<sup>1</sup> Tyntigayll, castle of the duke of Cornwayle, 35; 37; 45; 68; 199; 278, 279; 284; 292; 294; 301; 364; 367; 370; 403; 455; 458, 459, 460, 461; 497

**Vlbawes**, Vlbause, erle of Surluse, 491, 492; 790

**Vlfyus**,<sup>2</sup> syr, a noble knyght, the confidant of kyng Vtherpendragon, 36, 37; 43; 48, 49; 53, 54, 55; 60; 62; 67, 68

**Vlfyn**, heremyte, 690; very likely identical with syr Vlfyus

**Vrbyne**, cyte of, 181

**Vrre**, syr, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794; 801; 804; 820, 821, 822-830

**Vryence**,<sup>3</sup> Vryens, kyng of the land of gore, 44; 52; 56; 64; 89; 123, 124, 125, 126; 140; 257; 260; 760; 790

<sup>1</sup> Tintagell is a small town in Cornwall on the coast of the Bristol Channel.

<sup>2</sup> "Hist. Brit." has "Vlfynus de Ricaradock;" Huth "Merlin" reads "Ulfin;" the "ordinary Merlyn" (MS. of the University Library, Cambridge) reads "Vlfyn."

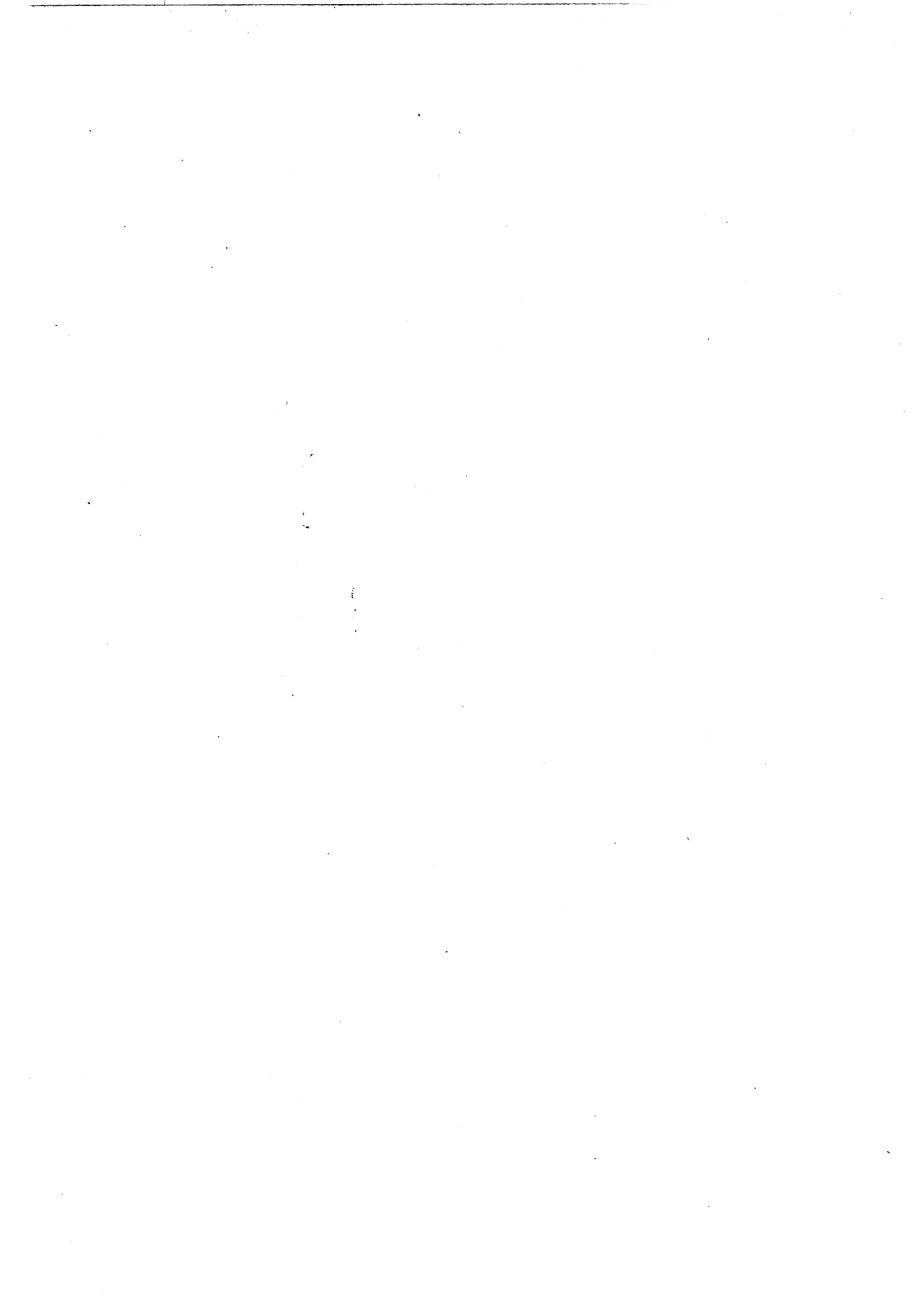
<sup>3</sup> "Hist. Brit." reads "Vrianus;" Huth "Merlin" has "Urien."

- Vtherpendragon**, kyng of Englonde, sends for the duke of Cornwall; gets enamoured of Igrayne; assembles his lords; declares war against the duke, 35; besieges the duke in vain in the castel of Terrabil; becomes ill; calls Merlyn by the advice of Vlfyus; promises Merlyn to deliver him the child, 36; comes in the shape of the duke of Cornwall to Tyntagyll, sleeps with Igrayne, and begets Arthur; marries Igrayne after her husband's death, 37; tells Igrayne the secret, and orders the child to be delivered to Merlyn, who gives it to syr Ector, 38; becomes again ill; defeats his enemies; by Merlyn's advice he calls the barons together, and recommends them to make Arthur king of Britain; dies, 39; 43; 45; 66; 70; 75; 100; 199
- Vwayne**, Ewayne, le fyse de roy  
**Vryence**, le or la blanche maynys, les auoultres, les auoutres, les auenturous, 38; 136; 140, 141, 142; 145; 156, 157, 158, 159; 203, 204; 211; 256; 397; 401, 402; 411, 412, 413; 420; 430; 433, 434; 486; 528; 543; 586; 623; 625; 634, 635; 667, 668; 791
- Vagon**, castel of, 623
- Vale**, erle de, 656, 657; kyng of, 120
- Vaunce**, Vawse, lady de, 85; 155
- Vyterbe**, city, 181; Viterbo, town in Italy
- Vycecounte**,<sup>1</sup> vale of, 181
- Vyllyers**, Vyllyars, le valyaunt, syr, 791; 804; 830; 856\*; 860\*
- Wade**, 225; Wate<sup>2</sup>
- Walys**, 38; 44, 45; 64; 121; 156; 159; 162 (west); 255; 273; 286; 586; 660; 859\*; kyng of, 538; 545; Wales
- Wandesborow**, wadisborow, castel of, 61; 64
- Waste landes**, quene of, 642, 643
- Well**, Callahadys (Galahads), 716\*
- Wentland**,<sup>3</sup> country of, 114, 115
- Westmynstre**, westmestre, 730; 733; 760; 763; 772, 773; 776, 777, 778, 779; abbey of, 2; 861\* (Caxton's Preface and Colophon); chirche of, 737; brydge of, 777
- Wyndsoore**, Wyndsoure, 727; forest of, 763
- Wysshard**, wychard, syr, 175; 178
- Wynchestre**, wynchester, 2 (Caxton's Preface); 739; 742; 751; 753; 755. According to Malory, W. is the English for Camelot: see Camelot
- Wyndesan**, cyte of, 64
- Ynde**, 168; India
- Yorke**, 164; York
- Yrland**, 164. See Ireland
- Ytalye**, 162. See Italye

<sup>1</sup> The "Morte Arthure" (Thornton MS.) reads here once "Vale of Viterbe," in another passage "the Viscownte of Valewncce."

<sup>2</sup> According to the Wilkina Saga, he was the son of Wilcinus and the mermaid Wachild. He is often confounded with Tor. (Comp. "Wade": Lettre à M. Henri Ternaux Compans, par Fr. Michel; Paris, 1837.)

<sup>3</sup> This is most likely "Gwentland" in Monmouthshire.



## GLOSSARY.<sup>1</sup>

- A**, i. *prep.*, = in, on; ii. *interj.*, expressing pain or surprise, 303\* 24; 860\* 1; iii. *prefix*—(1) for *prep.* *a* and for Icel. *á* = on (**abak**); (2) for O.F. *a-* and Lat. *ad-* (**abated**); (3) for A.F. *a*, O.F. *e-*, *es-*, Lat. *e-*, *ex-* (**abashed**); (4) adding intensity to the notion of a verb, A.S. *á-* for *ar-*, O.H.G. *ar-*, Goth. *us-* (**aboughte**); (4) for *prep.* *at* and Icel. *at* (**adone**); (5) for *prep.* *of* (**adrad**); (6) for A.F. *an-*, O.F. *en-* from Lat. *in-* (**apayre**).
- abak**, *adv.*, 131 30; backwards;—A.S. *on-bæc*.
- abasshe**, *v.*, to abash, cast down; **abashed**, *p.p.*, 62 28; 615 32; **ashamed**, alarmed; **abeysshed**, *p.p.*, 392 26;—O.F. *esbahiss-* from *esbahir*.
- abate**, *v.*, to beat down, to calm; **abated**, *pt.*, 158 4;—A.F. *abatre*.
- a bedde**, 800 21; in bed.
- abhomynable**, *adj.*, 165 34; abominable;—A.F. *abominable*.
- abreide**, *v.*, to start up, to draw (a sword), to thrust out, to blame; **abraide**, *pt.*, 389 20; **abrayed**, *pt.*, 239 21;—A.S. *ábregdan*.
- abrode**, *adv.*, away, 845\* 28.
- abyde**, *v.*, to abide, await, remain, endure; **abode**, *pt.*, 87 33; **abyden**, *p.p.*, 691 6; 702 16;—A.S. *á-bídan*.
- abye**, *v.*, to buy, to pay for; **aboughte**, *pt.*, 238 33;—A.S. *ábycgan*.
- abylement**, *sb.*, 64 30; dress, clothing;—O.F. *habillement*.
- accept**, *p.p.*, 3 4; for *accepted*.
- acompanye**, *v. inf.*, 314 35; to associate with somebody;—O.F. *acompaaignier*.
- accomplysshe**, *v.*, to achieve, to accomplish; **taccomplysshe**, *inf.*, 177 9; **accomplysshed**, *p.p.*, 1 (see **complysshe**);—from O.F. *acompliss-*, *p.prs.* of *acomplir*.
- acompte**, *v.*, to count, calculate; *prs.*, 410 20; *inf.*, 622 38;—Late Lat. *acomptare*.
- accord**, *sb.*, agreement, peace, 37 27;—Lat. *ad* and *cord-* from *cor*;—O.F. *acord*.
- achyeue**, *v.*, to bring to an end, achieve; *inf.*, 27 4; **achyeued**, *pt.*, 14 36; **acheued**, *pt.*, 570 8; **thachyeuyng**, *pr. prs.*, 861\* (Caxton's Colophon). See also **encheue**;—O.F. *acheuer*.
- acquyнтаunce**, *sb.*, 380 22; acquaintance;—*deriv.* of Late Lat. *adcognitare*, O.F. *acointer*.
- acquyte**, *v.*, to acquit; *prs.*, 176 6;—O.F. *aquiter*.

<sup>1</sup> What is said about the List of Names and Places can be repeated here: this Glossary is the first ever compiled to "Le Morte Darthur." As I am preparing a Caxton Dictionary for all the works of England's first printer for which I have accumulated the material in the course of my studies, I have been able to give to this Glossary more the form of a small Etymological Dictionary. Many words, however, owe their acceptance only to their orthography. The numbers refer to pages and lines. In the etymological part A.F. is written for *Anglo-French*; A.S., *Anglo-Saxon*; Goth., *Gothic*; Icel., *Icelandic*; Lat., *Latin*; Late Lat., *post-classical Latin*; M.E., *Middle English*; O.F., *Old French*; O.H.G., *Old High German*; O.Merc., *Old Mercian*; O.North., *Old Northumbrian*; O.S., *Old Saxon*; Sans., *Sanskrit*; W., *Welsh*. I have always given the different spellings of every word that occur in the text.

- actually**, *adv.*, 146 32; bravely, actively;—Lat. *actualis*.
- Adieu**, *adv.*, 393 16; to God, farewell;—Fr. *à Dieu*.
- admoneste**, *v. pres.*, 173 5; to bring to mind, to warn, admonish;—Late Lat. *admonitare*, O.F. *amonester*.
- ado**, *sb.*, fuss, trouble, difficulty, 443 5; to haue adoo with, 73 26; **ado with her**, 62 35; **had lytyl ado to cause**, 36 16; **adone**, 441 2.
- adoubted**, *adj.*, afraid, 481 2.
- adrad**, *p.p.*, frightened, put in dread, 59 19; 435 6; **adradde**, 654 44;—A.S. *of-drad*.
- aduant garde**, *sb.*, vanguard, 56 35;—O.F. *avantgarde*. Compare **vaward**.
- aduysyon**, *sb.*, vision, apparition, 27 15;—Lat. *ad* and *visionem*. Compare **vysyon**.
- afere**, *adv.*, afar, at a far distance, 706 36;—A.S. *of feorr*, O.S. *fer*, Goth. *fairra*.
- afere**, *v.*, to frighten, terrify; **aferd**, *p.p.*, 70 23; 187 28; 656 20;—A.S. *á-færan*.
- affyaunce**, *sb.*, faith pledged to, trust, confidence, 841 30;—A.F. *affi-auce*.
- afore**, *adv. prep.*, before, 97 2; 135 5;—A.S. *on-foran*.
- afterdele**, *sb.*, disadvantage, 173 33;—A.S. *æft and dæl*.
- ageynward**, *adv.*, against, towards, 550 33.
- agon**, **agone**, *p.p.* and *adv.*, gone away, ago, 435 14; 526 25; 634 4;—A.S. *a-gán*.
- agreue**, *v.*, to bear heavily on, to grieve, to oppress; **agreued**, *p.p.*, 43 11;—Lat. *aggravare*.
- aknowen**, *p.p.*, known, 295 16;—A.S. *a-cnáwen*.
- al**, *sb., adj., adv.*, all; **al dede**, 715\* 33; **alle to hewe hym**, 513 9; **alle the hole Iustes**, 552 1; **al to long**, 132 2; **al only**, 832 16; **foughten wyth al**, 29 14; **alle to sheuers**, 554 14;—A.S. *eall*, *all*, *al*.
- alaye**, *v.*, to quiet, alleviate; **alayed**, *p.p.*, 718 16;—A.S. *a-leccan*.
- allygeaunce**, *sb.*, the duty of a subject to his lord, but at 760 11 it seems to be synonymous with forgiveness, alleviation.
- almery**, *sb.*, cupboard, press; **almeryes of Salysbury**, 724 24;—Lat. *almariolum*.
- almesse**, *sb.*, alms, charity, 221 26;—A.S. *ælmesse*.
- al one**, *adj., adv.*, alone, 74 16; **allone**, 849 38;—A.S. *al*, *eal*, and *án*.
- alowde**, *adv.*, aloud, 452 1;—A.S. *on* and *hláid*.
- allwayes**, *adv.*, always, 831 37;—A.S. *al* and *weg*.
- al ther**, *gen. pl.*, of all, 134 2;—A.S. *ealra*.
- Alyaunts**, *sb. pl.*, aliens, strangers, 831 12;—Lat. *alienus*.
- alyghte**, *v.*, to alight, to get down from a horse, to descend; to lighten; **alyghte**, *pt.*, 403 24; 242 31; 267 4; **alyght**, *pt.*, 184 20; **alyghted**, *pt.*, 167 5; **alyghte**, *p.p.*, 266 23;—A.S. *á-lihtan*.
- amase**, *v.*, to amaze, stupefy; **amased**, *p.p.*, 844 12.
- amble**, *v.*, to move at an easy pace; **ambelynge paas**, 197 11;—**hacney**, 234 24;—**meule**, 267 8;—O.F. *ambler*, Lat. *ambulare*.
- ambuler**, *sb.*, an ambling horse; 561 30;—O.F. *ambleur*.
- amendys**, *sb. pl.*, amends, reparation, recompense, 107 15;—Lat. *a* and *menda*; O.F. *amende*.
- ammonysshement**, *sb.*, admonishment, exhortation, 688 11;—O.F. *amonestement*.
- amounte**, *v.*, to ascend, rise; to amount; **amounted**, *pt.*, 416 20;—A.F. *amunter*, from Lat. *ad montem*.
- amys**, *adj.* and *adv.*, amiss, wrong, 731 26;—A.S. *a*, *mission*.
- anger**, **angre**, *sb.*, affliction, sorrow, wrath, pain, 416 24; 539 29; 797 8;—Icel. *angr*.
- anguyssh**, *sb.*, anguish, 390 28;—O.F. *angoisse*, A.F. *anguisse*, Lat. *angustia*.
- anker**, *sb.*, anchor, 281 22;—A.S. *ancor*, Lat. *ancora*.



- anon**, *adv.*, at once, instantly, soon, 43 35;—A.S. *on án*.
- anuyld**, **anuyld**, *sb.*, anvil, 40 22, 26;—A.S. *anfilt*, *onfilt*.
- apaye**, *v.*, to satisfy, requite, please; **apayed**, *p.p.*, 767 1;—O.F. *apayer*, Lat. *ad. pacare*.
- apayre**, *v.*, to harm, diminish, impair; **apayre**, *prs.*, 102 13;—O.F. *ampeirer*, Lat. *in peiorare*.
- apease**, *v.*, to appease, calm; **apeased**, *pt.*, 32 4;—O.F. *apaisier*, Lat. *ad. pacem*.
- apeche**, *v.*, to hinder, to impeach, to charge with crime, to cite before a court; **apeched**, *pt.*, 6 32; **apeched**, *pt.*, 30 17; **apeche**, *inf.*, 424 23; **apoeche**, *prs.*, 424 28;—corrupt. of *empeche*, O.F. *empecher*, Lat. *impedicare*.
- apoynte**, *v.*, to agree, arrange, prepare; **apoynted**, *pt.*, 522 30;—O.F. *apointer*.
- apparail**, *sb.*, apparel, dress, 418 7.
- apparaille**, **apparaylle**, *v.*, to make ready, fit up, furnish, dress, attire; **apparaylled**, *p.p.*, 125 27; *pt.*, 447 32;—O.F. *apareiller*.
- appele**, *v.*, to call to, to bring before one, appeal; **appeled**, *pt.*, 21 29;—Lat. *appellare*.
- apperceyue**, *v.*, to perceive, to understand, to notice; **apperceuyued**, *pt.*, 247 36;—Late Lat. *appercipere*.
- appertenance**, *sb.*, appurtenance, that which appertains or belongs to, 39 34; 134 17;—O.F. *apurtenance*, *apartenance*.
- apperteyne**, *v.*, to appertain, to belong to; **apperteyneth**, *prs.*, 452 5;—O.F. *apertenir*.
- appertyce**,<sup>1</sup> *sb.*, open display, proof, or evidence of valour; **appertyces**, *pl.*, 173 14.
- appoyntement**, *sb.*, agreement, appointment; **appoyntementes**, *pl.*, 821 19. Compare **poyntement**, 463 11;—O.F. *apointement*.
- aprouche**, *v.*, to approach; **aprouched**, *pt.*, 173 11;—Lat. *appropriare*, O.F. *aprocher*.
- apres**, **le**, surname of Brennor, king of the hundred knights;—Lat. *asper*, O.F. *aspre*, zealous, courageous.
- a purpos**, 509 29; on purpose, intentionally;—O.F. *a purpos*, *propos*.
- arage**, *v.*, to put in a rage, to render furious; **araged**, *p.p.*, 162 32;—Sans. *rabh*, Lat. *rabere*, O.F. *rager*.
- a rase**, *v.*, to pull up by the roots, to tear off; *inf.*, 771 13;—Lat. *eradicare*, O.F. *esrachier*.
- aray**, *sb.*, array, dress, 36 15;—O.F. *arei*.
- araye**, *v.*, to array, to dress; **arayed**, *p.p.*, 7 13;—O.F. *areier*, A.F. *arayer*.
- ardant**, *adj.*, ardent, 653 31;—O.F. *ardant*, from *arder*.
- a reeste**, *sb.*, stop, arrest, custody, 773 34;—O.F. *arest*.
- arere**, *v.*, to draw back, to withdraw; **areryd**, *pt.*, 524 5;—from A.F. *arere*, *adv.*, Lat. *ad retro*.
- arette**, *v.*, to reckon, count, accuse; **aretted**, *p.p.*, 2 11;—Lat. *reputare*, O.F. *aretter*.
- areyse**, *v.*, to raise, arouse; **areyeds**, *pt.*, 465 23.
- armyuestal**,<sup>2</sup> *adj.*, warlike, martial, 138 15;—?
- aromatyk**, *adj.*, aromatic, sweet-scented, 174 22;—from Late Lat. *aroma*.
- arraunt**, *adj.*, errant, 404 6;—O.F. *errant*.
- arryuayl**, *sb.*, arrival, 285 10;—Lat. *adripare*.
- arson**, *sb.*, bow of the saddle, 678 22; 768 9; **arsson**, 191 30;—A.F. *arcon*.
- aryse**, *v.*, to arise; *inf.*, 473 25; **arsoos**, *pt.*, 471 35; **arysen**, *p.p.*, 659 26;—A.S. *á-risan*.
- aryue**, *v.*, to arrive, to come ashore; **aryuen**, *p.p.*, 700 22;—Lat. *adripare*, O.F. *arriuer*.
- aske**, *v.*, to ask; *inf.*, 462 21 (frequently *axe*); **asked**, *pt.*, 70 4;

<sup>1</sup> Compare W. Caxton, "Ovid's Metamorph.," book xi. ch. 22 (edition of the Roxburghe Club, 1819): "He was wyse, dyscrete, and full of al appertyse."

<sup>2</sup> Wynkyn de Worde reads "armyuestall." I have not come across this form in any of the great number of texts I have read, nor can I find the word in any dictionary. It probably owes its existence to a misprint.

- axed**, *pt.*, 7 1; 460 12; **axyd**, *pt.*, 179 15;—A.S. *áscian*, *áxian*.
- a sonder**, *adv.*, asunder, 725 1;—A.S. *on sundran*.
- aspye**, *sb.*, spy; **aspyes**, *pl.*, 753 1;—O.F. *espie*.
- aspye**, *v.*, to look after, to watch, to search; **aspyed**, *pt.*, 82 18;—O.F. *espier*.
- assaye**, *v.*, to examine, try, attack; *inf.*, 71 17; **assayed**, *pt.*, 25 35; 42 7;—A.F. *assayer*.
- assomone**, *v.*, to summon, to command to appear in court; *inf.*, 275 17;—Lat. *ad*, *submonere*.
- assote**, *v.*, to dote upon somebody, to be deeply enamoured, smitten; **assotted**, *p.p.*, 4 25; **assoted**, *p.p.*, 118 32;—O.F. *asoter*.
- assoyle**, *v.*, to loosen, to absolve, explain; *inf.*, 855\* 30; **assoyled**, *pt.*, 642 1;—Late Lat. *absoluere*, O.F. *assoldre*.
- assurance**, *sb.*, assurance, 462 35.
- astonye**, *v.*, to stupefy, amaze, astonish; **astonyed**, *p.p.* and *pt.*, 194 5; 511 4; 703 12;—Lat. *extonare*, O.F. *estoner*.
- asure**, *sb.*, azure, 165 5; 526 19;—Late Lat. *lazur*, O.F. *asur*, *azur*.
- atte**, contraction of *at*, *prep.*, and the *def. article the*—**atte bore**, 596 17; **atte ende**, 707 18; **atte last**, 107 11; 713 37, &c.; *but at the laste*, 71 30; **att armes**, F. *aux armes!* 53 5; **atte castel**, 83 16; **atte feste**, 8 27; and many others.
- attheyne**, *v.*, attain; *inf.*, 4 2;—Lat. *attingere*, O.F. *ateindre*.
- attones**, *adv.*, at once, instantly, 379 13; 646 9
- at travers**, *adv.*, *prep.*, right through, 717 7;—F. *à travers*.
- atwo**, in two, 537 5;—A.S. *on*, *an*, and *twá*.
- auke**, *adj.*, turned the wrong way, perverse, sinister, 312 17;—Icel. *afugr*.
- aulter**, *sb.*, altar, 43 34; 580 1;—Lat. *altare*, O.F. *auter*, *alter*.
- auncyent**, *adj.*, old, 616 1;—A.F. *auncien*.
- auaunce**, *v.*, to advance; *inf.*, 103 24;—O.F. *avancer*.
- auaunt**, *sb.*, boast, vaunt, 683 28; 788 34; 824 13;—O.F. *avant*.
- auauntage**, *sb.*, advantage, superiority, 240 18; 412 19;—O.F. *avantage*.
- auaunte**, *v.*, to speak proudly, to boast, commend; **auauntest**, *prs.*, 176 16;—Late Lat. *ad* and *vanitare*, O.F. *avanter*.
- auaylle**, *v.*, to avail; **auaylleth**, *prs.*, 224 23; **auaylyd**, *p.p.*, 181 6;—Lat. *valere*.
- auentre**, *v.*, to put the spear along the side, in order to attack one's adversary; also to throw a spear (Spenser); **auentryd**, *pt.*, 97 7; 145 27;—Lat. *ad ventrem*.
- auenture**, *adventure*, *sb.*, chance, occurrence, jeopardy, risk, 83 15; **aduentures**, *pl.*, 803 18; **by aduenture** = by chance, 20 2; 36 14; *v.*, to risk, to venture, 69 1;—O.F. *aventure*.
- auoutres**, **auoultres**, **awoutres**, **les**, the adulterer; epithet of Vwayne, son of king Vryence;—Lat. *adulterum*, O.F. *auoutre*, *aöutre*.
- auowe**, *sb.*, vow, promise, 154 7; *v.*, to bind with a vow;—Late Lat. *advocare*, O.F. *avoer*.
- auyse**, *v.*, to advise, to give advice, to observe, to consider; **auysed**, *pt.* and *p.p.*, 35 24; 402 26;—Late Lat. *advizare*, A.F. *aviser*.
- awayward**, *adv.*, *adj.*, away, wayward, turned away, 242 23;—A.S. *on weg*.
- axe**, *v.*, to ask. *See aske*.
- ayde**, *sb.*, aid, help, assistance, 10 38;—O.F. *aider*.
- ayene**, *prep.*, *adv.*, *conj.*, again, towards, opposite to, in return for, 342 8;—A.S. *ongéan*, *ongeagn*.
- ayenst**, **ayenste**, *prep.*, *conj.*, against, 377 28; 516 19.
- babbynge**, *sb.*, babbling, 834 29.
- bacyn**, *sb.*, (1) basin, cymbal; (2) a light kind of helmet, 184 37;—O.F. *bacinet*.
- bak**, *sb.*, back, 787 36;—A.S. *bæc*.

- bande**, *sb.*, frontier; **bandes**, *pl.*, 789 8;—O.F. *bodne*, *bonde*.
- banysshe**, *v.*, to banish, put under a ban; **banysshed**, *pt.*, 402 18;—O.F. *banniss-* from *bannir*.
- baptym**, *sb.*, baptism, 651 3, 20;—O.F. *baptisme*.
- barayne**, *adj.*, barren, 764 17; 765 3;—O.F. *baraigne*.
- barbe**, *sb.*, beard, or anything resembling it; jags or points which stand backward in an arrow, dart, or spear; fishhook; **barbys**, *pl.*, 764 32;—Lat. *barba*.
- barbour**, *sb.*, barber; **barbours**, *pl.*, 176 34;—A.F. *barbeor*.
- barbycan**, *sb.*, a kind of watchtower, an outwork to defend the gate of a castle, 168 25;—O.F. *barbacane*.
- bargayn**, *sb.*, business, strife, combat, bargain, 581 36;—O.F. *bargaine*.
- barge**, *sb.*, a bark, boat, 122 15; 849 29;—O.F. *barge*.
- barget**, *sb.*, bark, boat, 330 29; 760 28 (diminut. of the former).
- Baronage**, *sb.*, the men, vassals of a feudal chief; assembly of the barons, 461 33;—O.F. *barnage*.
- Baronry**, *sb.*, an estate representing the property of a baron; a barony of lands, 157 2; 795 29.
- Baroune**, *sb.*, baron, 587 18; **barons**, *pl.*, 39 27;—A.F. *barun*.
- barre**, *sb.*, bar; **barrys**, *pl.*, 326 25;—O.F. *barre*.
- bataill**, **batayll**, *sb.*, (1) the battle, the fight, 61 2; 62 6; 342 5; (2) the army (Lat. *acies*), 57 21; **Northern bataylles**, 58 7;—O.F. *bataille*.
- bate**, *v.*, bate, abate, grow less; **bated**, *pt.*, 131 12;—O.F. *batre*.
- batilment**, *sb.*, a parapet with embrasures on the top of a building, originally only used on fortifications; battlement, 846 1;—O.F. *bastillement*.
- bauowre**, *sb.*, beaver; the part of a helmet which is moved up and down, covering the face, and allowing the wearer to drink; the shade over the eyes, 195 17;—O.F. *baviere*.
- bawdy**, *adj.*, bawdy, dirty, filthy, wanton, 218 36; 224 15;—O.F. *baude*.
- bawme**, *sb.*, balm, aromatic plant, fig, anything that heals or soothes pain, 174 21;—Lat. *balsamum*.
- baye**, *v.*, to bark; **bayed**, *pt.*, 110 29;—O.F. *abaier*.
- bayne**, *sb.*, bath, 289 22; 755 16;—O.F. *baïne*.
- beale**, *adj.*, beautiful, epithet given to Isoud, and to the castle Beale valet;—Fr. *belle*.
- beare**, *sb.*, the bear, 651 31;—A.S. *bera*.
- beaume**, *sb.*, beam, ray of light, 620 5;—A.S. *beam*, *beamian*.
- beaume**, *sb.*, trumpet; **beamous**, *pl.*, 861 1;—A.S. *bème*, *býme*, O.Merc. *bème*.
- beaute**, **beaulte**, *sb.*, beauty, 17 23; 23 29; 857\* 35;—O.F. *biuite*, *bealiteit*.
- beau viuante** = Fr. *beau vivant*, well living, well behaving; epithet of the damoysele Maledysaunt.
- beblede**, *v.*, to cover with blood; **bebled**, *pt.*, 294 12; *p.p.*, 782 10; **bebledde**, *p.p.*, 130 16;—A.S. *beblédan*.
- beclose**, *v.*, to enclose, surround; **beclosed**, *p.p.*, 601 2;—A.S. *bi*, *be*, and A.F. *clos*.
- become**, *v.*, to become, to come, to befall, suit; **become**, *p.p.*, 68 16; 366 15;—A.S. *be-cuman*.
- bedasshe**, *v.*, to cover with dashes of colour or adornment; **bedasshed**, *p.p.*, 713 21.
- bee**, *sb.*, a jewel, ring, 269 36;—A.S. *béah*.
- beeste**, *sb.*, beast, 6 31; **beestes**, *pl.*, 648 30;—Lat. *bestia*, O.F. *beste*.
- befalle**, *v.*, to befall, happen; **befalleth**, *prs.*, 765 19; **befelle**, *pt.*, 75 35; 772 1; **befallen**, *p.p.*, 653 2; **befalle**, *p.p.*, 420 34;—A.S. *befeallan*.
- beforene**, **biforne**, *prep.*, before, 221 32; 306\* 6; 513 7;—A.S. *biforan*.
- beginne**, *v.*, to begin; **begynneth**, *prs.*, 490 11; **begonne**, *p.p.*, 5 7; 405 9;—A.S. *beginnan*.
- begrype**, *v.*, to seize, to take hold of; *inf.*, 692 31;—A.S. *begrípan*.
- behange**, *v.*, to deck, to clothe; **behanged**, *p.p.*, 125 31;—A.S. *behón*.

- beated**, *adj.* or *p.p.*, hated, much hated, 494 19;—from A.S. *be* and *hatican*.
- beholde**, *v.*, to hold, to behold; *inf.*, 40 31; **beholden**, *p.p.*, 387 36; 762 11; **behelde**, *pt.*, 472 8; 859\* 36; **beholdyng**, for beholden, 42 24; 86 22;—A.S. *behealdan*.
- behote**, *v.*, to promise; *inf.*, 284 33; *prs.*, 92 12; **behyght**, *pt.*, 444 12; 724 30;—A.S. *behátan*. Compare *byheste*.
- behoue**, *v. impers.*; **behoueth**, *prs.*, needs, 311 10; 625 5;—A.S. *behó-fian*.
- beke**, *v.*, to bake; **bekynge**, *p.prs.*, 167 33; **baken**, *p.p.*, 196\* 32.
- beleue**, *v.*, to leave, to be left, to remain; **belefte**, *pt.*, 234 35;—A.S. *beléefan*.
- belle**, *sb.*, bell; **bellys**, *pl.*, 856\* 21;—A.S. *belle*.
- bemone**, *v.*, to bemoan, lament, *prs.*, 518 25;—A.S. *biméanan*.
- bende**, *sb.*, band, stripe, 431 27;—A.S. *bend*.
- bended**, **bented**, *adj.*, having bands of different colour, 441 34; 442 2; 433 5;—deriv. from the substantive.
- benime**, *v.*, to take from, deprive; **benome**, *p.p.*, 653 4; 674 23;—A.S. *beniman*.
- benyghte**, *v.*, to be overtaken by night; **benyghted**, *p.p.*, 587 17; 690 10;—A.S. *be* and *neahht*.
- berde**, *sb.*, beard, 7 8;—A.S. *beard*.
- bere**, *v.*, to bear; **boren**, *p.p.*, 694 22; **bare**, *pt.*, 67 36; **berén**, *plur. prs.*, 277 7;—A.S. *beran*.
- bere**, *sb.*, beer, 646 31;—A.S. *bær*. Compare O.F. *biere*.
- bereue**, *v.*, to bereave; **byreue**, *prs.*, 163 14; **berafte**, *pt.*, 578 34; **berafte**, *p.p.*, 814 27; **bereued**, *p.p.*, 44 7;—A.S. *biréafian*.
- beryels**, *sb. pl.*, burial, tomb, 287 7;—A.S. *byrgels*.
- besaunte**, *sb.*, a gold coin named from Byzantium; **besauntes**, *pl.*, 155 15;—O.F. *besant*.
- beseme**, *v.*, to beseme, appear; **besemeth**, *prs.*, 222 14; 551 33; **bisemeth yow not**, 76 19;—A.S. *be* and *séman*.
- besette**, *v.*, to fill, occupy, surround, beset; **besett**, *p.p.*, 551 33;—A.S. *bisettan*.
- beskyfte**, *v.*, to remove hastily; *inf.*, 119 37;—A.S. *be* and *scifstan*.
- bestad**, **bestadde**, **bystad**, *p.p.*, hard bestead, sorely imperilled, overcome, 125 21; 179 25; 824 7;—A.S. *be* and *stede*.
- besture**, *v.*, rouse, instigate, stir; **bestured**, *pt.*, 536 20;—A.S. *be* and *styrian*.
- bestyayl**, **bestyal**, *sb.*, cattle, 125 29; 180 20;—O.F. *bestail*.
- besuette**, *v.*, to sweat, perspire, *p.p.*, 612 6;—A.S. *be* and *swéetan*.
- besynes**, *sb.*, business, activity, care, industry, 481 16;—A.S. deriv. of *bysig*.
- bete**, *v.*, to beat; **bete**, *pt.*, 746 20; **bete**, *p.p.*, 667 8; **betyn**, *p.p.*, 228 3;—A.S. *béatan*.
- beteche**, *v.*, to entrust, assign, recommend; **betaught**, *pt.*, 631 26; **bytaughte**, *pt.*, 199 35;—A.S. *betécan*.
- bethynke**, *v.*, to think, plan, reflect; **bethou3te hym**, *pt.*, 132 31; **bethoughte hym**, *pt.*, 239 31;—A.S. *bi-pencan*.
- betrapped**, *adj.*, adorned, covered, 803 34.
- betyde**, *v.*, to happen, to betide; **betyde**, *prs.*, 847 1; **betyd**, *pt.*, 370 3; **betyd**, *p.p.*, 267 34;—from A.S. *tid*.
- beuer**, *v.*, to tremble, to quiver; **beuerd**, *pt.*, 56 4;—? A.S. *bifian*.
- bien pensaut**, surname of the damoyse! Maledysaut;—Fr. *bien pensant*, well thinking.
- bifalle**, *v.*, to befall; **bifel**, *pt.*, 35 1; **bifelle**, *pt.*, 730 27; **befallen**, *p.p.*;—A.S. *be-feallan*.
- biforne**. See *beforne*.
- bisee**, *v.*, to look, to arrange, appoint, manage; **bisene**, **be sene**, **besene**, *p.p.*, equipped, 44 32; 64 37; 73 6;—A.S. *biséon*.
- bitake**, *v.*, to commit, entrust, recommend; **bitoke**, *pt.*, 472 3; **bitaken**, *p.p.*, 42 18.
- blast**, *sb.*, a blowing, 96 9;—A.S. *bléest*.

- blanche maynys, le or la**, surname of Isoud and of Vwayne;—Fr. *mains blanches*, white hands.
- blede**, *v.*, to bleed; *inf.*, 91 21; **bledde**, *pt.* and *p.p.*, 8 1; 71 25;—A.S. *blēdan*.
- blee**, *sb.*, colour, complexion, 176 32;—A.S. *blēo*.
- blesse**, *v.*, to bless; *imperat.*, 745 13; **blisse**, *imperat.*, 753 21;—A.S. *blētsian*.
- blosomme**, *v.*, to blossom, *prs.*, 771 3;—A.S. *blōstmian*.
- blowe**, *v.*, to blow; *inf.*, 529 11; 542 33; **blewe**, *pt.*, 13 16; 109 30; 766 8; **blowen**, *p.p.*;—A.S. *blāwan*.
- blyndefeld**, *adj.*, blindfolded, 138 18;—A.S. *blind* and M.E. *fellen*, to strike.
- blythe**, *adj.*, blithe, cheerful, 281 8;—A.S. *blīðe*.
- bobaunce**, *sb.*, pride, vanity, splendour, pomp, 523 12; 751 25;—O.F. *bobant*.
- bole**, *sb.*, the body or trunk, 209 3;—O.Norse *bolr*.
- bondage**, *sb.*, captivity, slavery, 408 19, 21;—O.F. *bondage*.
- bone**, *sb.*, boon; *originally* a prayer, petition; *secondly*, answer to a prayer, a gift, a favour, 276 2; 316 30; 422 21;—Icel. *bón*.
- boost**, *v.*, to boast; *inf.*, 176 17;—W. *bostio*, *bostiau*.
- boote**, *sb.*, boat, 96 28; **bote**, 706 11;—A.S. *bát*.
- boote, bote**, *sb.*, remedy, succour, amendment, boot, 209 6; 585 8;—A.S. *bót*.
- bord**, *sb.*, table, board, 515 22; **boordes**, *pl.*, 104 25;—A.S. *bord*.
- bordoure**, *sb.*, border, frontier, 349 13;—O.F. *bordure*.
- borowe**, *sb.*, pledge, security; **borowes**, *pl.*, 240 34;—A.S. *borh*.
- bote**, *sb.*, (1) boat, (2) remedy. *See boote*.
- bote**, *v.*, to amend, to help; **bote**, *pt.*, 130 12; **boote**, *pt.*, 130 18. *Compare* A.S. *bót*, *bétan*.
- bott**, *sb.*, butt, the point, handle, button of a sword or of the helmet, 69 18; **but**, 185 1; **butte**, 191 31;—O.F. *boter*, to push, butt, thrust.
- bottlere, botteler, butlere**, *sb.*, the butler; surname of Lucas son of Corneus.
- bounde**, *sb.*, boundary, limit, frontier; **boundys**, *pl.*, 47 23. *Compare bandes*.
- bounte**, *sb.*, bounty, liberality, kindness, 78 33; 539 26;—O.F. *bonteit*.
- bounteous**, *adj.*, kind, liberal, 733 7.
- bourde**, *v.*, to sit at table, or to play, to jest; **bourded**, *pt.*, 410 22;—O.F. *bourder* or A.S. *bord*.
- bourder**, *sb.*, glutton, or gambler, 455 6; 508 2.
- bowe**, *sb.*, bough, branch; **lodge of bowes**, 629 23;—A.S. *bóg*, *bóh*.
- boystous**, *adj.*, boisterous, rough, 491 26; 648 17;—?
- brace**, *v.*, to embrace; **braced**, *pt.*, 551 25. *See embrace*.
- brachet**, *sb.*, a small hunting dog, brach, a bitch pointer, 104 22;—O.F. *brachet*.
- bragge**, *v.*, originally to crack, to make a noise, to boast, brag; **bragge**, *prs.*, 169 33;—Icel. *braka*.
- braule**, *v.*, to make a loud noise, to quarrel noisily; **brauled**, *pt.*, 405 19;—?
- braundysshe**, *v.*, to shake or wave, as a brand or weapon, brandish; **braundysshing**, *part. pres.*, 427 8;—O.F. *brand*.
- braune**, *sb.*, brawn, originally flesh of the boar, the fleshy muscular part of the body, the muscular strength, 596 20; 781 30;—O.F. *braon*.
- brayde**, *sb.*, a quick movement, a start, a while, a moment (W. de Worde has *brethe*), 835 30;—Icel. *bragð*.
- breche**, *sb.*, breeches, drawers, 593 10 (*sing.*);—A.S. *bréc*, Icel. *brækr*, *pl.*
- brede**, *adj.*, broad. *See brood*.
- brede**, *v.*, to breed, produce; **bredde**, *p.p.*, 427 3;—A.S. *brédan*.
- brede**, *sb.*, breadth, 814 23;—A.S. *brædu*.
- breed**, *sb.*, bread, 719 6;—O.North. *bréad*.
- breke**, *v.*, to break; *inf.*, 401 32; **brack, brak, brake**, *pt.*, 8 7; 48

- 18; 71 9; broken, *p.p.*, 386 14; 590 12;—A.S. *brecan*.
- brenne**, *v.*, to burn; *inf.*, 88 32;
- brente**, *pt.*, 65 11; **brenned**, *pt.*, 666 24; **brent**, **brente**, *p.p.*, 10 10; 64 6; **brennyng**, *p.prs.*, 711 15;—Icel. *brenna*, Goth. *brinnan*.
- breſt**, *sb.*, breast, 676 17;—A.S. *bréost*.
- breſte**, *v.*, to burst; **braſte**, **braſt**, *pt.*, 95 25; 142 11;—A.S. *berſtan*, Icel. *breſta*.
- brethe**, *sb.*, breath, vapour, voice, word, 711 30;—A.S. *bréad*.
- breuſe**, *le*, surname of ſyr Seruauſe;—?
- breue**, *v.*, to ſhorten; *inf.*, 356 1;—Lat. *brevis*.
- broche**, *sb.*, brooch, ſpear; **broches**, *pl.*, 167 34;—O.F. *broche*.
- broche**, *v.*, to pierce through, to ſpur; **broched**, *pt.*, 58 24;—A.F. *brocher*.
- brood**, **brode**, **brede**, *adj.*, broad, 72 38; 99 15; 578 5;—A.S. *brád*.
- browe**, *sb.*, broth, ſoup; **broweys**, *pl.*, 214 28;—from A.S. *bréowan*, *p.p.*, *browen*.
- brunte**, *sb.*, the ſhock of an onſet; **bruntes**, *pl.*, 835 31;—? Icel. *bruna*, to advance with the ſpeed of fire.
- brutyll**, *adj.*, brittle, fragile, 129 36;—A.S. *bruton*, *pt. pl.* of *bréotan*.
- brym**, *adj.*, fierce, furious, angry, 820 4 (W. de Worde has *grymme*);—A.S. *bréme*.
- brymme**, *sb.*, margin, ſhore, brim, 648 17;—Icel. *brim*, A.S. *brymme*.
- bryſe**, *v.*, to crush, break, to wound ſeriously; **bryſed**, *pt.*, 97 11; 471 33;—A.S. *brýſan*, O.F. *briser*.
- brutysſhe**, *adj.*, Britiſh, 2 20.
- buffet**, *sb.*, buff, heavy blow, 58 24; **buffette**, 204 14; **buffettes**, *pl.*, 335 7;—O.F. *bufe*, *bufer*.
- bur**, *sb.*, a broad iron ring juſt below the grip of a ſpear to prevent the hand from ſlipping, 847 12;—?
- burbel**, *v.*, to bubble; **burbelynge**, *p.prs.*, 415 17; **burbyl**, *inf.*, 764 8.
- burgene**, *v.*, to bud, bloſſom; **burgeneth**, *prs.*, 797 2.
- burgeis**, *sb.*, burgeſſ, 741 24;—O.F. *burgeis*.
- buryellys**, **buryels**, *sb. pl.*, the burial, 466 23; 851 11;—A.S. *byrgels*. See **beryels**.
- buſſement**, *sb.*, ambuſh, 11 9;—O.F. *en-buſchement*. See **enbuſſement**.
- butte**, *sb.*. See **bott**.
- button**, *sb.*, 755 27; ? bottom, A.S. *botm*, or ? equal to “button,” ſcab of a wound, Fr. *bouton*.
- but yf**, = unleſs, 52 2; 91 18; 471 15; 514 14.
- by cauſe**, *conj.*, because;—A.S. *be* and Lat. *cauſa*.
- by happe**, *adv.*, by chance;—A.S. *be* and Icel. *happ*.
- byheſte**, **biheſte**, **beheſt**, *sb.*, promiſe, 1 22; **byheſtes**, 361 6; 759 16;—A.S. *behés*.
- bylde**, *v.*, to build; **bylded**, *p.p.*, 169 38;—? A.S. *bold*.
- byleue**, *v.*, to believe; *inf.*, 3 36;—A.S. *ge-lýfan*.
- byleue**, *sb.*, belief, 760 4.
- by lowe**, *prep.*, below, 110 3;—A.S. *be*, *bi*, and Icel. *lágr*.
- bynde**, *v.*, to bind; **bond**, *pt.*, 787 36; **bounden**, *p.p.*, 691 18;—A.S. *bindan*.
- by nethe**, *prep.*, beneath, 614 23;—A.S. *beneoðan*.
- byſeche**, *v.*, beſeech, implore, requeſt; *prs.*, 760 10; **byſechynge**, *p.prs.*, 3 24; 78 34;—from A.S. *bi* and *sécan*, *sécean*.
- byſſhopryche**, *sb.*, biſhopric, 860\* 21;—A.S. *biscop* and *rice*.
- byte**, *v.*, to bite; **bytynge**, *p.prs.*, 125 24; **boot**, *pt.*, 104 25;—A.S. *bítan*.
- bywaryd**, *p.p.*, = too good, 246 18; *figurative uſe of to beware = to ſpend*.
- by yonde**, *prep.*, beyond, 207 1; **beyonde**, 2 33;—A.S. *be-* and *geond*.
- caas**, *sb.*, caſe, chance, circumſtance, 374 18; 730 27;—Lat. *caſum* (acc.), O.F. *cas*.
- caban**, *sb.*, ſmall room, cloſet, cabin, 135 1;—O.F. *cabane*.
- cankeryd**, *p.p.*, corrupted, 842 1;—O.F. *cancere*, Lat. *cancer*.
- canne**, *v.*, to know, to be able; **conne**, *inf.*, 176 34; 820 22; **canne**, *firſt pers. pres.*, 501 1;

- canst**, *second pers.*, 209 13; **ye con**, *prs.*, 269 22; **coude** *it, pt.*, 457 36; **coutho**, *pt.*, 279 8; **coude**, *pt.*, 3 5; 377 5;—A.S. *cunnan*.
- cantel**, *sb.*, piece, bit, edge, 58 20; 71 25;—O.F. *cantel*.
- capytayn**, *sb.*, captain; **captayn**, 175 32;—O.F. *capitain*.
- carre**, *sb.*, cart, carriage, 175 7.
- carryks**, *sb. pl.*, small ships, 841 9 (ed. of 1634 has *caraks*).
- carue**, *v.*, to carve, to cut; **carf**, *pt.*, 55 10; **carfe**, *pt.*, 58 20;—A.S. *ceorfan*.
- causer**, **causar**, *sb.*, author, he who causes something, 209 28; 269 21; 762 7;—Lat. *causa*.
- caytyf**, *sb. and adj.*, wretch, miserable captive, 753 27;—O.F. *caitif*.
- cedle**, *sb.*, a small leaf of paper containing some writing, schedule, 842 6; **sedyl**, 842 22;—O.F. *schedule*.
- censer**, *sb.*, censer, pan in which incense is burned, 573 5; **senser**, 549 18;—Lat. *incensorium*.
- cere**, *v.*, to cover with wax; *inf.*, 174 22; **cered**, *p.p.*, shrouded in waxed cloth, 174 22; 857\* 26;—Lat. *cerare*.
- certaynte**, *sb.*, certainty, certitude, 750 20; **certeynte**, 511 34; **certente**, 851 1;—O.F. *certainte*.
- chaas**, **chace**, *sb.*, hunting, pursuit, hunting-ground, 174 7; 526 32;—O.F. *chace*.
- chace**, *v.*, to hunt; **chacynge**, *p.prs.*, 210 3;—O.F. *chacer*.
- chacer**, *sb.*, hunter, 435 11.
- chafed**, *p.p.*, 653 26. See **chauffe**.
- chaflet**, *sb.*, a small stage, platform, 844 1;—dimin. of O.F. *chafaut*.
- challenge**, *v.*, to accuse, claim, charge; **chalengyd**, *pt.*, 401 6;—O.F. *challenger*.
- chambre**, *sb.*, chamber, 572 1;—A.F. *chambre*.
- champayn**, **champayne**, *sb. and adj.*, field, level country, 53 11; 170 6;—A.F. *champaigne*.
- chappel**, *sb.*, chapel, 495 29;—A.F. *chapele*.
- chappytre**, **chapytre**, *sb.*, chapter, 2 15, 16; 4 32, 34;—O.F. *chapitre*.
- charbuncle**, *sb.*, carbuncle, precious stone, 176 9;—O.F. *carbuncle*.
- charge**, *sb.*, load, responsibility, impressive command, 35 25;—A.F. *charge*.
- charyot**, *sb.*, chariot, 760 27;—O.F. *chariot*.
- charyte**, *sb.*, charity, 635 19;—A.F. *charite*, O.F. *caritet*.
- chastysement**, *sb.*, chastisement, 627 18;—deriv. of O.F. *chastier*.
- chastyte**, *sb.*, chastity, purity, 663 20;—O.F. *chasteit*.
- chaundeler**, *sb.*, candlestick, 638 5 (on the same page, line 17, occurs **candelstyk**);—O.F. *chandelier*.
- chauffe**, *v.*, to heat, to become hot; *inf.*, 174 28; **chauffed**, *p.p.*, 742 33; **chafed**, *p.p.*, 653 26;—O.F. *chauffer*.
- chayer**, *sb.*, chair, stool, seat, 91 34; 629 24;—O.F. *chaiere*.
- chere**, *sb.*, face, time, treatment; **what chere**, 108 26; **straunge chere**, 231 16; **good chere**, 143 33; **heuy chere**, 640 15;—A.F. *chere*.
- cherete**, *sb.*, charity, love, friendship, 518 34; **chyerte**, 621 23; 816 6;—O.F. *cherte*. See also **charyte**.
- chese**, *v.*, to choose; *imperat.*, 296 5;—A.S. *céosan*.
- cheualer du charyot**, the knight of the chariot; **cheualer malfet**, *i.e.*, *le chevaler qui a mal fait*;—surnames of syr Launcelot.
- child**, *sb.*, child, child of a noble, young knight, page; **childis**, *gen. sing.*, 37 3; 38 11; 775 16; **chyl-dren**, *pl.*, 1 21;—A.S. *cild*.
- chirche**, *sb.*, church, 40 19;—A.S. *cyrce*.
- chirche**, *v.*, to perform with any one the giving of thanks in church; **chirched**, *p.p.*, 575 31;—from A.S. *cyrce*.
- chircheyerd**, *sb.*, churchyard, 628 16;—Icel. *kirkju-garðr*.
- chorle**, *sb.*, peasant, ruffian, 62 21; 70 23; 519 8;—A.S. *ceorl*.
- chyef**, *sb. and adj.*, chief, head, upper part, principal; 1 9; 3 7; 176 9;—A.F. *chief*.

- chyerte**, *sb.* See **cherete**.
- chyualry**, *sb.*, chivalry, the knights of Christendom, 47 22; **chyualryes**, *pl.*, knightly acts, valiant deeds, 3 21, 30;—A.F. *chivalrie*.
- clater**, *v.*, to make a rattling noise, to clatter; *inf.*, 582 26; **clatered**, *pt.*, 582 29.—Compare A.S. *clatrung*.
- cleche**, *v.*, to seize, grasp; **cley3te**, *pt.*, 185 17;—?
- clene**, *adj.* and *adv.*, clean, entirely; **clene armed**, 638 35; **clene out of his mynde**, 585 2; **clene of her lyf**, 40 15; 611 10;—A.S. *cléne*.
- clennes**, *sb.*, purity, cleanness, 672 6;—A.S. *cléennes*.
- clepe**, *v.*, to call; **cleped**, *p.p.*, 347 19; 722 15;—A.S. *cleopian*.
- clerenes**, *sb.*, brightness, clearness, 707 33;—A.F. *cler*, with A.S. term. *-nes*, *-nyssse*.
- cleue**, *v.*, to split asunder, cleave; **clauē**, *pt.*, 93 4; **clafe**, *pt.*, 107 9;—A.S. *clifian*, *cleofian*.
- close**, *v.*, to close, enclose, cover; **close**, *p.p.*, 417 25;—A.F. *clos*.
- cloystre**, *sb.*, cloister, convent, monastery, 854 3;—A.F. *cloister*, O.F. *cloistre*.
- clubbe**, *sb.*, club; **clubbes**, *pl.*, 155 34; **clubbis**, *pl.*, 46 38;—Icel. *klubba*.
- clyff**, *sb.*, cliff, 700 30;—A.S. *clif*.
- clymbe**, *v.*, to climb; **clamme**, *pt.*, 208 32;—A.S. *climban*.
- clymber**, *sb.*, he who climbs, 208 27.
- clyppe**, *v.*, to clip, to shear; **clypped**, *pt.*, 366 20;—Icel. *klippa*.
- clyppe**, *v.*, to embrace; **clypped**, *p.p.*, 307 21; **clyppyng**, 150 35; **clyppynge**, 582 17;—A.S. *clyppan*.
- cofre**, *sb.*, box, coffer, 290 4;—A.F. *cofre*.
- cogges**, *sb. pl.*, cockboats, 164 30.
- cognoyssaunce**, **congyssaunce**, **cognoissaunce**, *sb.*, knowledge, indication, 260 4; 416 32; 529 26;—A.F. *conisaunce*.
- cole**, *sb.*, coal, charcoal, 694 16; **coles**, *pt.*, 140 1;—A.S. *col*.
- coller**, *sb.*, collar, 369 29;—O.F. *coler*.
- comberaunce**, *sb.*, encumbrance, 76 21;—O.F. *encombrer*.
- combred**, *p.p.*, embarrassed, 777 24;—O.F. *encombrer*.
- come**, *v.*, to come; *inf.*, 4 1; **come**, *pt.* (!), 38 26; 57 34; **came**, *pt.*, 5 18; 805 9; **comyn**, *p.p.*, 35 9; **comen**, *p.p.*, 280 34; **came**, *pt.*, 3 22; **comen**, *pl. prs.*, 425 27; 725 9; **come**, *p.p.*, 706 4; 804 4;—A.S. *cuman*.
- commaundemente**, *sb.*, order, commission, 848 36; **commaundementes**, *pl.*, 306 4; 323 24;—O.F. *comander*.
- compte**, *v.*, to count; *prs.*, 342 12;—O.F. *compter*.
- complisshe**, *v.*, complete, accomplish; **complissed**, *pp.*, 213 22. See **accomplysse**.
- comyn**, *adj.*, common, 727 3;—A.F. *commun*.
- comynal**, *adj.*, common, 155 9;—Lat. *communalem*.
- comyns**, *sb. pl.*, the commons, inhabitants, citizens, 41 4; 43 26; 46 38.
- comynycacyon**, *sb.*, communication, information, news, 13 10; 28 25; 33 23;—Lat. *communicationem*.
- conceyte**, *sb.*, conceit, 123 23;—Lat. *concupere*.
- conduyte**, *v.*, to lead, conduct; *inf.*, 465 12;—O.F. *conduire*.
- conduyte**, *sb.*, conduct, guidance, 108 34; 428 15;—O.F. *conduit*.
- conferme**, *v.*, to confirm; **confermed**, *pt.*, 575 30;—Lat. *confirmare*.
- conne**, *v.* See **canne**.
- connynge**, *sb.*, learning, knowledge, skill, 3 13;—A.S. *cumman*.
- conyes**, *sb. pl.*, coneys, rabbits, 387 12;—O.F. *conyn*, *conil*, A.F. *conyng*.
- coost**, *sb.*, rib, side of the human body, 110 4;—A.F. *coste*.
- cop**, *sb.*, cup, tankard, 234 9; **coupe**, 701 21;—A.F. *cupe*.
- coper**, *sb.*, copper, 184 37;—Late Lat. *cuprum* (*cyprium*).
- corde**, *v.*, to accord, agree; **cordyng**, *p.prs.*, 51 3;—O.F. *acorder*.
- coronacyon**, *sb.*, coronation, 44 1.
- corps**, *sb.*, body, corpse, 761 13; **cors** 857\* 16;—A.F. *cors*, *corps*.



- coste**, *sb.*, coast, 302 8;—O.F. *coste*.  
**coste**, *v.*, (hunting term) to keep in parallel course with the animal;  
**costed**, *pt.*, 764 19—? O.F. *coste*.  
**coste**, *sb.*, cost, expense; **costes**, *pl.*, 372 20;—A.F. *cust, coust*.  
**cote**, *sb.*, hut, cottage, 167 26;—A.S. *cot*.  
**cote**, *sb.*, garment, coat, 338 26; 672 21;—A.F. *cote*, O.F. *cotte*.  
**counceille**, *v.*, to consult, to deliberate together; *inf.*, 722 21.  
**counceyl, counceylle**, *sb.*, consultation, deliberation, plan, purpose, advice, 599 26; 600 32;—O.F. *conceil*.  
**counterfete**, *v.*, to counterfeit; *inf.*, 495 34; **counterfeet**, *p.p.*, 129 36;—from O.F. *countrefet, p.p.* of *countrefaire*.  
**countrey, countrey, countre**, *sb.*, the country, 138 26; 139 3; 244 23;—O.F. *contree*.  
**coupe**, *sb.* See *cop*.  
**courage**, *v.*, to encourage; *inf.*, 235 26;—O.F. *corage, courage*.  
**coure**, *v.*, to sit close together; *inf.*, 797 6 (W. de Worde has *cover*); 831 16; **coureth**, *prs.*, 607 4;—? W. *curian, cur*.<sup>1</sup>  
**cours**, *sb.*, course, 97 9; 415 31;—A.F. *cours*.  
**courser**, *sb.*, a steed, 134 20;—A.F. *coursier*.  
**courtelage**, *sb.*, garden, courtyard, 153 11; 668 17.  
**couenaunt**, *sb.*, a covenant, 317 22;—A.F. *covenant*.  
**couerte**, *sb.*, shelter, defence, 197 9.  
**couyn**, *sb.*, conspiracy, craft, deceit, trickery, 633 29;—A.F. *covine*.  
**cowardyse**, *sb.*, cowardice, 429 31;—O.F. *couardie*.  
**coyfe**, *sb.*, coif, cap, 283 23; 689 23;—O.F. *coife, coiffe*.  
**cracke**, *sb.*, crag, rock; **crackys**, *pl.*, 326 24;—W. *craig*.  
**craft**, *sb.*, might, power, craft, deceit, 88 31;—A.S. *craft*.  
**creast**, *sb.*, crest, summit, 167 31;—O.F. *creste*.  
**creatoure**, *sb.*, creator, 759 38;—O.F. *creatour*.  
**creature**, *sb.*, creature, being, 764 4.  
**credence**, *sb.*, belief, faith, 162 31;—O.F. *credence*.  
**creme**, *sb.*, the sacred oil used in anointing, chrism, 403 16;—O.F. *creme*.  
**crofte**, *sb.*, an underground cell or chapel, 716\* 18;—Lat. *crypta*.  
**croke**, *v.*, to bend, to turn aside; **croked**, *p.p.*, 563 10;—Icel. *krókr*.  
**croppe**, *sb.*, crupper, hinder part of a horse, 82 12; **croupe**, 298 4;—O.F. *crope*.  
**crowpers**, *sb. pl.*, plates covering the horse's crupper, or straps of leather fastened to the saddle and passing under the horse's tail to keep the saddle in its place, 238 2.  
**cryppyl**, *sb.*, cripple, 721 38;—deriv. from A.S. *créopan*.  
**crysten**, *adj.* and *sb.*, Christian, 1 9; 1 11; 585 11; *v.*, to christen; *inf.*, 39 9; **crystend, crystened**, *p.p.*, 490 2, 3, 5; **vnocrystned**, *p.p.*, 38 26;—A.S. *cristnian*.  
**culpaple**, *adj.*, guilty, 784 16;—O.F. *culpaple*.  
**cure hardy, le**, surname of a knight Ozanna, meaning *le cœur hardi*, the courageous heart.  
**curroure**, *sb.*, runner, courier, 344 6;—O.F. *courrier*.  
**cursydnes**, *sb.*, malice, wickedness, 198 11;—deriv. from A.S. *cursian*.  
**curteyn**, *sb.*, curtain; **courtayns**, *pl.*, 783 6;—O.F. *courtine*.  
**curteys**, *adj.*, courteous, 109 14; **curtest**, *superl.*, 860\* 4; **moost curteyst**, 394 29;—A.F. *curteis*.  
**curtoyse, curtosye**, *sb.*, courtesy, 3 31; 16 32; **curtosy**, 831 14;—A.F. *curteisie*.  
**cusshyn**, *sb.*, cushion, 790 15;—O.F. *coissin*.  
**daffysh**, *adj.*, shy, modest, foolish, 409 10;—?

<sup>1</sup> The Welsh word *curian* has generally the sense of sitting in a corner through fear, as, e.g., 831 27; but 797 6 and 607 4 the sense seems to be that of the Modern French word *roucouler*.

- dale**, *sb.*, dale, valley; **dales**, *pl.*, 243 29;—A.S. *dæl*.  
**moysel, damoisel**, *sb.*, damsel, 73 3, 4;—A.F. *damoysele*.  
**dampne**, *v.*, condemn, sentence; **dampned**, *pt.*, 656 23; *p.p.*, 275 36; 683 5;—O.F. *damner*.  
**re**, *v.*, to dare; **dar**, *first pers.*, 61 21; **darste**, *second pers. pres.*, 505 18; **durste**, *pt.*, 51 27; 278 22; 466 32;—A.S. *dear*.  
**dastard**, *sb.*, a coward, 344 4.—*Compare* Skeat, Dict.  
**daunynge**, *sb.*, dawning, 566 10; 781 35.  
**dawe**, *v.*, to become day; it dawyd, 691 13;—A.S. *dagian*.  
**dawe**, *v.*, to moisten, sprinkle with cold water; **dawed**, *pt.*, 585 18;—from A.S. *déaw*.  
**debate**, *sb.*, strife, discord, 440 11; 761 30;—A.F. *debat*.  
**debonair**, *adj.*, mild, gentle, 694 18;—O.F. *debonaire*.  
**deceyuable**, *adj.*, deceitful, 519 2.  
**dede**, *sb.*, deed; **dedes**, *pl.*, 87 31; **dedys**, *pl.*, 838 13;—A.S. *déd* (*dééd*).  
**dede**, *adj.*, dead, 82 4; 715\* 33; **deed**, 847 15;—A.S. *déad*.  
**defade**, *v.* See *dyffade*.  
**defame**, *v.*, to spread about a rumour, to slander; **defamed**, *p.p.*, 731 34;—A.F. *diffamer*.  
**deffaulte, deffaute, defaulte, defaute**, *sb.*, defect, fault, 108 26; 480 19; 609 2; 785 3, 5;—A.F. *defaute*.  
**deffende**, *v.*, to defend, protect, forbid; **deffended**, *pt.*, 836 28; **defenden**, *prs. plural*, 632 25;—A.F. *defendre*.  
**defowle**, *v.*, to tread down, rebuke; **defowled**, *p.p.*, 141 28; **defoyled**, *p.p.*, 77 1;—O.F. *defouler*.  
**defye**, *v.*, to defy, mistrust; **defyen**, *prs. pl.*, 632 24;—A.F. *defier*.  
**degree**, *sb.*, (1) degree, price, distinction, 420 37; 513 3; (2) different classes of a people; **degrees**, *pl.*, 394 17;—O.F. *degre, degret*.  
**dele**, *sb.*, deal, share, 36 33; 834 4;—A.S. *dæl*.  
**dele**, *v.*, to deal, share, divide; **dalte**, *pt.*, 855 13;—A.S. *dælan*.  
**delyte**, *sb.*, delight, 726 32; **delytes**, *pl.*, 247 26;—O.F. *dehit*.  
**demene**, *v.*, to manage, to behave; **demenyd hym**, *pt.*, 23 7;—O.F. *demener*.  
**demene**, *sb.*, power, possession; **demens**, *pl.*, 673 28;—O.F. *demeine*.  
**demure**, *adj.*, sober, modest, staid, 613\* 14;—O.F. *de murs, meurs*.  
**departycon**, *sb.*, departure, 397 11; 621 7;—deriv. of O.F. *departir*.  
**dere**, *v.*, to harm; *inf.*, 61 21;—A.S. *derian*.  
**dere**, *adj.*, dear, beloved, 61 16;—A.S. *déore*.  
**dere**, *sb.*, deer, wild animal, 519 16;—A.S. *déor*.  
**derke**, *adj.*, dark, 116 15; 687 33;—A.S. *deorc*.  
**descryue**, *v.*, to describe, relate; *inf.*, 412 1;—O.F. *descriure*.  
**desdayne**, *sb.*, contempt, disdain, 727 4;—A.F. *dedeigne*, O.F. *desdein*.  
**desert**, *sb.*, merit, 726 11;—A.F. *deserte*.  
**deserte**, *sb.*, desert, waste land, 708 17;—from Lat. *desertus*.  
**desguyse**, *v.*, to disguise; **desguysed**, *p.p.*, 767 29; **dysguysed**, *p.p.*, 767 30;—A.F. *degiser*, O.F. *desguiser*.  
**desmaye**, *v.*, to dismay; *imperat.*, 38 12, 22; **desmayed**, *p.p.*, 132 26; **dysmayed**, *p.p.*, 388 24;—O.F. *esmaier*.  
**despoyle**, *v.*, to despoil, strip; **despoyled**, 466 23; **dispoyled**, 231 20; 657 20;—O.F. *despoiller*.  
**desteynye**, *sb.*, destiny, 846 38;—deriv. from O.F. *destiner*.  
**dethe**, *sb.*, death, 564 15;—A.S. *déap*.  
**deure**, *adj.*, hard, 410 25;—O.F. *deure*.  
**deuoyr, deuoyre**, *sb.*, devoir, knightly duty, 251 5; 829 10;—O.F. *devoir*.  
**deuyse**, *v.*, arrange, order, decide; **deuysed**, *pt.*, 39 1;—A.F. *deviser*.  
**deye**, *v.*, to die; *inf.*, 224 14;—Icel. *deyja*, O.S. *dóran*.  
**deyntee**, *sb.*, a delicacy, worth, pleasure, 161 5;—O.F. *daintie, devntet*.  
**deyse**, *sb.*, dais, platform in a hall, 213 30;—O.F. *deis*.

- dictatour**, *sb.*, dictator, one invested for a time with absolute authority, 160 8;—Lat. *dictator*.
- discomforte**, *v.*, trouble, discomfort; *imp.*, 804 11;—O.F. *desconforter*.
- discomfortune**, *sb.*, 56 38;—? for **discomfyture**.
- discomfyte**, *v.*, to defeat, to put to flight; **discomfyte**, *p.p.*, 57 36; 74 23; **discomfyt**, *p.p.*, 626 4; 639 18; **discomfyted**, *p.p.*, 86 3; **discomfyte**, *p.p.*, 766 26; 693 15; **scomfyte**, *p.p.*, 146 38;—O.F. *desconfire*.
- discomfyture**, *sb.* See **dyscomfyture**.
- disparple**, *v.*, to scatter, or to become scattered; **disparplyd**, *p.p.*, 798 24; **disperplyd**, *p.p.*, 164 3;—O.F. *desparpillier*.
- displeasyre**, *sb.*, displeasure, anger, cause of irritation, 367 29; 541 34;—O.F. *desplaisir*.
- disseuer**, *v.*, to separate; **disseuered**, *pt.*, 611 27;—A.F. *deseverer*.
- distourble**, *v.*, to disturb, trouble; **distourbled**, *p.p.*, 566 13;—O.F. *tourbler*.
- disworship**, *sb.*, shame, disgrace, 105 3;—*dis* and A.S. *weorðscipe*.
- dobblet**, *sb.*, doublet, 467 16; 679 32; **dobblett**, 468 26;—O.F. *doublet*.
- doctryne**, *sb.*, instruction, doctrine, 3 38;—Lat. *doctrina*.
- dole**, *sb.*, charity, dole, share, portion, 853 11;—A.S. *dál*.
- dole**, *sb.*, grief, pain, sorrow, 94 14; 421 23;—O.F. *doel*, *duel*.
- domage**, *sb.*, damage, loss, 59 5; **dammage**, 59 5; 72 8; **dommagis**, *pl.*, 56 23;—O.F. *domage*.
- dome**, *sb.*, doom; **day of dome**, 709 34;—A.S. *dóm*.
- domme**, *adj.*, dumb, 451 33;—A.S. *dumb*.
- doon**, *v.*, to do, put, make, cause; *inf.*, 3 19; **doth**, *prs.*, 759 20; **doon**, *p.p.*, 11 16; **dyd**, *pt.*, 65 12; 753 31; **done**, *p.p.*, 343 8; **doo**, *imperat.*, 3 33;—A.S. *dón*.
- dote**, *v.*, to dote, to be foolish; **doted**, *p.p.*, 505 26.
- dottage**, *sb.*, dotage, a doting, excessive fondness, childishness of old age, 118 26.
- doubel**, *adj.*, double, 95 34;—O.F. *doble*, *double*.
- doughty**, *adj.*, brave, valiant, 189 36; **doughtely**, *adv.*, 220 28;—A.S. *dyhtig*.
- douue**, *sb.*, the dove, pigeon, 573 4;—Icel. *dúfa*, O.S. *dúba*.
- dower**, *sb.*, dower, 181 14;—A.F. *douayre*.
- drede**, *sb.*, dread, fear, terror, 209 32; 436 9.
- drede**, *v.*, to dread, to fear; *prs.*, 745 29; **dredde**, *pt.*, 209 33; 670 7; 784 9; **dradde**, *pt.*, 311 37; 687 15; 775 14; **drad**, *pt.*, 492 29; 784 4;—A.S. (*on-*)*drædan*.
- drededeful**, *adj.*, dreadful, 709 34.
- drenche**, *v.*, to drown; **drenched**, *p.p.*, 652 18;—A.S. *drencean*.
- dretche**, *v.*, (1) to vex, oppress, torment; (2) to dream, to be disturbed by dreams; **dretched**, *p.p.*, 803 31; **dretchyng**, *p.prs.*, 859\* 7;—A.S. *dreccan*.
- dretenchid**, *pt.*, 171 24; ? for **detrenchid**, from **detrenche**, *v.*, to cut to pieces;—O.F. *detrancher*.
- drinke**, *v.*, to drink; **drank**, *pt.*, 759 35; **dronke**, *pt.*, 494 28; **dronken**, *pt.*, 15 35; **dronken**, *p.p.*, 574 13;—A.S. *drincan*.
- dromounde**, *sb.*, dromedary, Arabian camel; **dromoundes**, *pl.*, 164 30;—O.F. *dromedaire*.
- droupe**, *v.*, to droop, to be dismal, cast down; *inf.*, 831 19; **droupyng**, *p.prs.*, 354 7;—Icel. *drúpa*.
- dryue**, *v.*, to drive; **dryuend** (imperfect *part. pres.* for **dryuyng**), 223 7;—A.S. *drífan*.
- dubbe**, *v.*, to dub a knight by a stroke with the flat of a sword; *inf.*, 25 31; **dubbed**, *p.p.*, 12 32;—A.S. *dubban*.
- duc**, *sb.*, duke, 181 12;—O.F. *duc*.
- duche**, *adj.*, Dutch, 2 35.
- dure**, to last, to endure, *inf.*, 118 33;—A.F. *durer*.
- dwarf**, **dwurf**, *sb.*, a dwarf, 110 15, 21;—A.S. *dweorg*, *dweorh*.
- dwelle**, *v.*, to dwell, to rest, remain; *inf.*, 36 29; **dwelde**, *pt.*, 61 38;

- dwelid**, *pt.*, 763 35; **duelled**, *pt.*, 337 6;—A.S. *dwellan*, Icel. *dwelja*.
- dyffade**, *v.*, to fade away, to cause to fade; **dyffaded**, *p.p.*, 566 15; **defaded**, *p.p.*, 566 13.
- dyghte**, *v.*, to order, to rule, to prepare, adorn; **dyȝte**, *p.p.*, 93 24; **dyght**, *p.p.*, 186 24;—A.S. *dihtan*.
- dynte**, *sb.*, blow, stroke; **dyntes**, *pl.*, 593 11;—A.S. *dymt*.
- dyryge**, *sb.*, name of an anthem in the Mass for the Dead, beginning, in Latin, with the words, "Dirige, Dominus meus," 857\* 14.
- dyscomfyture**, *sb.*, defeat, 11 12;—A.F., *desconfiture*.
- dyshobeye**, *v.*, to disobey; *prs.*, 856\* 36;—O.F. *desobeir*.
- dysplese**, *v.*, to displease; *inf.*, 839 32;—O.F. *desplaisir*.
- dysport**, *sb.*, pleasure, recreation, mirth, 62 30; **disportes**, *pl.*, 800 21; **disporte**, *v. inf.*, to cheer, amuse, 327 9;—O.F. *se desporter*.
- dysseyue**, *v.*, to deceive; **dysseyued**, *p.p.*, 838 11;—O.F. *decever*, *decevoir*.
- echone**, *adj.*, each one, 202 23; **eche one**, 144 20; 497 3;—A.S. *élc án*.
- edder**, *sb.*, adder; **edders**, *pl.*, 579 11;—A.S. *nædre*.
- edgyd**, *p.p.*, edged, having borders, 426 10.—Compare A.S. *ecg*.
- eere**, *sb.*, the ear; **eerys**, *pl.*, 192 4; **erys**, *pl.*, 371 5;—A.S. *éare*.
- efte**, *adv.*, again, afterwards, 294 1; 479 17; 849 2;—A.S. *eft*.
- egre**, **egyr**, *adj.*, eager, fierce, sharp, 54 33; 71 16; **eygyrlye**, *adv.*, 837 25;—A.F. *egre*, O.F. *aigre*.
- elder**, **eldar**, *adj.*, *comparat.*, older, elder, 105 23; **elders**, *pl.*, ancestors, 135 15; **elthers**, *pl.*, 807 4;—*comparat.* of A.S. *eald*.
- ellys**, *adv.*, otherwise, else, 14 31;—A.S. *elles*.
- embassatour**, *sb.*, ambassador; **embassatours**, *pl.*, 160 7; 162 7;—O.F. *ambassadeur*.
- eme**, *sb.*, uncle, 280 7;—A.S. *éam*.
- emeraude**, *sb.*, emerald, 696 8;—O.F. *esmeraude*.
- emonge**, *prep.*, among, 1 10; 737 4;—A.S. *onmang*.
- enbatailled**, *p.p.*, ranged for battle, 173 2;—O.F. *en* and *bataille*.
- enbrace**, *v.*, to embrace; **embraced**, *pt.*, 444 33;—O.F. *embracer*.
- enbrayde**, *v.*, to wake up, to start, to twist, † to remind; **enbraydest**, *prs.*, 817 25;—A.S. *bregdan*.
- enbroudre**, *v.*, to embroider; **enbroudréd**, *p.p.*, 378 16; 747 6;—A.F. *embroyder*.
- enbushéd**, *p.p.*, taken in an ambush, 65 23; 125 20.
- enbushement**, *sb.*, ambush, 50 10; 53 17;—O.F. *embuscher*.
- enchauffe**, *v.*, to make hot, to heat; *inf.*, 752 7; **enchaufféd**, *p.p.*, 653 32; *pt.*, 677 30; **enchaféd**, *p.p.*, 649 10;—O.F. *enchauffer*.
- encheue**, **enchieue**, *v.*, to achieve, to perform, fulfil; *inf.*, 340 15; 794 6; **encheued**, *p.p.*, 42 34; *pt.*, 99 27. See also *achieue*.
- encline**, *v.*, incline; **enclynest**, *prs.*, 663 22; **enclynéd**, *p.p.*, 57 12;—O.F. *incliner*.
- encountre**, *v.*, encounter, meet, fight; *inf.*, 57 17; **encountred**, *pt.*, 342 14;—O.F. *encontrer*.
- enteded**, *p.p.*, having teeth, cut like a saw, notched, jagged, marked with inequalities like a row of teeth, 391 7; 396 21;—A.F. *endenter*.
- endlong**, **endlonge**, *adv.* and *prep.*, along, 193 11; 524 16;—A.S. *and lang*.
- ēne**, 147 10. ? corruption of *even*, as Wynkyn de Worde reads, which sometimes occurs in A.S., contracted *enm*.
- enele**, *v.*, to administer extreme unction; **enelyd**, *p.p.*, 858\* 27;—O.F. *en* and *oil*.
- enemytee**, *sb.*, enmity, 251 20;—O.F. *enamistiet*.
- enewe**, *v.*, to colour; **enewed with whyte**, 110 24;—A.S. *in* and *heow*.
- enfelaushippe**, *v.*, to associate with, to become one's fellow; *inf.*, 315 4.—Compare Icel. *félagi*.
- enforce**, *v.*, to endeavour, to strive;

- enforceth hym self, prs.**, 574 7; **enforce your self, imp.**, 756 30; 763 28;—O.F. *enforcer*.  
**enforme, v.**, to teach, to inform; **enformed, p.p.**, 193 33; **mysenformed, p.p.**, 78 29;—A.F. *enfourmer*.  
**engendre, v.**, to engender; *inf.*, 572 25;—O.F. *engendrer*.  
**engyne, engyn, sb.**, craft, device, engine, understanding, 440 13; 677 30;—A.F. *engin*.  
**enherytaunce, sb.**, inheritance, 467 32;—Lat. *in*, O.F. *heriter*, and term. *-ance*.  
**enherytour, sb.**, inheritor, person who inherits or may inherit, heir, 177 16;—Lat. *in*, *heritator*.  
**enleuen, numb.**, eleven, 53 7;—A.S. *endlufofn*, *endleofan*.  
**enoynt, v.**, to anoint; **ennoynted, p.p.**, 403 35; 821 16;—A.F. *enointer*.  
**enpayre, v.**, to make worse, injure; **enpayred, pt.**, 597 12;—O.F. *empeirer*.  
**enpoysonne, v.**, to poison; *inf.*, 728 33; **enpoysond, p.p.**, 728 32;—O.F. *enpoisoner*.  
**enprynte, v.**, to print; *inf.*, 1 8; **temprynte** = to emprynte, *inf.*, 1 34;—O.F. *empreindre*.  
**enquere, v.**, to inquire; *inf.*, 100 30;—O.F. *enquerre*, Lat. *inquirere*.  
**enquest, sb.**, enterprise, adventure, 16 37;—O.F. *enqueste*.  
**ensample, ensample, ensamble, sb.**, example, instance, 1 4; 76 32; 160 24;—A.F. *ensample*, *essample*.  
**ensiewe, v.**, to follow; *inf.*, 162 23;—O.F. *ensuire*.  
**enstraunge, v.**, to alienate, make strange; **enstraunged, 759 30**;—O.F. *estranger*.  
**ensure, v.**, to assure, insure; *inf.*, 205 19; 654 1;—O.S. *asseurer*.  
**entente, sb.**, intention, heed, purpose, 36 24; 95 30; also, contents, 761 28;—O.F. *entente*.  
**enterdyte, v.**, inderdict, excommunicate, to forbid communion; **enterdytynge, p.prs.**, 821 5;—Lat. *interdicere*.  
**entere, entiere, entyere, v.**, to inter, bury; *inf.*, 274 34; 419 28; 495 28; **entered, pt.**, 588 34; **enterid, p.p.**, 40 1;—O.F. *enterrer*.  
**entermete, v.**, to meet, to come together; *inf.*, 456 32;—A.F. *entre* and A.S. *métan*, O.S. *môtian*.  
**enterpryse, enterpryce, sb.**, enterprise, undertaking, 514 33; 515 4; **enterpryses, pl.**, 511 24;—O.F. *entreprise*.  
**enterpryse, emprise, enpryse, v.**, to undertake, to commence; **enprysed, p.p.**, 3 15; 4 13; **enterprysed, pt.**, 14 32; **emprised, pt.**, 16 37.  
**entiere, v.** See *entere*.  
**entiere, adj.**, entire, whole, 296 21;—O.F. *entier*.  
**entraylles, sb. pl.**, the entrails, 168 10;—A.F. *entraillles*.  
**entre, sb.**, entrance, 683 22; 710 9;—O.F. *entrer*.  
**entremedle, v.**, intermeddle, mingle; **entremedled, pt.**, 711 31;—O.F. *entremesler*.  
**entrete, sb.**, treaty, 37 29, 30;—Lat. *in* and O.F. *traiter*.  
**entyerement, sb.**, burial, interment, 7 33; **enterement, 88 18**;—A.F. *enterrement*.  
**escape, v.**, to escape; *inf.*, 461 20; **escaped, p.p.**, 461 37; **scape, inf.**, 92 33;—O.F. *escaper*, *eschaper*.  
**enuenyme, v.**, to envenom, poison; **enuenymed, p.p.**, 284 28; 327 24;—A.F. *envenimer*.  
**enuyronne aboute, adv.**, about, 628 12;—O.F. *environ*, A.S. *on-bútan*.  
**ermyn, sb.**, skin of ermine, animal of the weasel tribe, 616 15;—O.F. *ermine*.  
**ermytage, sb.**, hermitage, 850 9; **heremytage, 90 34**.  
**ermyte, sb.**, hermit, 72 31; **heremyte, 334 33**;—A.F. *eremite* (*heremite*).  
**erst, adv.**, formerly, first, 442 8; 463 28; 683 21;—A.S. *ærest*.  
**eschewe, v.**, to avoid, eschew; *inf.*, 726 1;—O.F. *eschever*, A.F. *eschuer*.  
**establysshe, v.**, to establish; **establysshed, pt.**, 182 14;—O.F. *establiss* from *establiir*. See *stablysshe*.  
**estate, sb.**, state; **estates, pl.**, ranks, classes, 311 14;—O.F. *estat*.

- estures**,<sup>1</sup> *sb. pl.* (Caxton reads *estures*), (1) being, nature; (2) the inner part of a house, chambers (for *estres*), 784 3;—O.F. *estre*.
- eure**, *sb.*, use, custom, 59 7.
- euen**, *sb.*, evening, 40 15; 435 17;—A.S. *æfen*, *éfen*.
- eueryche**, *adj.*, every one, every, 144 27; 145 4;—A.S. *æfre* + *ælc*.
- euerychone**, *adj.*, every one, 186 12;—A.S. *æfre* + *ælc* + *án*.
- euyñ**, *adv.*, even, equal, 849 25;—A.S. *efen*, *efn*.
- expense**, *sb.*, expense, cost, 518 20; **expencys**, *pl.*, 585 24;—from Lat. *expendere*.
- expowne**, *v.*, to expound, interpret; **expowned**, *p.p.*, 27 16; *pt.*, 27 35;—Lat. *exponere*, O.F. *expondre*.
- eyder**, *adj.*, either, 313 21;—A.S. *ægper*.
- eye**, *sb.*, eye; **eyen**, *pl.*, 112 9; 435 28;—A.S. *éage*.
- eygyrlye**, *adv.*, eagerly. See **eger**.
- eyle**, *v.*, to trouble, afflict, hurt; **eyleth**, *prs.*, 407 2; 511 19;—A.S. *eqlan*.
- facyon**, *sb.*, shape, fashion; **facyons**, *pl.*, 692 17;—O.F. *fason*, *façon*.
- fadom**, *sb.*, fathom, 847 9;—A.S. *fæðm*.
- faille**, *v.*, to fail; *inf.*, 42 28; **faylled**, *pt.*, 42 9; **failed**, *pt.*, 57 29;—A.F. *faillir*.
- falle**, *sb.*, fall; **fallys**, *pl.*, 477 5;—from A.S. *feallan*.
- falle**, *v.*, to fall; **fell**, *pt.*, 43 3; **falle**, *prs.*, 3 38; **fyl**, **fylle**, **felle**, *pt.*, 30 11; 71 16; 93 31; 122 4; 847 15; **falle**, *p.p.*, 93 35; **fallen**, *pl. prs.*, 213 17; **fallen**, *p.p.*, 625 25;—A.S. *feallan*.
- fantasye**, *sb.*, fancy, imagination, 285 33;—O.F. *fantasie*.
- fare**, *v.*, to go, fare, behave; **ferd**, *prs.*, 56 12; 536 18; **farne**, *p.p.*, 595 9; **farynge**, *p.prs.*, 289 10; **faren**, *p.p.*, 235 34;—A.S. *faran*.
- faucon**, *sb.*, falcon, 208 32;—A.F. *faucon*.
- faute**, *v.*, to fail, to be wanting, to stammer; **faute**, *prs.*, 101 5; **fauted**, *pt.*, 388 23;—Lat. *fallere*. Compare O.F. *faite*.
- faueour**, *sb.*, favour, 338 2;—O.F. *faueur*.
- fay**, *sb.*, fay, fairy, person endowed with supernatural powers (surname of Morgan, king Arthur's sister);—O.F. *faë* (*fee*).
- fayne**, *v.*, to feign; **fayned**, *p.p.*, 2 7; 403 31;—A.F. *feindre*.
- fayter**, *sb.*, impostor, vagabond, pretender, 87 14;—O.F. *faitour*.
- feale**, *v.*, to feel; **feale**, *prs.*, 360 29; **felte**, *pt.*, 611 6;—A.S. *fēlan*.
- feaute**, *sb.*, track, trace, 205 1; 764 26;—? O.F. *feute*.
- feaute**, *sb.*, fealty, fidelity, the oath sworn by the vassal to be faithful to his feudal lord, 227 26; 437 37; **fealte**, 181 32;—O.F. *fealte*.
- feble**, *v.*, to become weak, to make weak; **febled**, *pt.*, 142 38; 759 36;—from O.F. *feble*, *foible*.
- fede**, *v.*, to feed; **fedde**, *p.p.* and *pt.*, 717 34;—A.S. *fēdan*.
- feest**, *sb.*, feast, festival, 401 4; 417 14; **fest**, 44 24; **feste**, 44 36;—A.F. *feste*.
- felaushyppe**, *v.*, to associate; **felaushypped**, *pt.*, 352 23;—Icel. *felagi*, A.S. *scipe*. Compare **enfelaushyppe**.
- felle**, *v.*, to fell; **feld**, *p.p.*, 204 27; **felyd**, *p.p.*, 97 17, 27; 836 12;—A.S. *fellan*.
- felon**, *sb.*, traitor, villain, 550 30;—A.F. *felon*, *feloun*.
- felonsly**, **fellonysly**, *adv.*, feloniously, cruelly, disgracefully, 453 10; 455 5; 504 22.
- felyshyp**, *sb.*, fellowship, company, 840 30;—Icel. *felagi*, A.S. *scipe*.
- fende**, *sb.*, enemy, fiend, 136 11; 655 7;—A.S. *fēond*.
- fer**, *adj.* and *adv.*, far, 135 12; 832 23; **ferre**, 303 15; **ferther**, *comparat.*, 273 30;—A.S. *feorr*, O.S. *fer*.
- ferdful**, *adj.*, frightful, terrible, timid;—A.S. *fēor* and *ful*.
- ferē**, *sb.*, fear, 590 3;—A.S. *fēor*.
- ferē**, *v.*, to terrify, to frighten, fear;

<sup>1</sup> Compare Walter W. Skeat's notes to Chaucer's "Legend of Good Women," p. 175.

- ferre**, *prs.*, 237 30; 409 15; **feryd**, *pt.*, 400 32;—A.S. *færan*.  
**ferhewen**, *p.p.* hewn, beaten, 238 29;—A.S. *for* and *hedwan*.  
**fete**, *sb.*, deed, knightly feat; **fetya**, *pl.*, 641 36; **feates**, *pl.*, 1 38;—O.F. *fet*, *fait*.  
**fette**, *v.*, to fetch; **fette**, *pt.*, 65 22; **fette**, *p.p.*, 101 4; **fetche**, *imperat.*, 103 13; **fetche**, *prs.*, 93 10;—A.S. *fetian*.  
**feutre**, *v.*, to put a spear into its rest; **feutryd**, *pt.*, 202 20; 433 17.  
**fewter**, *sb.*, the rest for a spear, 185 13;—O.F. *feutre*.  
**feyster**, *v.*, fester, to corrupt or rankle, suppurate, become malignant; *inf.*, 788 31. See Skeat, Dict.  
**feyth**, **feythe**, *sb.*, faith, 63 28 (by the feythe of our bodyes); 519 27;—O.F. *fei*, *feid*.  
**feythful**, *adj.*, faithful, 149 23.  
**flacked**, *sb.*, flask, bottle, 309 29;—O.F. *flasque*.  
**flagan**, *sb.*, drinking vessel with a narrow neck, flagon; **flagans**, *pl.*, 234 4;—O.F. *flacon*.  
**flatlynge**, *adv.*, flat, 321 24; 736 7;—Icel. *flatr* and A.S. *ling*.  
**flay**, *v.*, to skin, to cut off in flags; **flayne**, *p.p.*, 74 27;—A.S. *fledn*.  
**flee**, *v.*, to fly, flee; **fledde**, *pt.*, 73 27; **flay**, *pt.*, 689 13;—A.S. *fléogan*, *fléon*.  
**fleme**, *v.*, to put to flight; **flemyd**, *p.p.*, 635 8; 828 13;—A.S. *fléman*.  
**flesshe**, *sb.*, flesh; but also meat, 658 10;—A.S. *flésc*.  
**flete**, *v.*, to float, swim; **fletyng**, *p.prs.*, 614 28;—A.S. *fléotan*.  
**flore**, *v.*, to flower, flourish; **floreth**, *prs.*, 771 20;—O.F. *florir*.  
**florysshe**, *v.*, to flourish, to cause to prosper; also, to brandish a weapon; **floryssheth**, *pl. prs.*, 771 4; **floryssheth**, *prs.*, 771 6;—O.F. *floriss-*, from *florir*.  
**flynge**, *v.*, to send forth, fling, rush; *inf.*, 589 11;—? Swedish *flänga*.  
**folye**, *sb.*, folly, 2 12; **foly**, 121 36;—A.F. *folie*.  
**foolysshe**, *adj.*, foolish, lustful, silly, 505 6;—O.F. *fol* with A.S. suff. *-lic*.  
**for**, i. *prep.*, for, by, in spite of, for fear of; ii. *conj.*, because, in order that; iii. *prefix*—(1) having the sense of destruction, loss = A.S. *for-*; (2) replacing *before* = A.S. *fore*; (3) replacing the *prep. for*; (4) standing for O.F. *for-*, Lat. *foris*.  
**forbere**, *v.*, to forbear; **forborne**, *p.p.*, 347 7;—A.S. *for-beran*.  
**forblede**, *v.*, to bleed, to lose blood  
**forbledde**, *pt.*, 463 23; **forbled**, *p.p.*, 350 26;—A.S. *for-* and *blédan*.  
**force**, *sb.*, force, matter, consequence; no force, it matters not, 72 35; I take no force, 79 17; 762 36; 775 6;—A.F. *force*.  
**fordele**, *sb.*, advantage, 173 33.  
**forder**, *v.*, to advance, promote, further; **fordered**, *pt.*, 229 34;—A.S. *fyrðran*.  
**fordo**, *v.*, to destroy, perish; **fordyd**, *pt.*, 99 3; **fordone**, *p.p.*, 334 32;—A.S. *fordón*.  
**fore cast**, *sb.*, that which is contrived beforehand, 805 14;—A.S. *fore*, Icel. *kasta*.  
**foreye**, *v.*, to forage; **foreyeng**, *p.prs.*, 175 30;—O.F. *forager*.  
**foreyn**, **forayn**, *adj.*, foreign, strange, 573 1, 22;—O.F. *forain*.  
**foreyst**, **forest**, *sb.*, forest, wood, 51 15; 60 28;—O.F. *forest*.  
**forfende**, *v.*, to defend, forbid; *prs.*, 727 8; **forfendyd**, *p.p.*, 727 13;—A.S. *for* and O.F. (*de*) *fendre*.  
**forfette**, *sb.*, forfeit, crime, 695 22;—O.F. *forfet*, *forfait*.  
**forfetur**, *sb.*, forfeiture, 39 38; 302 29;—O.F. *forfetur*.  
**forfichte**, *v.*, to tire by fighting, to weaken; **forfoughten**, *p.p.*, 87 25; 105 35;—A.S. *for* and *fēohtan*.  
**forgets**, *v.*, to forget; *inf.*, 381 16; **forgeten**, *p.p.*, 380 16; 840 34; **forgeten**, *pl. prs.*, 726 17;—A.S. *forgitan*.  
**forgiue**, *v.*, to forgive; **forgaf**, *pt.*, 43 32;—A.S. *for* and *gifan*. Compare *foryeue*.  
**forhede**, **forheed**, *sb.*, forehead, 333 9; 648 19.  
**foriusted**, *p.p.*, unable to fight any longer, exhausted, 323 35; 421 30;—A.S. *for* and O.F. *adjouster*.

- forland**, *sb.*, foreland, cape, a point of land running into the sea, 167 4;—Icel. *forlendi*.
- forlonge**, *sb.*, *adj.*, a furrow long, or the length of a furrow, forty poles, the eighth part of a mile, 166 25; **furlonge**, 354 13;—A.S. *furh*, (the furrow) + *lang*.
- formest**, *adj. superl.*, first, foremost, 342 31; 347 9;—A.S. *fyrmost*.
- forsothe**, **forsoth**, *adv.*, truly, indeed, 531 5; 645 35;—A.S. *for* and *sôð*.
- forswere**, *v.*, to forswear; **for-sworne**, *p.p.*, 150 14;—A.S. *for-swerian*.
- forth**, *adv.*, forth, henceforth, throughout; **forth dayes** = far advanced in the day, 804 19;—A.S. *forð*.
- forthynke**, *v.*, to repent; *inf.*, 711 11; **me forthynketh**, *prs.*, 82 2; 643 12; **forthoughte**, *pt.*, 712 31;—A.S. *forþymcan*.
- fortune**, *v.*, to happen, to make fortunate; **hit fortunad**, *pt.*, 213 2; 364 21;—from O.F. *fortune*.
- forwounded**, *p.p.*, desperately wounded, 350 26;—A.S. *for* and *wundian*.
- foryeue**, *v.*, to forgive; *inf.*, 79 32; **foryaf**, *pt.*, 43 32;—A.S. *forgifan*.
- foryeuenes**, *sb.*, forgiveness, 251 14; 563 19.
- foster**, *sb.*, nourishment; **foster broder**, a male child, fostered or brought up with another of different parents, 42 29; *comp.* **nourished broder**, 41 10;—A.S. *fôstor*.
- foster**, *sb.*, forester, one who inhabits a forest, or has the charge of it, 671 28;—O.F. *forestier*.
- fostre**, *v.*, to foster, support; **fo-tred**, *p.p.*, 250 23;—A.S. *fostrian*.
- fourde**, *sb.*, ford, passage, course, 184 35;—A.S. *ford*.
- fourme**, *v.*, to form; **fourmed**, *p.p.*, 324 17;—O.F. *former*.
- foyle**, *v.*, to tread down, to trampel on; **foyled**, *p.p.*, 771 27;—O.F. *fouler*, *foler*.
- foyne**, *sb.*, a foin, thrust, prick, 248 7; 847 9; **foynes**, *pl.*, 351 19;—O.F. *fouine*.
- foyne**, *v.*, to thrust, to beat with a sword; **foynynge**, *p.prs.*, 217 33; O.F. *fouine* (see Littré).
- franceis**, *sb.*, freedom, liberality, prerogative, 334 35;—A.F. *fran-chise*.
- frende**, *sb.*, friend, 274 8;—A.S. *fréond*.
- fresshe**, **freysshe**, *adj.*, fresh, new; 350 29; **freyssheyst**, *superl.*, 763 23; **fresshest**, *superl.*, 773 32; **fresshely**, *adv.*, 239 12;—A.S. *fersc*.
- fronte**, *sb.*, front, forehead, 538 27; **frounte**, 191 1; **frunte**, 87 31;—A.F. *frount*, *frunt*, O.F. *front*.
- fulfeythful**, *adj.* (!), faithful, 522 36.
- furfare**, *v.*, to perish, fare ill, destroy; **fur fared**, *pt.*, 190 30;—A.S. *for-feran*.
- fyauunce**, *sb.*, promise, confidence, trust, 39 2;—O.F. *fiance*.
- fyendly**, *adv.*, hostile, warlike, ad-verse, 572 27;—A.S. *féondlic*.
- fyer**, **fyre**, *sb.*, fire, 183 18; 275 38;—A.S. *fýr*.
- fyers**, *adj.*, fierce, strong, bold, brave, 57 34; **fyerser**, *comp.*, 181 31;—O.F. *fers*, *fiers*.
- fyghte**, *v.*, to fight; *inf.*, 127 8; **fyghtynge**, *p.prs.*, 426 28; **faughte**, *pt.*, 159 28; **fought**, *pt.*, 71 27; **faughte**, *pt.*, 65 12;—A.S. *fœhtan*.
- fylle**, *sb.*, the amount of anything that a person can stand; **fylle of fyghtynge**, 426 28;—A.S. *ful*.
- fylle**, *sb.*, colt, filly, young animal, 388 23;—A.S. *fyllo*.
- fynde**, *v.*, to find; *inf.*, 590 12; **fond**, *pt.*, 205 26; **fonde**, *pt.*, 316 5; 757 32; **found**, *pt.*, 84 5; **fonden**, *p.p.*, 360 24; **founden**, *p.p.*, 246 36; 585 21; **founde**, *p.p.*, 434 34;—A.S. *findan*.
- fyse**, *sb.*, son;—O.F. *fis*, *fiz*.
- fytloke**, *sb.*, fetlock, tuft of hair grow-ing behind the pastern-joint of horses; **fytløkys**, *pl.*, 61 2;—? A.S. *fōt* and *locce*.
- gad**, *sb.*, a wedge of steel, a sharp-pointed instrument, a graver, 657 13;—A.S. *gad*.
- gadere**, *v.*, to gather, collect, as-semble; **gadre**, *inf.*, 51 35; **gad-**



- red, *pt.*, 6 20; 668 17;—A.S. *gaderian*.
- galeye**, *sb.*, galley, a long low-built ship with one deck, 164 30;
- galeyes**, *pl.*, 841 9;—A.F. *galeye*.
- galhous**, *sb.*, gallows, 796 8 (the 1634 ed. has *gallous*);—A.S. *gealga*, *galga*.
- gap**, *sb.*, an opening made by rupture or parting, cleft, 403 7;—Icel. *gap*.
- garderobe**, *sb.*, wardrobe, place where dresses are kept, 177 25;—O.F. *garderobe*.
- gardyne**, *sb.*, garden, 583 13; **gardyns**, *pl.*, 771 20;—A.F. *gardin*.
- gare**, *v.*, to make, to cause; **garte**, *pt.*, 121 28; 185 26;—Icel. *göra*.
- garet**, *sb.*, a look-out on the roof of a house or castle wall, watch-tower, 200 6;—O.F. *garite*.
- gar-make**, 825 25-26;—? This form is an evident tautology, as *gar* (Icel. *göra*), M.E. "to ger," is equal in signification to "make."<sup>1</sup>
- garneson**, *sb.*, guard, garrison, 178 8;—O.F. *garnison*.
- garnysshe**, *v.*, to supply, to equip, to provide with; *imperat.*, 35 30; *prs.*, 51 8; **garnysshed**, *pt.*, 825 33;—O.F. *garniss*, from *garnir*.
- gate**, *sb.*, gate; **gatys**, *pl.*, 459 37;—A.S. *geat*. Compare *yate*.
- gauntelet**, *sb.*, a gauntlet, the iron glove of armour, 778 30; 780 9;—O.F. *gantelet*.
- gayn**, *adj.*, direct, near, convenient, ready; **gaynest**, *superlat.*, 243 31;—Icel. *gegn*.
- gaynsaye**, *v.*, to deny, dispute, contradict; *inf.*, 2 30;—A.S. *gean* and *seggan*.
- geaunte**, *sb.*, giant, 11 5; **gyaunt**, 97 26; **geauntes**, *pl.*, 12 5;—A.F. *geant*.
- gentyl**, **yentyl**, *adj.*, worthy, excellent, noble; **gentylst**, *superl.*, 422 15; **yentyllest**, *superl.*, 860\* 10;—A.F. *gentil*.
- genytours**, *sb. pl.*, genitals, exterior organs of generation, 168 9;—O.F. *genitoirs*, Lat. *genitorium*.
- gerfaukon**, *sb.*, a kind of falcon, 156 29;—Lat. *gyrofulconem*. See also *iarfaucon*.
- germayn**, *adj.*, closely allied, derived from the same stock, of the first degree, 89 19;—Lat. *germanus*.
- geste**, *sb.*, guest; **gestes**, *pl.*, 310 24;—A.S. *gæst*, *gest*.
- gete**, *v.*, to gain, get, to beget; **gatte**, *pt.*, 297 27; **geteth**, *prs.*, 47 33;
- gat**, *pt.*, 68 8; **gate**, *pt.*, 41 32; 763 2; **goten**, *p.p.*, 61 28; 63 24;
- yate**, *pt.*, 39 7; 91 9;—A.S. *gitan*.
- gladde**, *adj.*, glad, 401 2;—A.S. *glæd*.
- glade**, *v.*, to make glad, to render merry; **gladeth**, *prs.*, 180 4;
- gladen**, *prs. pl.*, 797 4;—A.S. *gladian*.
- glastyng**, *p.prs.*, making a noise like a dog, barking; the **glastyng beest**. Compare *questyng*.
- glatysaunt** (the *glatysaunt beest*), barking;—*p.prs.* of O.F. *glatir*, *glatisant*.
- glayue**, *sb.*, sword, 110 26; 807 18;—O.F. *glaiue*.
- glemerynge**, *p.prs.*, glimmering, 592 19;—A.S. *ge-leoman*.
- gloton**, *sb.*, glutton, 168 6;—A.F. *gluttun*.
- gnaste**, *v.*, to gnash the teeth;
- gnasted**, *pt.*, 206 16;—Icel. *gnastan*.
- gonne**, *sb.*, gun; **gonnes**, *pl.*, 839 26. Compare Low Lat. *gunna*.
- gone**, *v.*, to go; **gost**, *prs.*, 70 27;
- goth**, *prs.*, 733 17;—A.S. *gán*.
- gomme**, *sb.*, gum; **gommés**, *pl.*, 174 22;—O.F. *gomme*.
- gouernaunce**, *sb.*, government, behaviour, 334 12; 405 30; 478 26;—O.F. *gouvernance*.
- Gouernayle**, name given to syr Trystram's tutor and servant, meaning rudder, management, leader.

<sup>1</sup> I can only explain this strange form (the hyphen is here not inserted in my edition, but is found in the Caxton) by supposing that the compositor, by breaking the word and printing "gar-" at the end of one line, forgot what he was to do, and put "make" at the beginning of the next. Malory most likely wrote "gar-nysshe" as in line 33 of the same page.

- Gramercy**, *adj. sb.*, grant-mercy, many thanks, 426 30.
- gras**, *sb.*, grass; put hem to gras, 85 1;—A.S. *græs*.
- graunte**, *adj.*, great, 565 20; **graunte sir**, 696 3; **graunt mercy**, 804 15;—O.F. *grand*.
- graunte**, *v.*, to grant, give, allow, agree; *inf.*, 762 16; **graunted**, *p.p.*, 12 27; **graunted**, *pt.*, 760 31;—A.F. *graunter*.
- graythe**, *v.*, to prepare, to dress; **graythed**, *pt.*, 171 34;—Icel. *græða*.
- gree**, *sb.*, step, degree, worthiness, price, 447 31; 538 34;—O.F. *gre*.
- grece**, *sb.*, grease, 219 1; the hart of greese, 566 22;—O.F. *graisse*.
- Grece**, *sb.*, Greece, the country, 163.
- grekysshe**, *adj.*, Greek, 2 35.
- grede**, *adj.*, greedy, 179 23;—A.S. *grædig*, *grédig*.
- greese**, *sb.* See grece.
- grette**, **grete**, *adj.*; **gretter**, *comp.*, 38 8; **grettest**, *superl.*, 40 17;—A.S. *græt*.
- grese**, *sb.*, step, stair; *pl.*, flight of steps; **gresys**, *pl.*, 716\* 25;—O.F. *gre*.
- greuance**, *sb.*, hurt, grievance, 205 17;—O.F. *greuance*.
- greue**, *sb.*, grove, thicket; **greuys**, *pl.*, 208 35;—A.S. *gráf*.
- grone**, *v.*, to groan; **gronynge**, *p.prs.*, 283 37;—A.S. *gránian*.
- grose**, le (surname of Hellyas and Geryne), meaning the great, the stout;—O.F. *gros*.
- grutche**, *v.*, to grumble, grudge; *inf.*, 177 37;—O.F. *groucher*.
- gryef**, *sb.*, grief, 342 10;—O.F. *gref*.
- grym**, **grymme**, *adj.*, fierce, horrible, heavy, 93 18; 845 12; **grymly**, *adv.*, 206 31;—A.S. *grim*.
- gryffon**, *sb.*, griffin, 65 10; 176 8;—O.F. *griffon*.
- grype**, *v.*, to grip, to seize; **grypped**, *pt.*, 193 29; **gryped**, *pt.*, 239 23;—A.S. *gripan*.
- grysyly**, *adj.*, horrible, dreadful; **grysylyest**, *superl.*, 584 22;—A.S. *grislic*.
- guldyssh**, *adj.*, gilt, golden, 408 13;—deriv. from A.S. *gyldan*.
- guttas**, *sb. pl.*, the bowels, 169 9; 778 14;—A.S. *gut*, *geotan*.
- guyse**, *sb.*, way, manner, dress, behaviour, 747 26;—O.F. *guise*.
- gyfte**, *sb.*, gift, present, 69 7; **yeftes**, *pl.*, 453 5;—Icel. *gíft*.
- gyue**, *v.*, to give; **my herte gyueth me to the**, 214 10; 530 20; 708 29; **gaue**, *pt.*, 101 3; **gaf**, *pt.*, 46 36; 115 3; **yeue**, *inf.*, 38 11; **yeuen**, *p.p.*, 44 9; 61 36; 518 6; **gyuen**, *p.p.*, 15 2;—A.S. *gifan*.
- gyle**, *sb.*, guile, deceit, fraud, 77 2; 174 2;—O.F. *guile*, A.S. *wíl*.
- gyrde**, *v.*, to gird; **gyrd**, *pt.* and *p.p.*, 76 17, 19;—A.S. *gyrdan*.
- gyrdyl**, *sb.*, girdle, 849 16;—A.S. *gyrdel*.
- gysarme**, *sb.*, battle-axe, 248 2; **gysarms**, *pl.*, 155 4;—O.F. *guisarme*.
- gyse**, *sb.*, guise, manner, wise, 62 17;—A.S. *wise*.
- gyse**, *sb. pl.*, geese, 62 17;—A.S. *gés*.
- haberion**, *sb.*, habergeon, a piece of armour to defend the neck and breast, 677 18;—O.F. *hauberjon*.
- hackney**, *sb.*, small horse, nag, 304 33; **hakeneis**, *pl.*, 50 22; 448 32;—A.F. *hakenai*, *hakeney*.
- haft**, *sb.*, handle, 692 20; 848 27;—A.S. *háft*.
- halle**, *sb.*, hall, 264 19; **holle**, 264 22;—A.S. *heol*, O.F. *halle*.
- hale and how**, pull ho! a cry of sailors, 236 13.
- halse**, *v.*, to embrace; **halsed**, *pt.*, 304 37;—A.S. *healsian*.
- handed**, *adj.*, skilful, strong; the fayrest and largest handed, 213 27;—from A.S. *hand*, *hond*.
- handsel**, *sb.*, handsel, gift, earnest-money on a purchase, 297 30;—Icel. *handsal*.
- hangers**, *sb. pl.*, testicles, 474 18;—A.S. *hangian*.
- hange**, *v.*, to hang; **hangen**, *pl. prs.*, 184 36; **henge**, *pt.*, 193 12; 463 38;—A.S. *hange*, from *hón*.
- harneis**, *sb.*, armour, 406 14;—O.F. *harnois*.
- harnest**, *p.p.*, equipped, 324 23; **harnysed**, *p.p.*, 773 33.
- hastynes**, *sb.*, haste, hurry, 841 33.

- hate**, *v.*, to be called; **heteth**, *prs.*, 216 3;—A.S. *hatan*.  
**hauberk**, *sb.*, a coat of ringed mail, armour protecting the neck, 58 21; 82 11;—O.F. *hauberc*.  
**hauke**, *sb.*, hawk; *v.*, to hawk, 208 20;  
**hawkyng**, 276 33;—A.S. *heafoc*.  
**haute prynce**, the, the high prince; surname of Galahad son of Launcelot, and of Galahad of Surluse.  
**haue**, *v.*, to have, to take; *inf.*, 756 8; **hadde**, *pt.*, 489 28;—A.S. *habban*.  
**hayre**, *sb.*, hair, 657 16; 713\* 11;  
**here**, 83 22; **hayr**, 27 27; **heyre**, 362 19;—A.S. *hær*, *hær*.  
**hede**, *sb.*, heed, care, 714\* 27;—from A.S. *hédan*.  
**hede**, *sb.*, head, 311 19; **heed**, 311 20; **heede**, 311 27; 465 1;—A.S. *hēafod*.  
**hele**, *sb.*, health, soundness, salvation, 705 20; 720 8;—A.S. *hēalu*.  
**helme**, *sb.*, helmet, 195 18; **helmet**, 195\* 17; used for "men," 191 10;—A.S. *helm*.  
**helpe**, *v.*, to help; **halp**, *pt.*, 91 28; 155 8; **holpen**, *p.p.*, 125 4;—A.S. *helpan*.  
**helthe**, *sb.*, health, soundness, salvation, 631 88; 702 22;—A.S. *hēlð*.  
**hem**, *pron. pl., dat. and acc.*, them, 37 27; 47 4; 85 21; 631 26;—A.S. *him*, *heom*.  
**heme**, *v.*, to make a buzzing sound like bees, hum; **hemyng**, *p.prs.*, 583 2.—Of imitat. origin.  
**hens**, *adv.*, hence, 267 36;—M.E. *hennes*, A.S. *heonan*, *hionan*.  
**heraude**, *sb.*, herald; **heraudes**, *pl.*, 533 24;—O.F. *heraud*, *herault*.  
**her**, *pron.*, their, 47 2; 101 13; 643 25; 816 11;—A.S. *hira*, *heora*.  
**herberowe**, *sb.*, lodging, shelter, 243 35; **herberow**, 153 11; **herburgh**, 427 19; **herberowes**, *pl.*, 263 36;—Icel. *herberg*.  
**herberowe**, *v.*, to lodge, to provide shelter; **herborowed**, *pt.*, 180 19.  
**here**, *v.*, to hear; *inf.*, 850 5; **herde**, *p.p.*, 703 33;—A.S. *hēran*.  
**here**, *sb.*, hair. See **hayre**.  
**hermyte**, **heremytage**. See **ermyte**, **ermytage**.  
**herken**, *v.*, to hearken, listen; *inf.*, 366 13; **herke**, *imperat.*, 703 36;  
**herkened**, *pt.*, 447 3;—A.S. *hyrcnian*.  
**herte**, *sb.*, heart, 393 2; **hert**, 457 24;—A.S. *heorte*.  
**herte**, *sb.*, hart, 566 22; **hert**, 65 17;—A.S. *heorot*, *heort*.  
**heruest**, *sb.*, harvest, 815 9;—A.S. *haerfest*.  
**herytage**, *sb.*, heritage, 652 38;—O.F. *heritage*.  
**hete**, *sb.*, a hit, 584 26;—from Icel. *hitta*.  
**hethe**, *sb.*, heath, 845 31;—A.S. *hēð*.  
**hethen**, *adj.*, heathen, 2 31; 643 22;—A.S. *hēðen*.  
**heue**, *v.*, heave, raise; *prs.*, 72 12; 847 18;—A.S. *hebban*.  
**hewe**, *sb.*, hue, colour, 165 9;—A.S. *hiw*.  
**hewe**, *v.*, to hew, to knock; **hewe**, *pt.*, 463 18; **hewen**, *p.p.*, 27 26; 97 38;—A.S. *hēawan*.  
**heyer**, *sb.*, heir, successor, 164 27.  
**hey3te**, *sb.*, height, 165 19;—A.S. *heáhðu*, *héhðu*.  
**hit**, **hyt**, *pron.*, it, 61 5; 131 37; 148 6;—A.S. *hit*.  
**ho**, *interj.*, stop! hold on! 61 9.  
**hole**, *adj.*, whole, entire, 722 24;—A.S. *hál*.  
**holsome**, *adj.*, wholesome, 100 26.—Compare Icel. *heilsamr*.  
**holte**, *sb.*, a wood, holt, a wooded hill, grove; **holtys**, *pl.*, 175 34;—A.S. *holt*.  
**honger**, *sb.*, hunger, 652 27; **hongre**, 651 35;—A.S. *hungor*.  
**holde**, *v.*, to hold, observe, keep; **hylde**, *pt.*, 48 19; **holydyn**, *p.p.*, 44 22; **helde**, *pt.*, 59 20.  
**houe**, *v.*, remain, hover, wait about; **houed**, *pt.*, 145 15; **houyng**, *p.prs.*, 99 28.  
**hool**, *adj.*, whole, sound, 36 12; **holer**, *comp.*, 72 19;—A.S. *hál*.  
**hoolly**, *sb.*, holly, 155 34;—A.S. *hólen*, *holegn*.  
**hoost**, **hooste**, *sb.*, host, army, 36 4; 61 3;—A.F. *ost*, *host*.  
**hore**, *adj.*, hoar, hairy, white or grayish-white, aged, 96 5; **holtes** **hore**, 853 9;—A.S. *hár*.

- hors lytter**, *sb.*, a vehicle containing a bed, drawn by horses, 399 14;  
**hors lyttar**, 39 20;—A.S. *hors* and O.F. *litriere*.  
**horsbere**, *sb.*, horse-bier, carriage or frame of wood for bearing the dead to the grave, hearse, 135 23.  
**hostage**, *sb.*, preparation for battle or war, 463 6;—A.F. *hostage*.  
**hostry**, *sb.*, inn, 80 5.  
**houghbone**, *sb.*, the bone at the joint on the hind-leg of a quadruped; the back part of the knee-joint, 596 20;—A.S. *hoh* and *bán*.  
**hous**, **hows**, *sb.*, the house, 100 16; 143 12;—A.S. *hus*.  
**housel**, *v.*, to housel, to administer the Eucharist; **houseld**, *p.p.*, 452 7; 702 4; **howselyd**, *p.p.*, 858\* 25;—from A.S. *húsel*.  
**how be it**, *adj.*, howbeit, notwithstanding, 317 10.  
**hurte**, *v.*, to hurt; **hurte**, *p.p.*, 134 36; 703 10; 764 32; **hurte**, *pt.*, 20 14;—O.F. *hurter*, *heurter*. Compare A.S. *hyrt*, wounded.  
**hurtle**, *v.*, to rush, to dash against, to throw down; **hurtled**, *pt.*, 71 29; 195\* 7; **hurlynge**, *p.prs.*, 226 36; **hurled**, *pt.*, 764 32.  
**husbondman**, *sb.*, working farmer, husbandman, 166 7;—Icel. *húsbondi*, A.S. *man*.  
**hyde**, *v.*, to hide; **hyd**, *p.p.*, 62 24; 77 37; **hydde**, *pt.*, 719 23; 849 2;—A.S. *hýdan*.  
**hyder**, *adv.*, hither, 110 34; 521 25; **hyther**, 215 5; **hydder**, 761 23;—A.S. *hider*, *híðer*.  
**hyderto**, *adv.*, hitherto, 846 35.  
**hyhenes**, *sb.*, highness, 487 36;—A.S. *héah*, *keh*, and *nysse*.  
**hyhe**, *adj.*, high, 670 27;—A.S. *héah*.  
**hye**, **hyhe**, *v.*, to hie, hasten; **hyhe**, *imperat.*, 465 7; **hyhe** me, 80 13; **hye** yow, 37 10;—A.S. *higian*, *higan*.  
**hylle**, *sb.*, hill, 714\* 15; **hyllys**, *pl.*, 175 34;—A.S. *hyll*.  
**hylte**, *sb.*, hilt, handle; **hyltys**, *pl.*, 95 36;—A.S. *hilt*.  
**hynde**, *sb.*, hind, female of a stag, 764 17;—A.S. *hind*.  
**hyr**, *pron.*, her, 109 4;—A.S. *hire*.  
**hystoryal**, *adj.*, historical, 1 3;—Lat. *historia*.  
**hyther**, *adv.* See **hyder**.  
**hyt**, *pron.* See **hit**.  
**hytte**, *v.*, to hit; **hyt**, *pt.*, 71 15; **hitte**, *pt.*, 412 23;—Icel. *hitta*.  
**incontynent**, *adj.*, *adv.*, incontinent, immediately, at once, 162 21;—Lat. *incontinent*-, from *incontinens*.  
**incoronation**, *sb.*, coronation, 44 24.  
**indignacyon**, *sb.*, indignation, 43 14;—Lat. *indignationem*.  
**infydeles**, *sb. pl.*, the infidels, heathen, 163 38; **myscreantes**, *pl.*, 860 38;—Lat. *infidelis*.  
**intronysacyon**, *sb.*, enthronement, coronation, 182 11.  
**ire**, *sb.*, anger, 313 23;—Lat. *ira*. See also **yre**.  
**ialous**, *adj.*, jealous, 203 9; 407 32;—O.F. *jalous*.  
**ialousye**, *sb.*, jealousy, 293 3; (**ialousnes**, 407 32);—O.F. *jalousie*.  
**iape**, *sb.*, joke, jest, mockery, 113 11;—from O.F. *japper*.  
**iaper**, *sb.*, jester, buffoon, 335 35.  
**iarfaucion**, *sb.*, a kind of falcon, 254 31; **ierfaucion**, 601 21;—Lat. *gyrofalconem*. See also **gerfaucion**.  
**iay**, *sb.*, jay, bird of the crow family with gay plumage, 582 30;—O.F. *geai*.  
**ieopardy**, *sb.*, jeopardy, hazard, danger, 108 15.  
**ieoparde**, *v.*, jeopard, jeopardise; *inf.*, 74 15; 471 30;—from O.F. *jeu parti*.  
**iesseraunte**, *sb.*, a short cuirass of fine mail; **iesseraunce**, 619 11;—O.F. *jazerant*, *iaseran*.  
**ioccunde**, *adj.*, joyous, pleasant, 249 6.  
**iuge**, *v.*, to judge; *prs.*, 134 14; **iuged**, *pt.*, 109 12; *p.p.*, 564 15;—O.F. *juger*.  
**iugement**, *sb.*, judgement, 152 30;—A.F. *jugement*.  
**iuste**, *v.*, to joust, encounter, approach; **ioustyng**, *p.prs.*, 41 16;—A.F. *jouster*.  
**iuster**, *sb.*, champion, 71 10; **iustar**, 441 29.  
**iustes**, *sb. pl.*, tournaments, 41 12;—A.F. *joustes*.

- kay**, *sb.*, key; **kayes**, *pl.*, 633 9;—A.S. *cæg*, *cæge*.
- kechen**, *sb.*, kitchen, 214 27; **kechyn**, 215 17;—A.S. *cycene*, *cicen*.
- kele**, *v.*, to cool; *inf.*, 421 1; **keleth**, *prs.*, 771 31;—A.S. *célan*.
- kempe**, *sb.*, warrior, champion; **kempys**, *pl.*, 223 31;—A.S. *cempa*.
- kepar**, *sb.*, keeper, 139 29.
- kepe**, *sb.*, heed; 294 10; 629 29.
- kepe**, *v.*, to keep, observe, regard; *inf.*, 831 35; **kepe**, *imperat.*, 364 14; 407 12; **kepest**, *prs.*, 472 21; **kepte**, *pt.*, 326 20; **kepte**, *p.p.*, 42 25; 406 15;—A.S. *cépan*.
- kertyl**, *sb.*, kirtle, short gown, or tunic, 168 8;—A.S. *cyrtel*.
- kerue**, *v.*, to carve; **keruyng**, *p.prs.*, 693 28;—A.S. *ceorfan*.
- ketche**, *v.*, to catch; *inf.*, 229 12; **caughte**, *pt.*, 58 34;—O.F. *catcher*.
- keuer**, *v.*, to cover; **keuerd**, *p.p.*, 416 32;—A.F. *covrir*.
- keurchyef**, *sb.*, a square piece of cloth, 172 10;—O.F. *covre-chef*, *couvre-chef*.
- keuryng**, *sb.*, the covering (of a shield), 663 35; **keurynge**, 448 7.
- knaue**, *sb.*, knave, servant, 177 31; **knauys**, *pl.*, 177 32;—A.S. *cnafa*.
- knowledge**, *sb.*, knowledge, 31 4; **knouleche**, 749 11.
- knowleche**, *v.*, to acknowledge, to learn, to tell; *inf.*, 162 21; **knowleched**, *pt.*, 14 19;—from A.S. *cnawan*, with the Icel. suff. *-leikr*.
- knowlechyng**, *sb.*, the acknowledgment, acknowledging, 822 14; 773 13.
- knowe**, *v.*, to know; *inf.*, 182 1; 216 5; **knownen**, *prs. pl.*, 379 17; 729 8; **kno** (l), *p.p.*, 1 18; **knownen**, *p.p.*, 549 30; **knewe**, *pt.*;—A.S. *cnáwan*.
- knyghthode**, *sb.*, knighthood, 354 24; 767 33;—A.S. *cnihthád*.
- knulle**, *v.*, to knell; *inf.*, 856\* 6;—A.S. *cnyll*, a knell.
- knytte**, *v.*, to knit, bind, join; **knytt**, *p.p.*, 450 1;—A.S. *cnyttan*.
- kutte**, *v.*, to cut; **kytte**, *pt.*, 781 29.
- kybbet**, *sb.*, cubit, a measure employed by the ancients equal to the length of the arm from the elbow to the tip of the middle-finger, 858\* 10;—Lat. *cubitus*.
- kyen**, *sb. pl.*, cows, 103 16;—A.S. *cý*, from sing. *cú*.
- kylle**, *v.*, to strike, kill; *inf.*, 764 13; **kyld**, *p.p.*, 65 38; **kylled**, *pt.*, 327 13; **kylled**, *p.p.*, 326 19.
- kynde**, *sb.*, kind, nature, race, 582 28; 708 36;—A.S. *cynde*, *gecynd*.
- kynne**, *sb.*, kin, kind, generation, 83 31; 513 19;—A.S. *cynn*.
- kynreed**, *sb.*, kindred, 243 5; **kynred**, 243 11;—A.S. *cynn* and *ræden*.
- kysse**, *v.*, to kiss; **kyst**, *pt.*, 78 38; 68 20; **kyssed**, *pt.*, 82 36;—A.S. *cyssan*.
- laddre**, *sb.*, ladder; **laddres**, *pl.*, 180 37;—A.S. *hlæder*.
- ladyl**, *sb.*, ladle, a large spoon for lading or dipping out liquid from a vessel, 219 6;—A.S. *hlædel*.
- lady les**, *adj.*, ladyless, without a lady, 312 19.
- langage**, *sb.*, language, 405 19;—A.F. *langage*.
- langaged**, *adj.*, having a way of speaking, 272 11.
- langer**, *v.*, loiter, saunter about; **langerynge**, *p.prs.*, 369 21.
- lande**, *sb.*, land, country; **landes**, *pl.*, 830 34; **lendes**, *pl.*, 831 31.
- lappe**, *v.*, to wrap; **lapped**, *pt.*, 274 18; 737 2; **lapped**, *p.p.*, 205 35. See Skeat, Dict.
- largesse**, *sb.*, bounty, largess, 539 26; **your largesesse**, 134 23;—A.F. *largesse*.
- lasshe**, *v.*, to dash against; **lasshyed**, *pt.*, 203 4; **lasshed**, *pt.*, 403 38; 472 33.
- late**, *adj. adv.*, slow, late, lately, 652 21;—A.S. *læt*.
- laton**, *sb.*, brass, bronze, 88 25; **latoen**, 184 37;—O.F. *laton*.
- laughe**, *v.*, to laugh; **laugh**, *prs.*, 99 8; **lough**, *pt.*, 45 29; 99 8;—A.S. *hleghan*.
- laules**, *adj.*, lawless, 64 6.
- launde**, *sb.*, a wild, bushy plain, a waste field, 145 14, 23;—A.F. *launde*.
- lawde**, *sb.*, praise, 747 35;—Lat. *laudem*.
- lawe**, *sb.*, law; **lawes**, *pl.*, 760 14.

- layne, v.**, to hide (in Old Norse the verb has this meaning, whereas in A.S. *lignian* means to deny); *inf.*, 798 14; *prs.*, 747 14.
- laye, v.**, to lay; *inf.*, 837 7; **laydest**, *second p.prs.*, 837 8; **leye, imperat.**, 206 32; **layde, p.p.**, 126 14; **laid**, *pt.*, 188 34; **layen, p.p.**, 29 22; **laide, p.p.**, 760 27; **leyd, pt.**, 658 30;—A.S. *lecgan*.
- layte, sb.**, lightning, 706 30.
- lazarcote, sb.**, hut or cottage for lepers, 16 21; 376 35;—Church Lat. *lazari* and A.S. *cot*.
- leare, sb.**, cheek, face; **learys, pl.**, 371 4;—A.S. *lira*.
- leche, sb.**, physician; **leches, pl.**, 371 4;—A.S. *læce*.
- lecheoure, sb.**, glutton, dissolute person, 727 3;—A.F. *lecheur*.
- lechery, sb.**, lewdness, 641 33;—A.F. *lecherie*.
- lede, v.**, to lead, carry; *inf.*, 378 12; **lede, prs.**, 621 32; **lad, pt.**, 54 4; **ladde, pt.**, 9 5; **ledde, pt.**, 11 29; 531 28; **ledde, p.p.**, 549 15; **ladde, p.p.**, 54 38; 319 7;—A.S. *lédan*.
- leder, sb.**, leader, guide, 387 35; 753 26.
- leder, sb.**, leather, 448 4;—A.S. *leper*.
- leed, sb.**, lead, 174 23;—A.S. *lead*.
- leef, lyef, adj.**, dear, beloved, glad, 101 16; 849 8; **leuer, comp.**, 71 36; 745 21; **moost leuest, superl.**, 144 35;—A.S. *leof*.
- legacyon, sb.**, legation, the person or persons sent as legatees or ambassadors; but here the word means their patent as such, 175 10;—O.F. *legation*.
- lege, sb.**, a league; **leges, pl.**, 428 35; **leghes, pl.**, 601 14;—O.F. *legue*.
- legeaunce, sb.**, allegiance, 177 17;—O.F. *ligeance*.
- lene, v.**, to lend, grant; *imperat.*, 740 8; *inf.*, 96 25; 374 5;—A.S. *lénan*.
- lene, adj.**, lean, 102 3;—A.S. *hléne*.
- lemman, sb.**, lover, sweetheart, 11 31;—A.S. *leofman*.
- lepe, v.**, to leap; **lepte, pt.**, 104 26;—A.S. *hléapan*.
- lepe, sb.**, a leap, jump, 104 26.
- lerne, v.**, to learn, teach; *inf.*, 197 10;—A.S. *leornian*.
- lese, v.**, to lose; *inf.*, 450 13; **lose, inf.**, 312 3; **lese, prs.**, 59 37;—A.S. *léosan*.
- lesses les aler**, cry of the heralds at a tournament to start the knights, *laissez les aller!* let them (horses) run, 786 28.
- leste, superl.**, least, 145 30;—A.S. *læst*.
- lete, v.**, to let, cause, leave; **late, imperat.**, 168 24; 846 30; **lete, imper.**, 754 10;—A.S. *létan*.
- lette, v.**, to hinder, to make late; *inf.*, 453 37; 841 10; **letted, p.p.**, 11 11;—A.S. *lettan*.
- leued, adj.**, covered with leaves, 191 6;—from A.S. *leaf*.
- lewde, adj.**, unlearned, ignorant; **lewdest, superl.**, 74 32;—A.S. *læwed*.
- leyser, sb.**, leisure, 126 10; 667 23; **leysers, pl.**, 474 35;—A.F. *leisir*.
- lieutenaunt, sb.**, lieutenant, 427 23;—A.F. *lieutenant*.
- londage, sb.**, landing, coming ashore, 841 10.
- long, adj. and adv.**, tall, long, 36 29; **not lenger, comp.**, 82 33; **lengest, superl.**, 757 23;—A.S. *lang*.
- longe, adv.**, dependent on, or owing to, 657 35; generally in M.E. *i-long*;—A.S. *gelang*.
- longe, v.**, to belong; **longyng vnto vow**, 59 28; **longed, pt.**, 43 1.
- lose, v.**, to set free; **lose, imperat.**, 589 13; **losed, pt.**, 24 28; **loused**, 564 27;—A.S. *lésan, lósian*.
- lothe, loth, adj.**, hostile, hateful, grievous, unpleasant, unwilling, 151 33;—A.S. *låd*.
- lotles, adj.**, without harm, uninjured, 419 7.
- lordes, sb. pl.**, the aristocracy, contrary to the "comyns," the people, 41 4; 43 26;—A.S. *hláford*.
- lous, loos, adj.**, free, loose, 366 27; 389 21;—A.S. *leás*.
- lough, pt. of laughe**.
- lune, sb.**, a leash, a thong of leather by which a falconer holds his hawk; **lunys, pl.**, 208 13;—M.H.G. *lüne*.

- luske**, *sb.*, a lazy, idle, good-for-nothing person, 219 6.
- lyar**, **lyer**, *sb.*, liar, 84 38; 823 19, 28;—A.S. *leogere*.
- lybard**, *sb.*, leopard, 355 31; 533 15; 572 23; 579 5;—O.F. *libbard*.
- lyberte**, *sb.*, liberty, 3 37; 821 33;—O.F. *liberteit*.
- lyckly**, *adv.*, likely, 205 19;—A.S. *liclic*.
- lycours**, *adj.*, lecherous, dainty, 771 34;—deriv. from O.F. *lecher*.
- lyef**, *adj.* See *leef*.
- lyft**, *adj.*, left, 387 2. See *Skeat*, Dict.
- lyfte**, *v.*, to lift, 125 5;—Icel. *lypta*.
- lygement**, *sb.*, 686 24 (W. de Worde has *alegement*; Sir E. Strachey reads *aligement*); ? ligament, bandage, or alleviation.<sup>1</sup>
- lygge**, *v.*, to lie; *inf.*, 181 26; **lyggest**, *prs.*, 841 26; **lyggynge**, *p.prs.*, 150 31; **leyne**, *p.p.*, 715\* 21; **layne**, *p.p.*, 188 34; 581 11; **lay**, *pt.*, 717 11; **lyen**, *p.p.*, 35 12; **lyenge**, *p.prs.*, 761 10;—A.S. *licgan*.
- lygnage**, *sb.*, lineage, descent, parentage, 177 16; 451 14;—A.F. *linage*.
- lygne**, *sb.*, line, 177 15;—A.S. *line*, Lat. *linea*.
- lyke**, *v.*, to please; *impers.*, hit **lyketh the**, 222 10; **how lyketh yow**, 215 26;—A.S. *lician* (*lican*).
- lymme**, *sb.*, limb, 844 9;—A.S. *lim*.
- lyste**, *sb.*, mind, desire, lust, 376 14.
- lyste**, *v. impers.*, to desire; **me lyst**, 71 34; **ye lyst**, 61 20;—A.S. *lystan*.
- lyste**, *v.*, to listen; **lystned**, *pt.*, 708 21; 710 23; **lest**, *pt.*, 435 37;—? A.S. *hlystan*, *ge-hlystan*.
- lystes**, *sb. pl.*, the lists, the enclosed field for the tournament, 306 27;—A.F. *listes*.
- lytel**, *adj.*, small, little, 714\* 31; **lytil**, 59 15;—A.S. *lytel*.
- lythe**, *sb.*, joint, limb, member, 116 10;—A.S. *lið*.
- lyttyer**, *sb.*, a vehicle containing a bed, 784 20; **lyttar**, 39 20; **lytter**, 399 14;—O.F. *litiere*.
- mageste**, *sb.*, majesty, 721 20;—Lat. *majestatem*, O.F. *majestet*.
- make**, *v.*, to make; **maade**, *pt.*, 759 26; **maad**, *pt.*, 7 23; **maad**, *p.p.*, 2 6; **made**, *pt.*, 17 15; **made**, *pt.*, 23 34;—A.S. *macian*.
- makeles**, *adj.*, matchless, 322 15; 540 26.
- maker**, *sb.*, maker, writer, author, 562 32; **makers**, *pl.*, 860\* 31.
- Maledysaunt**, name given to a damsel going with syr Breunor; = *mal disant*, ill speaking.
- male ease**, *sb.*, sickness, indisposition, uneasiness, 338 2;—O.F. *malaise*.
- male engyne**, *sb.*, evil disposition, malice, wickedness, wicked trick, 733 5 (*compare* Spenser's "Faery Queene," *Malengin*);—A.F. *malengin*.
- male fortune**, *sb.*, misfortune, accident, 356 8; 392 21;—O.F. *mal-fortune*.
- male tayle**, **la cote**, surname of syr Breunor; *la cote mal tayllée*, the badly shaped coat.
- malyce**, *sb.*, evil, malice, 734 31;—A.F. *malice*.
- manoyre**, *sb.*, manor, house, castel, 193 14; **manoir**, 134 17; **manayr**, 195 35; **manore**, 196 12;—A.F. *manere*.
- marbyl**, *sb.*, marbel, 138 3;—O.F. *marbre*.
- marche**, *sb.*, district, province, border of a territory, border lands; **marches**, *pl.*, 297 22;—A.F. *marche*.
- mare**, *sb.*, mare, female of a horse; **mares sone**, 779 22; **marys sone**, 837 27;—A.S. *mere*.
- mareyse**, *sb.*, marsh, tract of low wet land, a morass, swamp, 205 5; **mareis**, 413 17; **maryse**, **marys**, 208 8;—O.F. *marois*.
- maronner**, **maryner**, *sb.*, sailor; **maronnors**, *pl.*, 514 10; 518 2; **maryners**, *pl.*, 236 13.
- marre**, *v.*, to injure by cutting off a part, to mar, disfigure; **marred**, *p.p.*, 584 3;—A.S. *amyrran*.

<sup>1</sup> As the passage in the text runs "be to me a lygement of penaunce vnto my foules helthe," it is very probable that the prefix *a-* is dropped after the indefinite article.

- martre**, *v.*, to torment; **martred**, *p.p.*, 707 18;—A.F. *martirer*.
- masse peny**, *sb.*, offering at the altar, 762 29.
- matchecold**, *adj.*, having holes within the parapets of the walls for pouring stones or molten lead through, machicolated, 226 8.
- matere**, **mater**, *sb.*, matter, material, stuff, subject, 425 34; **maters**, *pl.*, 727 18;—O.F. *matere*.
- matyns**, *sb.*, morning prayer or service, 40 19;—O.F. *matins*.
- maugre**, *sb.*, ill-will, 405 28; 807 12.
- maulgre**, **magre**, *prep.*, in spite of, 714 21; 70 35; **maulgre her (thy) (your) hede**, 418 19; 437 32; 701 36;—O.F. *maugre*.
- may**, *prs.*, may, can, 4 2; 35 26; **maye**, 759 23; **maiste**, *second pers. prs.*, 343 24; **maxste**, 131 14; **mayst**, 472 30; **maist**, 405 24; **my3t**, *pt.*, 111 35; **myght**, *pt.*, 2 11; **myghte**, *pt.*, 754 4;—A.S. *mæg*, *meahte*, *mihhte*, *inf.* *mugan*.
- maye**, *v.*, to go maying; **mayeng**, *p.prs.*, 772 10.
- maylle**, *sb.*, mail, defensive armour for the body, formed of steel rings or network;—O.F. *maille*.
- mayme**, *sb.*, bruise, injury, lameness, the deprivation of any essential part; **maymes**, *pl.*, 57 10;—O.F. *mehaing*.
- mayme**, *v.*, to render lame, defective, paralyse; **maymed**, *pt.*, 87 2; *p.p.*, 108 20.
- mayneal**, *adj.*, homely (generally in M.E. *meymeal*), 430 35.
- mayntene**, *v.*, to support; *inf.*, 657 1; *prs.*, 291 20;—A.F. *meyntener*.
- mayntene**, *sb.*, royal household, means of support, maintenance, 163 4;—O.F. *meyntien*.
- mayster**, *sb.*, master, governor, 151 38;—O.F. *maistre*.
- maystresse**, *sb.*, mistress, 538 3;—O.F. *maistresse*.
- maystrye**, *sb.*, mastery, 42 6; **maystry**, 467 36; **maystryes**, *pl.*, 215 24; 542 9;—O.F. *maistris*.
- medle**, *sb.*, medley, fight, combat, 56 6;—O.F. *medle*.
- medowe**, *sb.*, meadow; **medowes**, *pl.*, 202 3.—Compare A.S. *mædwe*.
- megre**, *adj.*, meagre, lean, 568 9;—O.F. *maigre*.
- mekely**, *adv.*, meekly, 122 33;—from Icel. *mjúkr*.
- mencyon**, **mensyon**, *sb.*, commemorative inscription, mention, 571 17; 788 12;—O.F. *mention*.
- mene**, *v.*, mean, signify, intent; **ment**, *pt.*, 296 20;—A.S. *mænan*.
- merueyllous**, *adj.*, marvellous, 614 5; **meruayllous**, 5 2; **merueiloust**, *superl.*, 278 35;—O.F. *merveillous*.
- merueyille**, *sb.*, marvel, wonder, 236 7; **meruayl**, 3 1; **merueill**, 235 10; 241 18; **merueyles**, *pl.*, 723 17;—O.F. *merveille*.
- merueyille**, *v.*, to wonder, to be astonished; **meruelle**, *imperat.*, 576 29; **merueyled**, *pt.*;—O.F. *merveiller*.
- mery**, *adj.*, merry, pleasant, bright, 404 28;—A.S. *merg*.
- mescheyf**, *sb.*, mischief, ill-fortune, 210 7; 651 35; *vb.*, to come to mischief, to be destroyed or injured;—O.F. *meschief*.
- mescreaunt**, *adj.* and *sb.*, miscreant, not believing, infidel; **mescreaunts**, **Sarasyns**, 135 30; **myscreantes**, *pl.*, 465 30; 860 38; **mescreaunts**, *pl.*, 406 11;—O.F. *mescreant*.
- mesel**, *sb.*, leper (here probably leprosy is meant), 705 16;—A.F. *mesel*.
- messenger**, **messagyer**, *sb.*, messenger, 254 40; 277 27; *pl.*, 423 16;—A.F. *messenger*.
- mete**, *sb.*, meat, food, meal, feast, 551 11;—A.S. *mete*.
- mete**, *adj.*, fitting, suitable, meet, 290 9.—Compare A.S. *méte*.
- mete**, *v.*, to meet, encounter; *inf.*, 94 15; **metten**, *pl. prs.*, 10 33; **mette**, *pt.*, 11 36; **mette**, *p.p.*, 355 1; **met**, *p.p.*, 83 19;—A.S. *métan*.
- meuable**, *adj.*, movable, 827 1.
- meue**, *v.*, to move, suggest; *inf.*, 40 33; 321 29; **meued**, *pt.*, 37 35; 384 8; **moeued**, *p.p.*, 779 18;—A.F. *movoir*, Lat. *mouère*.



- meule**, *sb.*, mule, 267 35; mules, *pl.*, 186 7;—O.F. *meule*.
- meyny**, *sb.*, household, retinue, company, 430 35; 525 7; **meyne**, 165 14;—O.F. *meisnee*.
- moche**, *adj.* and *adv.*, great, much, 35 37; 36 7; **a moche man**, 802 16.
- mocke**, *v.*, to mock; **mocqued**, *pt.*, 12 24; **mocked**, *pt.*, 19 35; **mocked**, *p.p.*, 87 15;—O.F. *mocquer*.
- moeued**, *p.p.* See *meue*.
- molle**, *sb.*, a mole, 239 1;—from A.S. *molde-warp*.
- mone**, *sb.*, the moon, 403 13;—A.S. *mōna*.
- montayne**, *sb.*, mountain, 264 36; **mountayne**, 266 11; 662 15;—O.F. *montagne*.
- monstre**, *sb.*, monster, 704 34;—O.F. *monstre*.
- moost**, *adj. superl.*, greatest, principal, chief, 46 5; 502 12; 695 8; 840 29;—A.S. *mōest*.
- mordre**, *sb.*, murder, 118 15;—A.S. *morðer*.
- more**, *adj.* and *adv.*; *comp.*, more, greater, 218 23; 425 26; **moo**, 45 26; 415 28; 443 5;—A.S. *māra*, *mā*.
- morne**, *sb.*, morning; **on the morne**, 39 11; **to morne**, ~~20 10~~ (but also **to morrowe**, 70 16, 17);—A.S. *morgen*.
- morne**, *v.*, to mourn; **morneth**, *prs.*, 117 8; **mornyng**, *p.prs.*, 146 27; 406 1;—A.S. *murnan*.
- morsel**, *sb.*, morsel, 675 3;—A.F. *morsel*.
- mortalyte**, *sb.*, mortality, 459 24;—O.F. *mortalite*.
- mote**, *sb.*, note on the huntsman's horn; **motys**, *pl.*, 223 20;—O.F. *mot*.
- mote**, *first pers. sing.*, may, must, 67 9;—A.S. *mōt*.
- mountaunce**, *sb.*, amount, duration, 218 1; 444 10; 463 22;—A.F. *mountance*.
- mowe**, *v.*, to be able; *inf.*, 122 26;—? A.S. \**mugan* (compare Sievers' Gram.).
- mowth**, *sb.*, mouth, face, 848 10;—A.S. *mūð*.
- moyane**, *sb.*, means; **by the moyane**, by means of, 6 4; 21 19; **moyan**, 10 23; **mojne**, 16 11; **meane**, 11 30; **menes**, 394 35; **meanys**, *pl.*, 840 14;—A.F. *mene*, O.F. *meiain*, F. *moyen*.
- muffle**, *v.*, to wrap up as with a muff, to blindfold; **muffeld**, *p.p.*, 311 17;—O.F. *mofle*, *moufle*.
- multyplyer**, *sb.*, one who multiplies or increases, 652 25.
- murdre**, *v.*, to murder; *inf.*, 152 15.
- murtherer**, *sb.*, murderer, 251 10; 428 32.—Compare A.S. *morðor*.
- muse**, *v.*, to ponder, wonder; **musyd**, *pt.*, 457 1;—O.F. *muser*.
- musyke**, *sb.*, music, 276 31; 422 19;—Lat. *musica*.
- myddel**, *adj.* and *sb.*, middle, waist, 72 1;—A.S. *middel*.
- myghty**, *adj.*, mighty, 621 1; **myghtyest**, *superl.*, 438 34;—A.S. *mihtig*, *meahtig*.
- mykel**, *adj.* and *adv.*, great, much, 37 3; 371 22; 434 2;—A.S. *micel*.
- myle**, *sb.*, mile, 430 25;—O.F. *mile*.
- myn**, *pron. poss.*, my, 686 34;—A.S. *mīn*.
- myneuer**, *sb.*, meniver, white fur with black specks, ermine, 593 24;—O.F. *menu ver*, *menu vair*.
- mynster**, *sb.*, minster, monastery, 613 29; 620 1;—A.S. *mynster*.
- myre**, *sb.*, mire, dirt, 112 11; 140 26.—Compare Icel. *myri*.
- myrthe**, *sb., sing.*, mirth, joy, 37 37; **myrthes**, *pl.*, 500 1; 562 21;—A.S. *myrgð*, *myrð*.
- mysauenture**, *sb.*, misfortune, accident, 134 2;—O.F. *mesaventure*.
- mysbyleuers**, *sb. pl.*, infidels, 631 12; **mysbeleuyng men**, 178 38; **myscreantes**, 860 38.
- myscomforte**, *v.*, lose courage, despair; *imperat.*, 460 30.
- mys creature**, *sb.*, cripple, monster, disfigured creature, 692 8.
- mysdede**, *sb.*, bad deed, fault, crime, 683 32;—A.S. *misdæd*.
- mysdoo**, *v.*, to do amiss; *inf.*, 181 7; **mysdoo**, *p.p.*, 686 22.
- mysease**, *sb.*, uneasiness, 367 27.
- mysere**, *sb.*, misery, 84 34;—Lat. *miseria*.

ever  
39.30

- myshap**, *sb.*, misfortune, accident, 134 2; 472 24.
- myssay**, *v.*, abuse, rebuke, slander; *inf.*, 342 9; **myssaid**, *pt.*, 341 23; **myssayenge**, *verbal noun*, 229 33; **myssayed**, *pt.*, 229 34.
- mysse**, *v.*, to lack, miss; *inf.*, 78 38;
- myst**, 405 1; **mys**, 731 18;—A.S. *missan*, *myssian*.
- myster**, *sb.*, need, want; *also* business, art, occupation, trade, 57 18; 59 5; 224 35;—O.F. *mestier*, *mester*.
- natural**, *adj.*, natural, 406 3; 649 2;—O.F. *naturel*.
- nauel**, *sb.*, navel, 199 9; 645 1; **nauyl**, 167 19;—A.S. *nafela*.
- ne**, *adv.* and *conj.*, not, nor, 109 16;—A.S. *ne*.
- nece**, *sb.*, niece, 717 36;—A.F. *nece*, *niece*.
- necligence**, *sb.*, negligence, 771 12;—O.F. *negligence*.
- nemly**, *adv.*, nimbly, actively, quickly, 596 17;—A.S. *numol*. See *nymel*.
- nerre**, *adj.* and *adv.*; *comp.*, nearer, 838 14;—A.S. *néarra*.
- nether**, *adj. comp.*, lower; *adv.*, below, 294 12;—A.S. *neðera*, *neðra*.
- newe fangle**, *adj.*, new fangled, marked by the affectation of novelty, desiring new things, 841 5.—See *Skeat*, *Dict.*
- next**, *adj.*, = nearest, 760 35.
- neyder**, *neg. pron.* and *conj.* See *nother*.
- neye**, *neyhe*, *v.*, to neigh (horse); **neye**, *inf.*, 186 1; **neyhed**, *pt.*, 415 20;—A.S. *hnégan*.
- neysshe**, *adj.*, tender, soft, 641 8;—A.S. *hnesce*.
- noblesse**, *sb.*, nobility, worthy behaviour, 99 4; 387 29; **nobyl-nesse**, 585 12;—A.F. *noblesse*.
- nobley**, *sb.*, splendour, dignity, nobility, assembly of nobles, 316 9; 422 32;—A.F. *noblei*.
- nobyl**, *adj.*, noble, of noble birth, 849 1;—A.F. *noble*.
- nold**, *pt.*, s., would not, 705 31. See *nylle*.
- nombre**, *nomber*, *sb.*, number, 1 26; 601 23; 633 11;—O.F. *nombre*.
- nonnerye**, *sb.*, nunnery, 854 2;—O.F. *nonnerie*.
- noselynge**, *adv.*, on the nose, headlong, 695 21;—A.S. *nosu* and *gelang*.
- not for thenne**, *adv.*, nevertheless, notwithstanding, 680 7.
- nother**, *neg. pron.* and *adv.*, neither, 214 14; **nouther**, 775 21; **neyder**, 818 18; **neyther**;—A.S. *náhw<sup>le</sup>ðer*.
- notoyrly**, *adv.*, notoriously, 1 11;—Late Lat. *notorius*.
- not withstandyng**, *adv.*, notwithstanding, 453 1.
- nourisshe**, *v.*, to feed, nourish; *inf.*, 37 2; *prs.*, 38 35; **nourisshyng**, *p.prs.*, 38 27, 34; **nourysshed**, *p.p.*, 39 10;—O.F. *noriss*, *p.prs.* of *norir*.
- now and now**, *adv.*, now and then, 211 33.
- noughte**, *neg. pron.* and *adv.*, nothing, not, 684 14; 831 16;—A.S. *náwíht*.
- noyous**, *adj.*, hurtful, annoying, 701 2.
- noyre le**, the black, surname of *syr Breunor*, probably wearing black armour.
- nouryture**, *sb.*, food, nourishment, 6 6; **nurture**, 276 24;—O.F. *nouriture*.
- nygromancye**, *sb.*, magic, sorcery, necromancy, 38 5;—O.F. *nigromance*.
- nylle**, *first* and *third pers. sing.*, will not, 45 27; **nyl**, 81 32; 297 32; **nylt**, 641 17;—A.S. *nyllan*.
- nymel**, *adj.*, quick, nimble, active, 312 27;—A.S. *numol*.—Compare *nemly*.
- nys**, *third pers. sing.*, is not, 39 28; 804 9; *etc.*
- nyst**, *third pers. sing.* and *pl.*, knew not, 190 22; 677 3; 729 12; 784 13; 821 10;—A.S. *nytan*.
- obeyssaunce**, *sb.*, obedience, 45 25;—A.F. *obeissaunce*.
- ofte**, *adv.*, often; **oftsydes**, oftentimes, 173 32; **ofte**, 686 16, seems to be misprinted for *efte*, = again;—A.S. *oft*.

- oke**, *sb.*, oak, 203 28;—A.S. *œc*, *œc*.  
**oldenes**, *sb.*, age, old age, 715\* 33;—  
 A.S. *ealdnyssæ*.  
**olyfante**, *sb.*, elephant; **olyfantes**,  
 236 15;—O.F. *olifant*.  
**on**, *prep.*, on, at, in, among; **on lowde**,  
 564 35; **on lyue**, 100 20; **on slepe**,  
 380 12; **on hyghe**, 149 27; **on parte**  
 (separately), 56 27;—A.S. *an*, *on*.  
**onles**, **onlesse**, *adv.*, unless, 47 22;  
 446 6.—See Skeat, Dict.  
**ony**, *pron. neg.*, any, 292 18; 415 28;  
 —A.S. *œnig*.  
**oost**, *sb.*, host, inn-keeper, 200 6;—  
 O.F. *oste*, *hoste*.  
**or**, *prep.*, *conj.*, *adv.*, before, ere, 237  
 19;—? A.S. *œr*.  
**ordenaunce**, *sb.*, order, command,  
 array, provision, 51 24;—A.F. *or-*  
*dinance*.  
**ore**, *sb.*, oar, 708 4;—A.S. *ôr*.  
**orgule**, *sb.*, pride, 858\* 1;—O.F.  
*orguel* (compare A.S. *orgel*).  
**orgulous**, *adj.*, proud, 827 19; **moost**  
**orgulist**, *superl.*, 840 6;—O.F. *or-*  
*gueilleus*.  
**orgulyte**, *sb.*, pride, 413 9; 523 33.  
**ornemente**, *sb.*, ornament; **orne-**  
**ment**, *pl.*, 711 16;—O.F. *orne-*  
*ment*.  
**orphelyn**, *sb.*, orphan; surname of  
 Alysaunder;—O.F. *orpheline*.  
**oryent**, *sb.*, the East, 654 32;—A.F.  
*orient*.  
**oryson**, *sb.*, prayer, orison, 645 6;—  
 A.F. *oreison*.  
**oth**, *sb.*, oath, 52 1;—A.S. *ôð*.  
**otys**, *sb. pl.*, oats, 111 7;—A.S. *âte*.  
**ouche**, *sb.*, clasp, socket of a precious  
 stone; **ouches**, *pl.*, 822 2 (M.E.  
 generally *nouche*);—O.F. *nouche*,  
*nosche*, *nusche*.  
**ought**, *sb.*, aught, anything;—A.S.  
*â-wiht*.  
**outraguously**, *adv.*, excessively, 444  
 32.  
**oute excepte**, excepted, 102 11.  
**outrage**, *sb.*, outrage, insult, 472  
 24;—O.F. *oltrage*, *outrage*.  
**oute taken**, *p.p.*, excepted, 540 26.  
 Compare *oute cepte*, 539 23.  
**outher**, *conj.*, either, 140 4; 470  
 21; 726 13; 772 13; **outher**  
**els** = otherwise, 812 26;—A.S. *â-*  
*hwæðer*.  
**outrageouslyte**, *sb.*, outrage, 118 4.  
**ouer**, *prep.* and *adv.*, over, above,  
 beyond;—A.S. *ofer*.  
**ouer gouerne**, *v.*, to govern over;  
**ouer gouernyd**, *p.p.*, 43 2.  
**ouer hylle**, *v.*, to cover; **ouer hylled**,  
*pt.*, 444 16.  
**ouer hyp**, *v.*, pass over, omit; *inf.*,  
 796 3.  
**ouer moche**, too much, 414 21;  
**ouermoche**, 193 36.  
**ouersee**, *v.*, observe, survey, despise,  
 overlook; *inf.*, 346 5;—A.S. *ofer-*  
*seôn*.  
**ouerslyp**, *v.*, pass over, omit; *inf.*,  
 295 26.  
**ouerthwart**, *sb.*, adverse circumstance,  
 239 14.  
**ouerthwarte**, *adj.*, across, over,  
 against, 359 25; **ouerthwart**, 524  
 25; **ouerthwartly**, *adv.*, 338 25.  
**owe**, *v.*, to have, possess, to have to  
 be obliged to; **oughte**, *pt.*, 1 10;  
 44 9; **ou3t**, *pt.*, 1 37; 188 3; **me**  
**oughte to doo**, 418 17; 557 12;—  
 A.S. *agan*.  
**owre**, *sb.*, hour; **owrys**, *pl.*, 190 3;  
**heure**, 266 24; 463 22;—Lat. *hora*.  
**oynement**, *sb.*, ointment, 255 14;  
**oyntement**, 248 31; **oynementes**,  
*pl.*, 836 15;—A.F. *oignement*.  
**paale**, *adj.*, pale, discoloured, 468 25.  
**paas**, *sb.*, pace, step, passage, 81 25;  
**a softe trottyng paas**, 564 38;  
**a grete paas**, 563 32; **more than**  
**a paas**, 89 37; **paas peryllous**;—  
 A.F. *pas*.  
**pacyently**, *adv.*, patiently, 13 7.  
**pagent**, *sb.*, a pageant, scene, theatre;  
*sing.*, 544 24; **pagents**, *pl.*, 516 16;  
 553 26.  
**paleys**, *sb.*, palace, 722 3; **palais**, 722  
 31; **palays**, 615 29;—O.F. *palais*.  
**palfray**, *sb.*, saddle-horse, palfrey, 303  
 28; **palfrey**, 104 30; **palfroy**, 82  
 18;—A.F. *palefrei*.  
**palour**, *sb.*, parlour, conversation-room  
 in a nunnery, 452 21;—O.F. *parloir*.  
**paltocke**, *sb.*, jacket, paletot, a loose  
 garment; **paltockes**, *pl.*, 177 27;—  
 O.F. *paletocque*.

- pappe**, *sb.*, breast, 39 11; **pappys**, *pl.*, 148 33;—from the first cries of an infant for food.
- par**, **per**, *prep.*, by, with; **par dy**, 401 30; **per dieu**, 492 15; **per de**, 242 19 (*par Dieu*); **paramour**, **peramour**, lover, applied to either sex, 92 4; 133 4; 407 30; **peramours**, *adv.*, 679 4; **peradventure**, **peraventure**, **paraventure**, by chance, 81 32; 229 25; 540 34; 808 33.
- parage**, *sb.*, family, kindred, descent, birth, 220 5;—A.F. *parage*.
- parel**, *sb.*, word, word of honour, 119 29;—O.F. *parole*.
- pareylle**, *adj.*, like, similar, 161 25;—O.F. *pareil*.
- parfyt**, *adj.*, perfect, 592 20; 695 34; **parfytely**, *adv.*, 649 18;—O.F. *parfeit*, *parfit*.
- parlement**, *sb.*, parliament, conference, 829 29; **parlemente**, 839 5;—A.F. *parlement*.
- parson**, **person**, *sb.*, person, personage, 67 27; 541 35;—Lat. *persona*.
- party**, *sb.*, part, portion, side, 147 46; **partyes**, *pl.*, 291 26;—A.F. *partie*.
- passage**, *sb.*, passage, way, narrow path, 53 20; **passaye**, 53 20;—O.F. *passage*.
- passé**, *v. inf.*, 830 27; to pass, surpass; **paste**, *pt.*, 762 37; **past**, *pt.*, 781 2; **passed**, *pt.*, 830 32;—A.F. *passer*.
- passyng**, *p.prs.* of to pass, used as *adv.*, surpassing, very, 38 29; sometimes it has the adverbial termination **passyngly**, 53 25; 763 8.
- pauyment**, *sb.*, pavement, 190 6;—Lat. *pavimentum*.
- payement**, *sb.*, payment, reward, 197 23;—O.F. *paiement*.
- paylet**, *sb.*, pallet, *paillasse*, a small bed, 89 23; 110 27.
- payne**, *sb.*, pain, penalty; **do his payne**, do his utmost, 820 16;—A.F. *payne*.
- paynture**, *sb.*, picture, 190 25;—A.F. *painture*.
- paynym**, *sb.*, originally heathendom, paganism, but incorrectly used in the sense of a pagan, heathen, 400 27; **paynyms**, *pl.*, 1 13;—A.F. *païenisme*.
- paytrelle**, *sb.*, breast-plate of a horse in armour; **paytrellys**, *pl.*, 238 2;—A.F. *peitrel*.
- pees**, *sb.*, peace, silence, 37 25; 386 2; 581 18;—A.F. *pees*, O.F. *païs*.
- pelour**, *sb.*, pillar, column, 93 27;—A.F. *piler*.
- penaunce**, *sb.*, punishment, sufferance, penance, repentance, the punishment inflicted by a penitent on himself, 211 18;—O.F. *penance*.
- pensel**, *sb.*, pennon, little banner, 488 13; **pensell**, 489 19;—O.F. *penoncel*.
- perce**, *v.*, to pierce; **perced**, *pt.*, 675 15;—A.F. *percer*.
- percloos**, *sb.*, partition, enclosure; 644 33;—O.F. *parclos* (*p.p.*).
- perdycyon**, *sb.*, perdition, destruction, 648 24;—O.F. *perdition*.
- pere**, *sb.*, pear, 663 33;—A.S. *pera*.
- pere**, *adj.*, equal, 165 34; 177 20; **pyere**, 664 7;—A.F. *per*.
- perfeccyon**, **perfectyon**, *sb.*, perfection, 855\* 5;—O.F. *perfection*.
- peron**, **peroun**, *sb.*, tombstone, platform, 414 28; 421 14; 568 16;—O.F. *peron*.
- perpetuel**, *adj.*, perpetual, 160 24;—O.F. *perpetuel*.
- persecucyon**, *sb.*, persecution; **persecucyons**, *pl.*, 645 14;—from Lat. *persecutus* (*persequi*).
- perteyne**, *v.*, to belong, appertain; **perteyneth**, *prs.*, 679 16;—Lat. *pertinere*.
- perylle**, *sb.*, peril, danger, 415 30; 548 36;—O.F. *peril*.
- perysshe**, *v.*, to perish; **perysshed**, *p.p.*, 703 10;—O.F. *periss*, *p.prs.* of *perir*.
- petycyon**, *sb.*, petition, 214 5;—Lat. *petitionem*.
- petyte**, *le*, surname of syr Guyart; the short, or the small.
- philosopher**, *sb.*, a wise man, philosopher, 165 25;—Gr. *φιλόσοφος*.
- pierles**, *adj.*, without equal, 761 35; 500 2; **pyerles**, 322 15; 435 33;—A.F. *per* and A.S. *læs*.

- plenour**, *adj.*, plenary, full, complete, 213 1 (Wynkyn de Worde reads *plenare*);—Low Lat. *plenarius*.
- plente**, *sb.*, plenty, 586 24;—O.F. *plente*, *plentet*.
- plesauce**, *sb.*, kindness, pleasure, 329 27;—O.F. *plaisance*.
- plesaunt**, **playsaunt**, *adj.*, agreeable, pleasant, 3 29, 35;—O.F. *plaisant*.
- pleasyr**, *sb.*, pleasure, 248 24; **plesyr**, 268 32;—A.F. *pleisir*.
- plombe**, *sb.*, knot, tuft, cluster, number joined in a mass, 60 19;—?
- plonge**, *v.*, to plunge; **plonged**, *pt.*, 243 30;—O.F. *plonger*.
- plyte**, *sb.*, state, condition, 152 5;—O.F. *plite*.
- plyte**, *v.*, to pledge, *inf.*, 148 31; **plyghte**, *pt.*, 149 21;—A.S. *plihtan*.
- pomel**, *sb.*, knob, a boss, 99 5; **pomell**, 82 22;—O.F. *pomel*.
- ponting**, *p.prs.*, panting, gasping, breathing quickly, 238 20.
- portecolys**, *sb.*, portecallis, a sliding door of cross timbers pointed with iron hung over a gateway to be let down in a moment to keep out an enemy, 91 9;—O.F. *porte colëice* (Littré).
- postel**, *sb.*, apostle; **postels**, *pl.*, 720 10;—A.S. *apostol*, A.F. *apostile*.
- posterne**, *sb.*, postern, back gate, 289 13;—O.F. *posterne*.
- potestate**, *sb.*, ruler, governor, 174 30.
- pouente**, *sb.*, bridge, 571 20;—O.F. *ponte*.
- pouere**, *adj.*, poor, 7 13; 8 23; 471 30;—O.F. *povre*.
- pouse**, *sb.*, pulse, 712 5;—O.F. *pouls*, *polz*.
- pouerte**, *sb.*, poverty, meanness, 84 34; 746 10;—O.F. *poverte*.
- powdre**, *sb.*, powder, 165 22;—O.F. *poudre*.
- poyntelynge**, *p.prs.*, aiming at somebody, 578 2.
- poyntement**, **poyntemente**, *sb.*, appointment, agreement, 463 11; 845 29;—O.F. *apointement*.
- poysond**, *p.p.*, poisoned, 729 1;—from O.F. *poyson*, Lat. *potionem*.
- pray**, *sb.*, prey, 650 7; **praye**, 176 14;—O.F. *proie*, A.F. *praie*.
- praye** (?), *sb.*, prayer; **prayes**, *pl.*, 859\* 22;—A.F. *preiere*.
- praye**, *v.*, to pray; **praide**, *pt.*, 240 2; **praid**, *pt.*, 401 16; 767 33;—A.F. *preier*.
- preche**, *v.*, to preach; *inf.*, 645 13;—O.F. *precher*.
- prees**, *sb.*, a press, throng, 60 37; 77 22;—A.F. *presse*.
- prefyxt**, *p.p.*, prefixed, 839 11.
- preste**, *sb.*, priest; **preest**, 634 10;—A.S. *preost*.
- pretende**, *v.*, belong to; **pretendith**, *prs.*, 64 30.
- preue**, *v.*, to prove, try, test, 66 15; 214 34; **preued**, *p.p.*, 353 5;—O.F. *prover*.
- preuy**, *adj.*, privy, secret, 53 17; **pryuyest**, *superl.*, 51 15;—A.F. *prive*.
- preyse**, *v.*, to praise; **preysed**, *pt.*, 19 11;—from O.F. *preis*.
- procurour**, *sb.*, procurator, a governor of a province under the Roman emperors, 160 9; 162 10.
- profecye**, *v.*, to prophesy; **profecyed**, *pt.*, 419 30;—O.F. *profecier*.
- profer**, *sb.*, offer, promise, proffer, 215 14.
- proferre**, *v.*, to proffer, offer; *inf.*, 210 37; **profyrst**, *prs.*, 176 13; **proferre**, *inf.*, 134 31, means, evidently, advance, prefer; **proferd**, *p.p.*, 147 33; **profered**, *pt.*, 759 15;—Lat. *proferre*.
- profetyly**, *adj.*, accomplished; **profetylyest**, *superl.*, 733 22;—compound of the substantive *profit* and adverbial suffix *-ly*.
- prowesse**, *sb.*, prowess; **prowesses**, *pl.*, 173 14;—A.F. *pruesse*.
- pryce**, *sb.*, price, value, excellence, 555 25;—A.F. *pris*.
- prycke**, *v.*, to prick, hurt, spur, ride fast; **prycked**, *pt.*, 661 9; **pryckyng**, *p.prs.*, 647 10.
- pryker**, *sb.*, rider, horseman, 178 5.
- prysonement**, *sb.*, imprisonment, prison, 83 3.
- prysonne**, *v.*, to put into prison; *inf.*, 802 27;—from O.F. *prison*, *prisun*.
- pryuate**, *sb.*, privity, secret counsel, 456 19;—A.F. *privete*.

- purfyl**, *v.*, to embroider on an edge, 7 8;—O.F. *pourfiler*.
- pursyewe**, *v.*, to pursue, to follow after; **pursyewed**, *pt.*, 7 18;—O.F. *poursuir*.
- purueye**, *v.*, to provide; *inf.*, 38 26; 40 36; **purueyed**, *pt.*, 75 17; **purueyed**, *p.p.*, 51 23; 86 24;—A.F. *purveier*.
- puyssaunce**, *sb.*, might, power, 75 8; 413 38;—O.F. *puissance*.
- pyctour**, *sb.*, picture, 340 10;—Lat. *pictura*.
- pyece**, *sb.*, piece; **pyeces**, *pl.*, 71 32;—O.F. *piece*.
- pyere**, *adj.* See **pere**.
- pyerles**, *adj.* See **pierles**.
- pyghe**, *v.*, to pitch, fix, to pick; **pyght**, *pt.*, 84 3.
- pyke**, *v.*, to pick, to steal; **pyked**, *pt.*, 411 6.
- pylgremage**, *sb.*, pilgrimage, 166 35;—from O.F. *pelerinage*.
- pyllar**, *sb.*, plunderer; **pyllars**, *pl.*, 847 26;—from O.F. *pillier*.
- pylle**, *v.*, to plunder; *inf.*, 847 27;—O.F. *pillier*.
- pyller**, *sb.*, pillar, 589 11; **pelour**, 93 27;—A.F. *piler*.
- pylowe**, *sb.*, pillow; **pylowes**, *pl.*, 781 8;—A.S. *pyle*.
- pynt**, *sb.*, pinte, 746 1;—A.S. *pynt*.
- pyte**, *sb.*, pity, 711 4; 754 32;—O.F. *pite*.
- pyteous**, *adj.*, pitiful, 32; 435 7; **pyteous**, 5 16;—O.F. *piteus*.
- pytte**, *sb.*, pit, pool, ditch, 98 18; 664 2;—A.S. *pytt*.
- quakyng**, *p.prs.*, trembling, 136 7;—A.S. *cwacung*.
- quere**, *sb.*, choir, 859\* 22; **quyre**, 859 31;—O.F. *choeur*.
- queste**, *sb.*, (1) an inquiry, jury, verdict, 109 1; (2) chase, search, enterprise, 109 11;—O.F. *enqueste*.
- queste**, *v.*, to bark, make a noise like a dog; **quested**, *pt.*, 371 5; **questyng**, *p.prs.*, 65 29.
- questyon**, *v.*, to question, examine, ask; **questyoned**, *pt.*, 254 24; 418 12;—Lat. *quaestionem*, *quaerere*.
- quod**, **quoth**, *pt. sing.*, said, told, 60 10; 61 34;—A.S. *cweðan*.
- quyete**, *sb.*, quietness, 829 2;—from Lat. *quietus*.
- quylt**, *sb.*, quilt, thick coverlet, 95 17;—O.F. *culte*.
- quyte**, *adj.*, quit, 455 13; 465 7;—from O.F. *quiter*.
- quyte**, *v.*, to requite, repay, settle; *inf.*, 92 1; *pt.*, 159 27;—O.F. *quiter*.
- race**, *v.*, to scrape, to tear off; **raced**, *pt.*, 72 1; **reaced**, *pt.*, 72 4; **rassyd**, *pt.*, 524 29;—O.F. *raser*.
- race**, **rase**, *v.*, to run, to race; **rasynge**, *p.prs.*, 217 33; 194 11; **rateynge**, ? *p.prs.*, 432 24;—A.S. *ræsan*.
- rak**, *sb.*, rack, the grating above the manger, 668 28; 669 1; ? **rake**, 665 22;—from A.S. *ræcan*.
- ramme**, *sb.*, ram; **rammes**, *pl.*, 71 29;—A.S. *ram*, *rom*.
- rancour**, *sb.*, old grudge, spite, violence, 313 24;—Lat. *rancor*.
- ransake**, *v.*, to search; *inf.*, 171 2; 174 11; **ransakyd**, *pt.*, 630 34;—A.S. *ræsn*. See **Sievers' Gram**.
- raumpe**, *v.*, ramp, to seize or scratch with the paws, to rage; **raumpynge**, *p.prs.*, 339 31;—A.F. *raumper*.
- raundon**, *sb.*, force, violence, impetuosity, 109 37; 142 10; 675 15;—O.F. *randon*.
- raunge**, *sb.*, range, space occupied by anything moving, 142 2; 481 10; 492 23; 573 34;—O.F. *range*.
- raunson**, *sb.*, ransom, 178 14;—A.F. *raunson*.
- rauysshe**, *v.*, to seize with violence, to be greatly delighted; **rauysshed**, *p.p.*, 527 4;—A.F. *ravir*.
- rayment**, *sb.*, raiment, clothing, dress, 331 25.
- raynes**, *sb.*, fine linen, so called from Rheims, 857\* 26.
- rechate**,<sup>1</sup> *sb.*, the calling back of the

<sup>1</sup> In the alliterative romance-poem, "Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight" (about 1360 A.D.), edited by Richard Morris for the E.-E. T. S., 1869, from MS. Cotton: Nero. A. x., forms of a verb "recheat" occur—viz., "rechatand" = blowing the recheat, line 1911;

- hounds, originally the air which the hunters blow on their horns, when the hounds have lost their game to call them back from pursuing a counter-scent; *v.*, to blow the recheat, 500 11 (hunting term). Wynkyn de Worde and ed. 1634 have *rechace*.
- reche**, *v.*, to reach, attain; **raught**, 385 33; **raughte**, *pt.*, 265 16; **roughte**, *pt.*, 684 22; **retche**, *inf.*, 597 21;—A.S. *rēcan*.
- recke**, *v.*, to care for, to regard; *prs.*, 221 1; **reke**, *prs.*, 684 14; **retchyd**, *pt.*, 319 17;—A.S. *reccan*.
- recluse**, *recluse*, *sb.*, a female anchorite, 642 10, 15;—A.F. *recluse*.
- recountre**, *sb.*, encounter, fight, meeting, 213 20;—O.F. *rencountre*.
- recreaunt**, *adj.*, recreant, defeated, 71 37;—A.F. *recreaunt*.
- recueyille**, *v.*, to recoil; *inf.*, 180 3;—O.F. *reculer*.
- rede**, *sb.*, advice, 847 32;—A.S. *rēd*.
- rede**, *v.*, to give advice, to take counsel, to advise; *prs.*, 70 33; 244 5; 783 4;—A.S. (*ge*)*rēdan*.
- rede**, *v.*, to read; *inf.*, 3 26; 4 9; **redde**, *pt.*, 3 9; 4 8; **redde**, *p.p.*, 762 1;—A.S. (*ge*)*rēdan*.
- redoubte**, *v.*, to fear; **redoubted**, 823 12;—A.F. *redouter*.
- redresse**, *v.*, restore, repair, to make up again; *inf.*, 398 28; 443 21;—O.F. *redresser*.
- redy**, *adj.*, ready, 35 31;—A.S. (*ge*)*rēde*.
- reed**, *adj.*, red, 514 1;—A.S. *rēad*.
- reest**, *sb.* See **reyste**.
- rehersail**, *sb.*, rehearsal, 322 25; **rehersail**, 611 34.
- reherse**, *v.*, to rehearse, enumerate; *inf.*, 45 27; 562 32; **reherceth**, *prs.*, 105 11; **it rehercyth**, *prs.*, 75 27;—A.F. *rehercer*.
- reioyse**, *v.*, to rejoice; *prs.*, 797 3;—O.F. *rejoir*.
- rele**, *v.*, to reel, roll about, stagger; **relyd**, *pt.*, 238 13;—from A.S. *reol*, *hreol*.
- relece**, *v.*, to release; *prs.*, 481 29; **relecece**, *prs.*, 461 28;—A.F. *relessor*.
- remenaunte**, *sb.*, remnant, 9 20; 39 24;—A.F. *remenant*.
- remeue**, *v.*, to remove; *inf.*, 104 20;—O.F. *remuër*.
- remyssyon**, *sb.*, remission, forgiveness, 856\* 28.
- renne**, *v.*, to run; **ranne**, *pt.*, 321 25; **ronne**, *pt.*, 368 34; **ronne**, *p.p.*, 407 33; 526 4;—A.S. *rinnan*.
- renoume**, *sb.*, renown, 57 37; **renommee**, 3 34; **renomme**, 4 2; **renome**, 187 27;—O.F. *renon*, *renom*.
- renoumes**, *le*, the renowned, the famous, surname of Hebes.
- repayre**, *v.*, to go to; **repayren**, *prs. pl.*, 643 22;—A.F. *repeirer*, *repaïrer*.
- repreef**, *sb.*, reproof, 324 33; 332 8.
- repreue**, *v.*, to reprove; **repreuyd**, *pt.*, 7 23;—O.F. *reprover*.
- resemblaunt**, *sb.*, countenance, appearance, 649 6;—from O.F. *resembler*. See **semblant**.
- reasonable**, *adj.*, reasonable, 548 14;—A.F. *raisonable*.
- resorte**, *v.*, to go frequently to a place; **resorted**, *pt.*, 725 24; **resortes**, *sb. pl.*, place much frequented, resource, 725 23;—O.F. *ressortir*.
- reste**, *sb.*, rest, repose, 461 15; 764 2;—A.S. *rest*, *ræst*.
- retraye**, *v.*, to retire, to draw back; **retrayed**, *pt.*, 230 29;—O.F. *retraire*.
- restraynte**, *sb.*, restraint, limitation, 567 6;—O.F. *restraint*.
- reuful**, *adj.*, piteous, compassionate; **reufullyr**, *comparat.*, 425 16;—A.S. *hréow* and *ful*.
- reule**, *sb.*, rule, behaviour, 387 31;—A.F. *reule*.

“recheated” = blew the recheat, line 1466. The form “rechace,” which Wynkyn de Worde has, occurs in “Three English Metrical Romances” edited by John Robson, 1842, for the Camden Society. There, on page 3, in the tenth stanza, we read, “The king blue a rechase.”

- reule**, *v.*, to rule, to govern; **reulyd**, *p.p.*, 187 24;—A.F. *reuler*.  
**reuelacyon**, *sb.*, revelation, 202 4;—O.F. *revelacion*.  
**rewe**, *sb.*, row; **by rewe**, 77 6;—A.S. *ráwe*, *réwe*.  
**reygne**, *sb.*, rule, kingdom, 861\* 8;—A.F. *regne*.  
**reygne**, *v.*, to reign; **reygned**, *pt.*, 34 28; **reygneth**, *prs.*, 4 5; 83 14; **regne**, *inf.*, 133 8; **regned**, *pt.*, 35 2;—A.F. *regner*.  
**reyse**, *v.*, to raise; **reysed**, *pt.*, 77 20;—Icel. *reisa*.  
**reyste**, *sb.*, a support for the spear, 564 34; **reystys**, *pl.*, 237 6; **restys**, *pl.*, 194 1; **reest**, 430 37;—? O.F. *rester* or A.S. *rest*, *raest*.  
**rodde**, *sb.*, rod, staff, 162 33; **roddes**, *pl.*, 366 20;—A.S. *ród*.  
**rok**, *sb.*, rock, 330 2; **roche**, 410 25;—O.F. *roche*.  
**rome**, *sb.*, space, room, 213 30;—A.S. *rúm*.  
**rome**, *v.*, to roam, ramble, wander about; **romed**, *pt.*, 165 13; 289 23.—Compare O.H.G. *rámen*. See Skeat, Dict.  
**roofe**, *sb.*, roof, 93 32;—A.S. *hróf*.  
**rore**, *v.*, to roar; **rorynge**, *p.prs.*, 396 8; **roryd**, *pt.*, 648 15;—A.S. *rárian*.  
**rote**, *sb.*, root, 798 4;—Icel. *rót*. Compare A.S. *wrót*.  
**rote**, *v.*, to rot; *inf.*, 698 13;—A.S. *rotian*.  
**roted**, *p.p.*, practised, skilled, experienced, 472 9;—O.F. *route*, *rote*.  
**roten**, *adj.*, rotten, 641 20;—Icel. *rotinn*.  
**rownsepyk**, **rounsepyk**, *sb.*, a branch with others attached to it, 209 18, 23.  
**roy**, *sb.*, king, le fyse roy Vreyne, epithet of Vwayne.  
**royal**, *adj.*, royal, 401 4; 499 7; **moost royallest**, *superl.*, 215 29. See **ryal**.  
**royalte**, *sb.*, royalty, royal state, 101 9; **ryalte**, 182 13;—O.F. *royalte*.  
**royame**, *sb.*, kingdom, 1 5; 11 2; 72 29; **royalme**, 4 11; **royamme**, 160 15; **reaume**, 45 8; **reamme**, 39 34; 40 3, 7; **realme**, 67 5;—A.F. *realme*, O.F. *reaume*.  
**rubrysshe**, *sb.*, literally, red ochre, red earth for colouring; later, the portions of books in red ink, index, register, 6 1;—Lat. *rubrica*.  
**russet**, *adj.*, russet, rusty, reddish-brown, coarse, rustic, 62 17;—A.F. *russet*, O.F. *rousset*.  
**russh**, *v.*, to rush; **russhed**, *pt.*, 60 35; 132 13; **rosshynge**, *p.prs.*, 195 8; **rasshed**, *pt.*, 217 32; 472 3.  
**ryal**, *adj.*, royal, 2 38; 160 2; **ryal-lest**, *superl.*, 163 5;—A.F. *roial*, *reial*.  
**ryalte**, *sb.* See **royalte**.  
**ryde**, *v.*, to ride; **rode**, *pt.*, 106 19; 757 25; **roode**, *pt.*, 105 15; **ryde**, *p.p.*, 82 16; **ryden**, *p.p.*, 116 15; 151 7;—A.S. *rídan*.  
**rynde**, *sb.*, rind, bark, the skin of fruit, 671 22;—A.S. *rind*.  
**ryse**, *v.*, to rise; **rasyth**, *prs.*, 202 37; **rysen**, *p.p.*, 49 28;—A.S. *rísan*.  
**ryuage**, *sb.*, bank of a river, 721 2;—O.F. *rivage*.  
**ryue**, *v.*, to rive, to tear; **roofe**, *pt.*, 95 35; **roof**, *pt.*, 27 21; **rafe**, *pt.*, 596 18; **rofe**, *pt.*, 82 28; 654 23; **ryuen**, *p.p.*, 75 18;—Icel. *rífa*.  
**sabel**, *sb.*, sable, animal of the weasel kind, 601 7; (?) **sable**, 176 9;—O.F. *sable*.  
**sadel**, *sb.*, saddle, 403 18; **sadell**, 471 35;—A.S. *sadol*.  
**sak**, *sb.*, sack, sackcloth, 437 19;—A.S. *sacc*.  
**sale**, *sb.*, hall, 713 29;—A.S. *scel*, Icel. *sabr*, A.S. *scel*.  
**salewe**, *v.*, to salute; **salewed**, *pt.*, 215 35;—O.F. *saluer*.  
**samyte**, *sb.*, a rich silk stuff, often interwoven with gold or silver threads, 73 1; 687 30; 760 30;—O.F. *samit*.  
**sarpe**, *sb.*, girdle; **sarpys**, *pl.*, 822 30.—Compare O.H.G. *scharpe*, O.F. *escharpe*.  
**saterdag**, *sb.*, Saturday, 665 13;—A.S. *Sæter-dæg*.  
**sauf**, *adj.*, safe, healed, made whole, 316 31; 584 21; **sauf gard**, *sb.*,



- 561 28; safe-keeping;—A.F. *sauf*, O.F. *sauf*.
- saufte**, *sb.*, safety, security, 290 33; 623 13;—A.F. *saufte*.
- saulter**, *sb.*, psalter, musical instrument; **saulters**, *pl.*, 859\* 1;—O.F. *sautier*.
- saunce**, *prep.*, without; **saunce pyte**, surname of Breuse, without pity; **saunce velany**, without villany.
- sauuage**, *adj.*, savage, wild, impetuous; Lynet is called the **damoyssel saueage**, and Balyn is surnamed **le saueage**.
- sauour**, *sb.*, the Saviour, 592 3; 706 21;—O.F. *saveor*, *salveor*.
- sauour**, *sb.*, smell, savour, pleasantness, 592 17;—O.F. *saveur*.
- sawe**, *sb.*, a saw, saying, 519 8; **old sayd sawe**, 754 6;—A.S. *sagu*.
- saye**, *v.*, to say; **sayne**, *third pers. plur. pres.*, 187 30; **saist**, *prs.*, 67 28; **seith**, *prs.*, 138 25; **sayd**, **seid**, **said**, *pt.*, 41 37; **saiden**, **sayden**, *third pers. plur. pt.*, 40 25; 140 29; 202 10; 422 12;—A.S. *secgan*.
- scalde**, *v.*, to boil, to burn with hot liquid; **scaldynge**, *p.prs.*, 571 28;—O.F. *eschalder*.
- scape**, *v.* See **escape**.
- scatere**, *v.*, to scatter, disperse; **scateryd**, *pt.*, 206 21;—A.S. *scateran*.
- scathe**, *sb.*, hurt, harm; **scathes**, *pl.*, 464 13;—A.S. *sceaða*.
- scathe**, *v.*, to harm; *inf.*, 90 3;—A.S. *sceaðan*.
- scaubart**, *sb.*, scabard, 73 17; **scauberd**, 89 7; **scaubard**, 135 26;—M.E. *scaubert*. See **Skeat**, **Dict.**
- scaffoldes**, *sb. pl.*, 834 21. See **skaffolde**.
- scoffer**, *sb.*, mocker, 488 28;—cognate with O.Fries. *schof*, a scoff.
- scole**, *sb.*, school, 38 4;—Lat. *schola*.
- scomfyte**, *v.* See **discomfyte**.
- scoute**, *sb.*, spy, scout; **scoute watche**, 53 5;—O.F. *escoute*.
- scripture**, *sb.*, Holy Scripture, 721 22;—Lat. *scriptura*.
- sease**, **seace**, *v.*, to cease, discontinue; **sease**, *inf.*, 836 38; **seaced**, *pt.*, 475 10; **seasse**, **seace**, *imperat.*, 155 3; 179 4;—O.F. *cesser*.
- seate**, *sb.*, seat, 424 4;—A.S. *seto*, *seotu*.
- seculer**, *adj.*, secular, 724 4;—Lat. *secularis*.
- sedyl**, *sb.* See **cedle**.
- see**, *v.*, to see; *inf.*, 3 26; **seeth**, *prs.*, 60 7; **sawe**, *pt.*, 761 17; **sene**, *p.p.*, 206 13; **seen**, *p.p.*, 3 9; **sawest**, *second p.pt.*, 113 31;—A.S. *seon*.
- seekne**, *v.*, to become sick, to get weak; **seekened**, *pt.*, 858\* 7; **sekene**, *inf.*, 34 25;—from A.S. *seoc*.
- sege**, *sb.*—(1) seat, (2) siege, 439 7; **siege**, 422 28; **seges**, *pl.*, 235 19; 532 3; **syegyng**, 237 20; **syege**, 64 14;—A.F. *sege*, O.F. *siege*.
- seke**, *adj.*, sick, 36 8, 11; 493 30;—A.S. *seoc*.
- sekenesse**, *sb.*, sickness, 406 9;—A.S. *seocnes*.
- selar**, *sb.*, ceiling, canopy of a bed, 698 24 (edit. of 1634 has *seeler*);—? deriv. from *ciel*.
- semblable**, *adj.*, like, 177 20;—O.F. *semblable*.
- semblaunt**, *sb.*, countenance, appearance, 224 25; 710 25;—A.F. *semblant*.
- semely**, *adj.*, seemly, 205 10;—A.S. \**semelic*.
- senate**, *sb.*, senate, assembly of the senators, 174 35; **senatours**, 175 5.
- senceall**, **sencial**, *sb.* See **seneshall**.
- sendale**, *sb.*, a fine cloth, 174 23; **sendel**, 202 5; 616 4;—O.F. *sendal*.
- seneshall**, *sb.*, seneschal, steward; **seneyall**, 86 34; **senceall**, 42 30; **sencial**, 55 13; **senescha**, 123 38;—O.F. *seneschal*.
- senser**, *sb.* See **censer**.
- serche**, *v.*, to search; *inf.*, 64 3; 135 19; **sarche**, *inf.*, 351 7; **serched**, *pt.*, 461 17; *p.p.*, 464 15;—O.F. *cercher*, Mod.F. *chercher*.
- serkelet**, *sb.*, a wreath, or band for the head, 144 13; 147 16;—O.F. *cercllet*, dim. of *cercle*.
- seruage**, *sb.*, thralldom, servitude, 372 31; 408 31;—O.F. *servage*.

- serue**, *v.*, to serve; **seruedest**, *prs.*, 671 20;—O.F. *servir*.
- seruyse**, *sb.*, service, 251 3;—O.F. *servise*.
- seruytour**, *sb.*, servant, 457 25;—Lat. *servitor*.
- seson**, *sb.*, season, 858\* 33;—A.F. *seson*.
- sette**, *v.*, to set, place, appoint; **sette**, *pt.*, 62 34; 65 24; **sette**, *p.p.*, 3 19;—A.S. *settan*.
- seurte**, *sb.*, surety, 241 10; 617 31; 657 6;—A.F. *seürte*.
- seueratly**, *adv.*, separately, 127 12;—deriv. from *seuer*, to separate;—O.F. *seurer*.
- sewayr**, *sb.*, bearer of dishes, 271 3;—A.F. (*as*) *seïour*.
- sewe**, *v.*, to follow, attend on, persecute; *inf.*, 641 38; 647 19; **sewed**, *p.p.*, 630 23;—O.F. *suir* (*porseuir*).
- seye**, *v.* See *saye*.
- seynt**, *adj.*, saint, holy, 413 11;—O.F. *saint*, *seint*.
- shaftmon**, *sb.*, a measure from the top of the extended thumb to the other end of the fist or palm, about six inches, 248 8;—A.S. *sceaft-mund*.
- shape**, *v.*, to shape, form; **shope**, *pt.*, 138 2; **shapen**, *pl. prs.*, 698 24; **shapen**, *p.p.*, 102 31; 341 10;—A.S. *sceapan*.
- shelde**, *sb.*, shield, 266 26; **shild**, 98 5; **sheltes**, *pl.*, 687 11; **shylde**, 69 18; **sheld**, 69 20;—A.S. *scyld*, *sciold*.
- shelded**, *adj.*, provided with a shield, 333 25.
- shende**, *v.*, to harm, damage; *inf.*, 831 14; **shente**, *pt.*, 235 27; **shente**, *p.p.*, 432 29;—A.S. *scendan*.
- shenship**, *sb.*, disgrace, hurt, 235 33;—from A.S. *scendan* and *scipe*.
- sherte**, *sb.*, shirt, 210 38; 452 30; 634 31;—Icel. *skyrta*.
- sherthursdaye**, *sb.*, the Thursday before Easter, so called from the custom of shearing or shaving the beard on that day, 719 32.
- shete**, *sb.*, sheet, 200 18;—A.S. *scete*, *scýte*.
- shethe**, *sb.*, sheath, 76 26; 695 13; A.S. *scéað*.
- shette**, *v.*, to shut; **shitte**, *pt.*, 713 33; **shytte**, *pt.*, 414 8; **shytte**, *p.p.*, 9 15; 443 8; 710 30; **shette**, *p.p.*, 319 13;—A.S. *scyttan*.
- sheue**, **shewe**, *v.*, to show; **sheuyng**, *p.prs.*, 666 21; **shewed**, *pt.*, 46 4; 762 12; **shewed**, *p.p.*, 762 12;—A.S. *scéarvian*.
- sheuere**, *v.*, to break into shivers; **sheuered**, 110 2;—? Icel. *skifa*.
- shoke**, *pt.*, shook, 321 30;—A.S. *scóc*, from *sceacan*, *scacan*.
- sholder**, **sholdre**, *sb.*, shoulder, 176 6; 281 33;—A.S. *soulder*, *souldor*.
- shote**, *v.*, to shoot, rush; **shotyng**, *p.prs.*, 102 23; **shote**, *pt.*, 770 13; **shot**, *pt.*, 764 29; **shotte**, *pt.*, 327 12;—A.S. *scéotan*.
- shoure**, *sb.*, shower, hard attack, 822 3;—A.S. *scür*.
- shoue**, *v.*, to shove; **shouen**, 699 10;—A.S. *scofian*.
- showte**, *v.*, to shout; **showted**, 173 12;—?
- shrede**, *v.*, to cut; *inf.*, 831 11;—A.S. *scréadian*.
- shrewde**, *adj.*, wicked, malicious, 365 7.
- shryche**, *sb.*, a cry, shriek, 745 34.
- shryche**, *v.*, to shriek, screech; **shryched**, *pt.*, 850 5; **shryked**, *pt.*, 752 14;—? Icel. *skrækja*.
- shryue**, *v.*, to confess, prescribe penance; **shryuen**, *p.p.*, 26 28, 36; **shryued**, *pl.*, 759 37;—A.S. *scrífan*.
- shyne**, *v.*, to shine; **shone**, *pt.*, 403 13; 710 10;—A.S. *scinan*.
- shyrly**, *adv.*, clearly, brightly, 759 3;—A.S. *scírlie*.
- sister**, *sb.*, the sister, 139 30; **suster**, 101 37;—A.S. *swuster*, *swester*.
- sith**, *adv.* and *conj.* See *sythen*.
- skaffolde**, *sb.*, stage, an elevated platform, scaffold, engine of war for besieging a town; **skaffoldes**, *pl.*, 766 7; **skaffoldis**, *pl.*, 191 7; **schaffoldes**, *pl.*, 484 21;—O.F. *escafaut*.
- skarmusshe**, *v.*, to skirmish, to fight slightly and irregularly; **skarmusshed**, *pt.*, 181 21;—O.F. *escarmoucher*.

- sklauder**, *sb.*, scandal, slander, 726 1; 731 2; 779 28; **sklaundre**, 321 20;—A.F. *esclaudre*.
- skumme**, *v.*, to skim, to sweep, to examine the position and strength of the enemy; *inf.*, 52 30;—from Icel. *skuma*.
- skyfte**, *sb.*, shift, change, 211 16; 499 31.
- skyfte**, *v.*, to shift, to part asunder, to change, to remove; *inf.*, 405 25; **skyfte**, *pt.*, 405 31;—A.S. *sciftan*.
- skynne**, *sb.*, skin, 657 24;—A.S. *scinn*, Icel. *skinn*.
- slade**, *sb.*, a valley, 188 26; 203 28;—A.S. *slæd*.
- slake**, *sb.*, a little valley, hollow, gap or pass between two hills, 189 6.
- slake**, *v.*, to become slack, cease; *inf.*, 726 4;—A.S. *slacian*.
- slee**, *v.*, to slay; *inf.*, 831 21; *prs.*, 132 15; **slough**, *pt.*, 65 11; 165 31; **slewe**, *pt.*, 468 29; **slayne**, *p.p.*, 754 3;—A.S. *sléan*.
- sleer**, *sb.*, murderer, he who kills somebody, 679 13.
- slente**, *v.*, to slant, to slope; **slented**, *pt.*, 689 24;—Swedish *slänta*, *slenta*.
- sleyghte**, *sb.*, skill, cunning, trick, falsehood, 788 7;—Icel. *slægd*.
- slommer**, *v.*, to slumber; **slomerynge**, *p.prs.*, 165 2; **slommeryd**, *pt.*, 364 23;—A.S. *sluma*, the slumber.
- slough**, *pt.* See *slee*.
- slyde**, *v.*, to slide; **slode**, *pt.*, 58 21; 365 2; 463 33;—A.S. *slidan*.
- slyppe**, *v.*, to slip; *inf.*, 106 26; **slypped**, *pt.*, 404 33;—A.S. *slipan*.
- smyte**, *v.*, to smite; **smote**, *pt.*, 757 25; **smyten**, *p.p.*, 471 13; **clok smyte**, 644 21; 681 14;—A.S. *smítan*.
- sobbe**, *v.*, to sigh convulsively, to weep; **sobbed**, *pt.*, 726 36;—? A.S. *soefian*.
- socoure**, *v.*, to come to one's assistance, to help; *inf.*, 413 38;—O.F. *sucurre*, *soscorre*.
- soden**, **sodayne**, *adj.*, 83 3; **sodenly**, *adv.*, 82 7;—A.F. *sodeyne*.
- soiourne**, *v.*, to stay, sojourn, abide; **soiourned**, *pt.*, 143 35; **sud- gered**, *pt.*, 182 14;—O.F. *sojorner*, *sojourner*.
- solace**, *sb.*, solace, rest, pleasure, 623 24;—A.F. *solas*.
- solemnacyon**, *sb.*, the act of solemnising, 270 22.
- solempnly**, *adv.*, solemnly, magnificently, 328 30;—A.F. *solempne*.
- solempnyte**, *sb.*, festivity, 270 18;—A.F. *sollempnitee*.
- somette**, *sb.*, summit, 174 2;—O.F. *som* and dim. suff. *-et*, or *sommite*.
- somme**, *pron.*, some, 323 2;—A.S. *sum*.
- sonde**, *sb.*, a sending, gift, message; **sondes**, *pl.*, 840 13.
- sonder**, *adj.*, apart, separate, sending, 406 36; in **sondyr**, 195 19; a **sondre**, 199 5; in **sonder**, asunder, 116 38; 725 1;—A.S. *onsundran*.
- sonne**, *sb.*, sun, 370 30;—A.S. *sunne*.
- soppe**, *sb.*, a sop; **soppes**, *pl.*, 673 7;—Icel. *soppa*.
- sorceresse**, *sb.* and *adj.*, sorceress, 143 19; 207 27; **queens sorceresses**, 187 27;—O.F. *sorceresse*.
- sore**, *adj.* and *adv.*, sore, painful, greatly, violently, 38 11;—A.S. *sár*.
- sorssery**, *sb.*, sorcery, 79 34;—O.F. *soiserie*.
- sote**, *v.*, to be deeply enamoured of somebody; **soted**, *p.p.*, 508 30. See *assote*.
- sothe**, *sb.* and *adj.*, truth, sooth, true, 712 34;—A.S. *söð*.
- soude**, *v.*, to pay, strengthen; **souded**, *p.p.*, 717 20;—O.F. *souder*.
- souder**, *v.*, to solder; **soudered**, *pt.*, 695 12;—O.F. *souder*.
- soune**, *v.*, to sound; **sounded**, *pt.*, 209 20;—A.F. *soner*, *suner*.
- soupe**, *v.*, to sup, drink gradually; **souped**, *pt.*, 126 10;—O.F. *souper*.
- souper**, *sb.*, supper, 126 9;—A.F. *soper*, O.F. *souper*.
- souse**, *v.*, to plunge into the water; **sowsyd**, *pt.*, 366 28; **soused**, *pt.*, 17 33;—from O.F. *sause*, *sauce*.
- southard**, *adj.*, southward, 153 8.
- sowdan**, *sb.*, sultan, 174 17;—O.F. *souldan*, *soudan*.

- sowle**, *sb.*, soul, 681 35;—A.S. *sáwel*, *sáwle*.
- spainyssh**e, *adj.*, Spanish, 2 35.
- spainyardys**, *sb. pl.*, Spaniards, 163 27.
- spede**, *v.*, to speed, prosper, succeed; *inf.*, 51 18; 74 34; **spedde**, *p.p.*, 123 5; 466 10; **sped**, *p.p.*, 111 8;—A.S. *spédan*.
- spede**, *sb.*, success, speed, 289 15;—A.S. *spéd*.
- speke**, *v.*, to speak; *inf.*, 761 11; **spack**, *pt.*, 20 23; **speken**, *pl. prs.*, 425 27; 726 19; **spak**, *pt.*, 48 35; **spake**, *pt.*, 68 3; 466 20; **spoken**, *p.p.*, 2 33; **spoken**, *pl. pt.*, 700 26;—A.S. *specan*.
- spende**, *v.*, to spend, use; **spendyng**e, *p.prs.*, 587 13;—A.S. *spendan*.
- spere**, *sb.*, spear, 585 28;—A.S. *spere*.
- sperhawk**, *sb.*, a sparrowhawk, 601 34;—A.S. *heafoc* and *spearwa*.
- spore**, *v.*, to spur; **spored**, *pt.*, 71 7;—A.S. *sporan*.
- spreng**e, *v.*, to sprinkle, to diffuse; **sprente**, *pt.*, 699 3;—A.S. *sprengan*.
- sprynge**, *v.*, to spring; **spronge**, *p.p.*, 436 27;—A.S. *springan*.
- spycery**, *sb.*, spices, 573 6;—A.F. *spicerie*.
- spyre**, *v.*, to inquire, ask; **spyrred**, *pt.*, 852 36;—A.S. *spyrrian*.
- spyrtyueltees**, *sb. pl.*, acts independent of the body, pure acts of the soul, things belonging to the church, 724 9;—from Lat. *spiritualis*.
- stablyssh**e, *v.*, to establish; **stablysshed**, *p.p.*, 44 10; **stablysshed**, *pt.*, 118 12; **stablysshed**, *p.p.*, 860\* 35;—O.F. *establiiss* (*establiissant*), from *establiir*.
- stablylte**, *sb.*, stability, 829 9;—from Lat. *stabilitatem*.
- staf**, *sb.*, a staff, stick, 109 23; **stauys**, *pl.*, 47 1;—A.S. *staf*.
- stakker**, *v.*, to stagger, to reel from side to side; **stakkeryng**e, *p.prs.*, 464 6;—Icel. *stakra*.
- stale**, *sb.*, stall, state, station, prison, 179 3;—A.S. *steal*.
- stale**, *pt.* See *stele*.
- stande**, *v.*, to stand; *inf.*, 44 2; 472 13; **stode**, *pt.*, 381 22; **stondyng**e, *prs.*, 58 31; **standeth**, *prs.*, 80 36;—A.S. *standan*.
- stark**, *adj.* and *adv.*, strong, firm, severe, thoroughly; **stark dede**, 141 26; **a stark coward**, 143 21; **starke deed**, 847 15;—A.S. *stearc*.
- staunche**, *v.*, to make stagnant, to stop the flowing blood; *inf.*, 176 34; **staunched**, *p.p.*, 177 1; **staunched**, *pt.*, 706 7;—O.F. *estancher*.
- stede**, *sb.*, place; **in my stede**, 375 10; **stedys**, *pl.*, 230 27;—A.S. *stede*.
- stede**, *sb.*, steed, horse, 236 35;—A.S. *stéda*.
- stele**, *v.*, to steal; *inf.*, 137 9; **stale**, *pt.*, 369 11; 457 19;—A.S. *stelán*.
- stere**, *v.*, to stir, to move; *inf.*, 40 33; 630 3; **stered**, *pt.*, 755 19;—A.S. *styrrian*.
- stere**, *v.*, to steer, lead, direct; *inf.*, 760 29; **stered**, *pt.*, 56 12; **styre**d, *pt.*, 760 37;—A.S. *stýran*, *stéoran*.
- sterre**, *sb.*, star; **sterres**, *pl.*, 658 32;—A.S. *steorra*.
- sterte**, *v.*, to start; **sterte**, *pt.*, 66 12; 94 36; **starte**, *pt.*, 168 6; 382 19;—? Icel. *sterta* and A.S. *steortan*.
- steuen**, *sb.*, voice, command, time of performing an action, 92 35; 858\* 19;—A.S. *stefn*.
- steyer**, *sb.*, stair, ladder, 736 23;—A.S. *stéger*.
- stole**, *sb.*, a robe, stole, 656 16;—Lat. *stola*.
- stonien**, *v.*, to stun, to amaze with a blow; **stonyed**, *pt.*, 58 17; *p.p.*, 107 22; **stoned**, *pt.*, 107 9;—from O.F. *estoner*. Compare *astonye*.
- stoupe**, *v.*, to stoop; **stouped**, *pt.*, 206 26; 391 22;—A.S. *stúþian*.
- stoure**, *sb.*, conflict, agitation, commotion, 180 15; 675 25;—O.F. *estour*.
- strake**, *v.*, to give a quick blow, to dash, to hit; *inf.*, 500 11; **straked**, *pt.*, 370 14;—from A.S. *strícan*.
- straungenes**, *sb.*, strangeness, 242 9;—O.F. *estraunge*.

- strayte**, *adj.* See **streyte**.  
**streme**, *sb.*, stream, river, 144 7;—  
 A.S. *stréam*.  
**strene**, *sb.*, race, progeny, 622 8;—  
 A.S. *stréon*.  
**stretche**, *v.* to stretche; **stratched**,  
 836 1; **stretched**, *pt.*, 213 26;—  
 A.S. *streccan*.  
**streyte**, **streyghte**, *adj.* and *adv.*,  
 straight, strict, narrow, 79 26; 457  
 38; **strayte**, 327 18; 435 14;—  
 A.F. *estreit*.  
**strond**, *sb.*, strand, bank, shore, 687  
 19; **stronde**, 708 3;—A.S. *strand*.  
**stryde**, *sb.*, a long step; **strydes**, *pl.*,  
 131 30; **strydys**, *pl.*, 238 14;—  
 from A.S. *stridan*.  
**stryffe**, *sb.*, strife, fight, 840 23;—  
 A.F. *estrijf*.  
**stryue**, *v.* to striue; **stroof**, *pt.*, 10  
 17;—O.F. *estriver*.  
**stryke**, *v.* to strike, rub, to move  
 quickly; *inf.*, 84 32; **strake**, *pt.*,  
 122 3; **stryken**, *p.p.*, 122 12; 133  
 34; 607 21; 842 36;—A.S. *strican*.  
**stykke**, *v.* to stick; **stycketh**,  
*prs.*, 93 9; **stack**, *pt.*, 248 33;  
**stack**, *pt.*, 40 23; 69 29;—A.S.  
*stician*.  
**stynge**, *v.* to sting; **stonge**, *pt.*, 845  
 32; **stongen**, *p.p.*, 845 33;—A.S.  
*stingan*.  
**stynte**, *sb.*, stint, portion allotted to  
 somebody; **stynte of my land**, 72  
 18; **stynte of my crowne**, 269  
 21;—? A.S. *styntan*.  
**stynte**, *v.* to stint, to cease, pause;  
**stynteth**, *prs.*, 205 28; **stynte**,  
*pt.*, 56 13;—A.S. *styntan*.  
**styrope**, *sb.*, stirrup, 304 36;  
**styropes**, *pl.*, 481 14; **steroppes**,  
*pl.*, 487 17;—A.S. *stig-ráp*.  
**subgette**, *sb.*, subject; **subgettys**,  
*pl.*, 163 17.  
**subgette**, *adj.* or *p.p.*, subject, de-  
 pendent, 163 25;—Lat. *subjectus*.  
**substance**, *sb.*, substance, contents,  
 762 1;—Lat. *substantia*.  
**sudgerne**, *v.* See **soiourne**.  
**sufferaunce**, *sb.*, patience, endur-  
 ance, 539 26;—A.F. *suffraunce*.  
**suffrecan**, *sb.*, assistant, deputy of a  
 bishop, 611 16, 19;—Late Lat.  
*suffraganeus*.  
**suffycyaunt**, *adj.*, sufficient, 828 35;  
 —A.F. *suffisant*.  
**suppynge**, *sb.*, little draughts; **sup-  
 pynges**, *pl.*, 370 19;—from A.S.  
*súpan*.  
**suraunce**, *sb.*, assurance, 45 32;—  
 O.F. *seurance*.  
**surgeon**, *sb.*, surgeon, physician, 285  
 28; **surgens**, *pl.*, 284 32; **sur-  
 gyens**, *pl.*, 174 14.  
**surmyse**, *v.*, surmise; **surmysed**, *pt.*,  
 821 34;—from O.F. *p.p. surmise*.  
**sursengle**, *sb.*, girth, belly-band of a  
 saddle, surcingle; **sursenglys**, *pl.*,  
 238 2;—O.F. *sursangle*.  
**suspecyon**, *sb.*, suspicion, 287 24;  
 729 18;—O.F. *suspeziön, souspeçon*.  
**sustene**, *v.*, to sustain; *inf.*, 667 25;  
 —A.F. *sustener*.  
**swalowe**, *sb.*, a whirlpool, gulf, 691  
 27;—Icel. *svelgja*.  
**swappe**, *v.*, to strike, to fall sud-  
 denly; **swapped**, *pt.*, 210 29.  
**swerded**, *adj.*, having a sword, 333  
 25.  
**swere**, *v.*, to swear; **sware**, *pt.*, 275  
 31; **sworne**, *p.p.*, 9 12;—A.S.  
*swerian*.  
**swerue**, *v.*, to swerve; **swarued**, *pt.*,  
 636 30;—A.S. *sweorfan*.  
**sweuen**, *sb.*, dream, 53 1; 859\* 7;—  
 A.S. *swefen*.  
**swough**, *sb.*, sound of the wind, sigh-  
 ing, swoon, 165 20;—from A.S.  
*swógan*.  
**swoun**, *sb.*, swoon, 97 10; **swowne**,  
 93 32; *v.*, to faint, to swoon;  
**swouned**, *pt.*, 466 21.  
**syb**, *sb.* and *adj.*, peace, relationship;  
 related, 103 11;—A.S. *sibb*.  
**sydelyng**, *adj.*, from the side, side-  
 ways, 524 10;—A.S. *side* and  
 ? *gelang*.  
**syge**, *sb.* See **sege**.  
**sygne**, *sb.*, sign, 127 36;—A.F.  
*signe*.  
**sygnefye**, *v.*, to mean, signify, to  
 compare; **sygnefye**, *prs.*, 408  
 17; **sygnefyen**, *pl. prs.*, 631 23;  
 682 36; **sygnefyed**, 703 19; 715\*  
 30;—A.F. *signefier*.  
**sygnette**, *sb.*, mark, the privy seal, a  
 seal; **sygnettys**, *pl.*;—dimin. of  
 O.F. *signe*.

- sygnfycacion**, *sb.*, signification, meaning, 165 25;—O.F. *signification*.
- syker**, *adj.*, trusty, sure, secure, 240 34; 621 10. Compare O.S. *sikor*, O.H.G. *sichor*.
- sykernesse**, *sb.*, security, 157 28.
- syng**, *v.*, to sing; **songen**, *p.p.*, 579 14; **songe**, *p.p.*, 464 35; **songe**, *sb.*, the song, 464 35; 465 5;—A.S. *singan*.
- synke**, *v.*, to sink; **sanke**, *pt.*, 59 2; 858\* 4; **synked**, *pt.*, 838 18;—A.S. *sincan*.
- synne**, *sb.*, sin, 711 27; **syns**, *pl.* 407 6;—A.S. *syn*, *sinn*.
- synner**, *sb.*, sinner; **synnar**, 712 22.
- syse**, *sb.*, size, 173 21; **syses**, *pl.*, 500 6;—from O.F. (*as*)*sis*, (*as*)*sise*.
- sythen**, *adv.* and *conj.*, since, afterwards, 69 6; 430 9; 644 2; **syn** (contracted form), 96 21; 98 10; **sith**, 715 25; **sythe**, 1 24;—A.S. *siddan*.
- sytte**, *v.*, to sit, befit; *inf.*, 103 37; 717 12; **sat**, *pt.*, 104 27; **satte**, *pt.*, 65 25; **sytt**, *p.p.*, 103 31;—A.S. *sittan*.
- taccomplysshe**, *v.* See **accomplysshe**.
- take**, *v.*, to take; **toke**, *pt.*, 69 22; **take**, *p.p.*, 715\* 32; **taken**, *p.p.*, 78 12;—Icel. *taka*.
- tale**, *sb.*, account, narration, tale, reckoning, 623 1;—A.S. *talū*.
- talent**, *sb.*, desire, appetite, inclination, 446 9;—O.F. *talent*.
- talowe**, *sb.*, tallow, 219 1;—M.E. *talgh*.
- tame**, *v.*, to conquer, crush, subdue; **tamyd**, *pt.*, 97 16; 111 23; 657 24;—A.S. *tamian*.
- tapre**, *sb.*, taper; **tapres**, *pl.*, 579 21;—A.S. *tapor*, *taper*.
- tatche**, *sb.*, quality, mark, sign, fault; **tatches**, *pl.*, 77 36; 103 20;—O.F. *tache*.
- taylle**, *sb.*, tail, 165 21;—A.S. *tægl*.
- taylle**, *sb.*, tax, tallage; **taylles**, *pl.*, 161 25;—O.F. *taille*.
- teche**, *v.*, to teach; *prs.*, 142 26; *inf.*, 645 13;—A.S. *tæcan*.
- tempils**, *sb. pl.*, the temples, 55 26;—O.F. *temples*.
- temptacyon**, *sb.*, temptation, 648 26;—O.F. *temptation*.
- tene**, *sb.*, grief, vexation, injury, 94 14; 177 3;—A.S. *tēona*.
- tere**, *sb.*, tear; **teres**, *pl.*, 621 10;—A.S. *tēar*.
- the**, *th*, *definite article*; **thabyte** 34 21; **thachyeuement**, 30 11; **thaduenture**, 7 17; **tharchebysshop**, 34 20; **thappoynte**, **ment**, 14 20; **thassumpcion**, 254 27; **thavys**, 18 3; **thadvyse**, 377 35; **theffecte**, 160 26; **thembasatours**, 162 7; **themperour**, 4 27; 70 7; **thermytage**, 34 20; **therth**, 857\* 28; **thescape**, 16 9; **thexcellent**, 1 32; **thexpo-sycion**, 11 4; **thold**, 91 16; **thoryent**, 165 10; **thother**, 177 18; 721 15; **thystorye**, 1 34, 37; 699 15;—A.S. *ðe*, earlier form *ða*.
- thenne**, *adv.*, then, than, 395 7;—A.S. *þenne*.
- theym**, *pron.*, *dat.* and *acc.*, them, 8 14;—A.S. *þeim*.
- thise**, *pron. pl.*, these, 494 5;—from A.S. *þes*, *pl.*, *þás*, *þæs*.
- tho**, *pron. dem.* and *def. art. pl.*, those, 49 12; 59 26;—A.S. *þá*.
- thonder**, *sb.*, thunder, 409 21;—A.S. *þunor*.
- threde**, *sb.*, thread, 657 18; **thredys**, *pl.*, 699 28;—A.S. *þræd*.
- threng**, *v.*, to press; **thrange**, *pt.*, 479 29;—A.S. *þringan*.
- threste**, *v.*, to thrust; **threst**, *third pers. prs. sing.*, 58 15; **threstyd**, *pt.*, 180 1;—Icel. *þrýsta*.
- threte**, *sb.*, threat, menace; **thretys**, *pl.*, 457 31;—A.S. *þræt*.
- threte**, *v.*, to threaten, to menace; **threted**, *p.p.*, 520 31;—A.S. *þrætian*.
- throte**, *sb.*, throat, 482 13; **throtes**, *pl.*, 151 13;—A.S. *þrote*, *þrotu*.
- thrulle**, *v.*, to pierce, traverse; **thrulled**, *pt.*, 343 28;—A.S. *þyrlian*.
- thryes**, *adv.*, thrice, three times, threefold, 142 34; **the thryes myghte**, 143 26;—A.S. *þriwa*.
- thurgh**, *prep.*, through, 59 12

- thorough**, 1 12; **thorowe**, 37 16; **thorou**, 235 16;—A.S. *þurh*.  
**thwart**, *adv.*, thwart, through, across, 173 37;—Icel. *þvert*. Compare Skeat, Dict. *2m*  
**thyder**, *adv.*, thither, 62 33; **thydder**, ~~661 24~~;—A.S. *þider*.  
**thyghe**, *sb.*, thigh, 13 33; **thyes**, *pl.*, 29 8; 60 33;—A.S. *þeoh*, *þeo*.  
**thylk**, *adj.*, that, such, 181 29;—A.S. *þylc*.  
**to**, (1) *prep.*, to, at, in, upon, into, against, as, until; **temprynte**, 1 34; **tenprynte**, 1 37; 4 13; **texersyse**, 4 1; **tespye**, 171 17; (2) *prefix*, asunder, in twain, to pieces;—A.S. *tó*, *tó*.  
**to breste**, *v.*, to burst asunder; to **brast**, *pt.*, 204 20; 482 15;—A.S. *to-berstan*.  
**to cratche**, *v.*, to scratch, to tear to pieces; to **cratched**, 583 14.  
**to forne**, *adv.* and *prep.*, before, 247 20; 507 33; to **fore**, 1 11, 14;—A.S. *tó-foran*.  
**to gyder**, to **gyders**, *adv.*, together, 397 30; 471 33;—A.S. *tó-gædere*, *tó-gædre*.  
**to hewe**, *v.*, to hew in pieces; *inf.*, 513 9; to **hewe**, *pt.*, 338 31;—A.S. *to-héawan*.  
**tokenyng**, *sb.*, signification, 663 6;—A.S. *tácnung*.  
**tomble**, *v.*, to tumble, leap; **tombled**, *pt.*, 507 26;—A.S. *tumbian*.  
**tornoye**, *v.*, to make a tournament, 6 18; **tornoyeng**, *p.prs.*, 10 30; 23 3;—O.F. *tournoier*.  
**to ryue**, *v.*, to tear, to rend to pieces; to **rofe**, *pt.*, 330 29;—Icel. *rífa*.  
**to sheuer**, *v.*, to smash, to reduce to shivers; to **sheuered**, *pt.*, 69 27; 71 15; 87 28; *p.p.*, 481 12;—Icel. *skífa*.  
**tournement**, *sb.*, tournament, 22 38; **turnement**, 494 13; **turnementys**, *pl.*, 763 25;—O.F. *tournoïement*.  
**towel**, *sb.*, towel, 719 2; **tuell**, 404 32;—A.F. *touaille*, O.F. *touaile*.  
**towre**, *sb.*, tower, 45 11; **toure**, 256 17; **tour**, 46 1; **towres**, 97 20;—O.F. *tur*, *tour*.  
**traîne**, *sb.*, train, treachery, stratum, deceit; **trainys**, *pl.*, 378 22;—O.F. *trahin*, *tráin*.  
**traitourly**, *adv.*, treacherously, like a traitor, 402 10;—A.F. *traitur* and A.S. *lic*.  
**trak**, *sb.*, track, trace, 435 15.  
**trappe**, *sb.*, trap, 32 10;—A.S. *treppe*.  
**trapped**, *adj.*, adorned with trappings, 97 3;—from O.F. *\*trap*, cognate with Mod.F. *drap*.  
**trappere**, *sb.*, trappings, ornaments, 58 22; **trappours**, *pl.*, 371 16.  
**trase**, **trace**, *v.*, to trace, to trace one's way, to rush along; **tracyd**, *pt.*, 463 18; **tracyng**, *p.prs.*, 217 33; **trasyng**, *p.prs.*, 194 11;—O.F. *tracer*.  
**trauaille**, *sb.*, work, labour, toil, trouble, 97 12; **trauail**, 599 33;—A.F. *travail*, *travaill*.  
**trauaille**, *v.*, to work, torment, toil; *inf.*, 273 33;—A.F. *travailler*.  
**trauerse**, *adv.*, in twain, across, 526 5;—O.F. *traverse*.  
**trauerse**, *v.*, to run across; **trauercyd**, *pt.*, 463 18;—O.F. *traverser*.  
**tray**, *sb.*, grief, affliction, 94 14;—A.S. *trega*.  
**traytour**, *sb.* and *adj.*, traitor, 321 28; 849 6; **traitour knyght**, 289 34;—O.F. *traïtor*.  
**treason**, *sb.*, treason, 729 25; **treason**, 76 24 (Malory says: "For the custom was such at that time that all maner of shameful death was called treason," 729 26, 27);—A.F. *treson*, *traïson*.  
**trecherye**, *sb.*, treachery, trickery, 76 24;—A.F. *tricherie*.  
**trede**, *v.*, to tread; **trade**, *pt.*, 778 13; 784 10;—A.S. *tredan*.  
**trenchant**, *adj.*, cutting, 792 23;—O.F. *trencher*.  
**trespas**, *sb.*, trespass, 79 32;—O.F. *trespas*.  
**trest**,<sup>1</sup> *sb.*, † (hunting term), 764 14; Wynkyn de Worde reads *treste*.

<sup>1</sup> I have tried to find the exact meaning of the word "trest;" it seems to be "a station appointed in hunting." Wright says it must be found in some treatise on

- tretabyl**, *adj.*, treatable, 308 14.  
**treyce**, **tretys**, *sb.*, treaty, 153 12; 207 3; 861 36;—A.F. *tretiz*.  
**troncheon**, *sb.*, truncheon, broken piece of a spear-shaft, 69 29; **truncheon**, 93 6;—O.F. *tronçon*, *tronchon*.  
**trouthe**, *sb.*, truth, 38 13;—A.S. *tréowð*.  
**trouthplyte**, *v.*, to engage seriously, to promise; *inf.*, 247 13;—A.S. *tréowð* and *plihhtan*.  
**trowe**, *v.*, to believe; **trowed**, *pt.*, 666 13; **trowe**, *prs.*, 331 38; 432 14;—A.S. *tréowan*.  
**truage**, *sb.*, tribute, 7 1; 70 4;—O.F. *treüage*.  
**trusse**, *v.*, to pack, pack off; **trussed**, *pt.*, 649 16; 829 16;—O.F. *trusser*.  
**tuell**, *sb.* See **towel**.  
**turnement**, *sb.* See **tornement**.  
**turret**, *sb.*, small tower, 140 23; 141 17;—O.F. *tourette*.  
**tweyne**, *num.*, twain, two, 87 20; 166 34; 483 6;—A.S. *twégen*.  
**twyes**, *adv.*, twice, 91 37; 516 9;—A.S. *twíges*, *twíwa*.  
**tyde**, *v.*, to happen; *prs.*, 847 1;—A.S. *tidan*. Compare **betyde**.  
**tydynges**, *sb. pl.*, tidings, news, 699 36;—from Icel. *tíðindi*. Compare A.S. *tidan*.  
**tye**, *v.*, to tie; **tayed**, *pt.*, 41 20; 73 18; **teyed**, *pt.*, 198 29; 806 9;—A.S. *tígan*.  
**tyere**, *v.*, to tire, exhaust; *inf.*, 661 32;—A.S. *teorian*.  
**tylle**, *conj.* and *prep.*, till, to, against, 690 26; **tyl**, 757 31; **til a tree**, 380 10; 389 18; 610 3; **til a frende**, 385 28;—Icel. *tíl*.  
**vbbye**, *sb.*, wafer, sacramental bread, 719 6;—M.E. *oblé*, *oveléte*, O.F. *oublee*, A.S. *oflæte*, Late Lat. *oblāta*.  
**vmbecast**, *v.*, to cast about, consider, ponder; *pt.*, 764 25.  
**vmbre**, *sb.*, shade, umbrage, 274 18; 281 32;—Lat. *umbrā*.  
**vnbockel**, *v.*, to take off, unbuckle; *inf.*, 516 38.  
**vncoupele**, *v.* (hunting term), to uncouple, loose dogs from their couples, set loose, disjoin (compare Shakspeare, "Tit. Andron." ii. 2); **vncoupele**, *p. prs.*, 500 10.  
**vncouth**, *adj.*, strange, unknown, 105 31;—A.S. *un-cūð*.  
**vncurteis**, *adj.*, not polite, rough, unrefined, 151 30; **vncurtois**, 541 7.  
**vnderne**, *sb.*, the time between sunrise and noon, or between noon and sunset, a meal-time, 242 29; **vndern**, 835 18; **vndorn**, 613 28; **vndorne**, 574 21;—A.S. *undern*, O.S. *undorn*.  
**vndernethe**, *prep.*, underneath, below, 362 6; **vnder nethe**, 548 27;—A.S. *under* and *neoð-an*.  
**vnderstande**, *v.*, to understand; **vnderstanden**, *p. p.*, 166 31; **vnderstonde**, *inf.*, 4 16; **vnderstood**, *pt.*, 348 11; **vnderstode**, *pl.*, 461 21;—A.S. *understandan*.

hunting; I have not, however, come across it in any of the treatises on the subject (compare my note to "Trystram"). Sir E. Strachey says "trest" is the participle of *trere* (*tirer*).—In "The Story of England," by Robert Manning of Brunne, A.D. 1338, ed., from MSS. in the Lambeth and Inner Temple libraries, by F. J. Furnivall, the word occurs, page 30, line 856, evidently in the same sense: "att a triste to schete, Brutus was set." The Glossary, page 836, explains *triste* as *tryste*, *trysting-place*, appointed station, and quotes as etymons O.Icel. *traust*, O.Fries. *trast*, *trust*, most likely on Prof. Skeat's authority. In R. Morris's ed. of "Sir Gawayne and the Green Knight," verses 1146, 1170, 1712, *tryster*, *trysteres*, the stations allotted to different persons in hunting, occur.—Mr. Henry Bradley has endeavoured to explain the origin of the word "trest." In a letter to the *Academy* of January 18, 1890, he says: "I do not know whether Romanic philologists will entertain the suggestion that *terra* may, in Gaul, have given rise to a derivative of the form \**terristrum*, \**terristra*, with the accent fluctuating between the first and second syllable. If this hypothesis be admissible, it will, I suppose, account for the forms *tristre*, *terstre*, *tertre*, and also for the twofold sense in which *tertre* occurs; and the original English meaning of *tristre*, *tryst*, would be a 'portion of ground' assigned to each person in certain modes of hunting. The wider sense 'rendez-vous,' might easily have been developed from this, and it is very likely that the word would be at an early period confused with *trist* = *trust*."



- vngladde**, *adj.*, unhappy, 499 27.  
**vnhelmed**, *adj.*, without a helmet, 565 27.  
**vnmaymed**, *p.p.*, not wounded, sound, 515 8.  
**vnmesurably oute of mesure**, *tautol. phrase*, greatly out of measure, exceedingly, 640 22.  
**vnnailed**, *p.p.*, broken, unriveted, 97 29.  
**vnnethe**, *adv.*, scarcely, 127 18;  
**vnnethes**, 143 1;—A.S. *unæðe*.  
**vnslayne**, *adj.* or *p.p.*, alive, not slain, 515 8.  
**vnstabylnesse**, *sb.*, unstableness, 671 11.  
**vnsyker**, *adj.*, uncertain, 724 30.  
**vntrouthe**, *sb.*, falsehood, lie, untruth, 702 1.  
**vnwympeled**, *p.p.*, unveiled, 476 7.  
**vp**, *prep.* and *adv.*, up; **vp so doune**, upside down, 206 12; 654 13; 706 32;—A.S. *up*, *upp*.  
**vtas**, *sb.*, the octave of a festival, 164 8;—A.F. *utaves*, O.F. *oitaves*.  
**vtterauce**, *sb.*, extremity, the uttermost, 218 9;—O.F. *oultrance*.  
**vttermest**, *adj. superl.*, the extreme, the utmost, 128 2; 567 34;—A.S. *utor*, *uttor*, and *meste*.  
**valewe**, *sb.*, value, 78 37;—O.F. *valu*, *valuè*.  
**valyaunce**, *sb. pl.*, valiant deeds, 173 14;—O.F. *valance*, *vailtance*.  
**valyaunt**, *adj.*, brave, valiant, 297 26; 482 18; **valyaunts men**, 83 31; **valyaunter**, *comp.*, 447 17; **valyaunttest**, *superl.*, 454 21;—O.F. *vaillant*, *valant*.  
**valyauntnesse**, *sb.*, brave behaviour, valour, 608 14.  
**vanysshe**, *v.*, to vanish; **vanysshed**, *pt.*, 85 1; 627 23;—O.F. *\*vaniss-*, from *\*vanir*.  
**vanytee**, *sb.*, vanity; **vanytees**, *pl.*, 855\* 1;—Lat. *vanitatem*.  
**varlet**, *sb.*, servant, squire, young vassal, 187 4; 403 10; **varlette**, 434 5;—O.F. *varlet*, *vaslet*.  
**varyaunt**, *adj.*, changeable, fickle, 827 1;—Lat. *variant-*, from *variare*.  
**vaute**, *sb.*, vault; **vautes**, *pl.*, 2 38;—O.F. *vault*, *volte*, *voute*.  
**vaward**, *sb.*, vanguard, 86 31;—A.F. *avaunt garde*.  
**vayshere**, **vaysshoure**, *sb.*, the cowherd, father of syr Tor;—O.F. *vachere*, *vachier*.  
**velowet**, *sb.*, velvet, 822 24;—O.F. *velu*.  
**venery**, *sb.*, hunting, 568 27;—O.F. *venerie*.  
**venetrete**,<sup>1</sup> *v.*, ?; **venetreted**, *p.p.*, 604 32;—? Wynkyn de Worde has also *venetreted*; ed. 1634 has *euill intreated*; Sir E. Strachey reads *so entreated*. The meaning is evidently "badly treated."  
**vengeable**, *adj.*, revengeful, full of vengeance, 834 19.  
**vengeaunce**, *sb.*, vengeance, 367 20; 466 34;—O.F. *venjance*.  
**ventayls**, *sb. pl.*, the movable front of a helmet, covering the face, through which the wearer breathes; sometimes it means the whole front of a helmet, 516 15;—M.E. generally *aventayle* (*compare* Shakspeare, "Troilus and Creseide," line 1557);—A.F. *aventaille*.  
**venym**, *sb.*, poison, 285 2;—O.F. *venin*.  
**veray**, *adj.*, true, 4 15; 565 33; 592 15;—A.F. *verai*.  
**vermyn**, *sb.*, a worm, vermin; **vermys**, *pl.*, 500 9;—O.F. *vermine*.  
**vessel**, *sb.*, vessel, ship, 284 16; **vessaille**, 282 1;—O.F. *vaissel*, *veissel*, *vessel*.  
**veyne**, *adj.*, vain, 679 10;—Fr. *vain*, Lat. *vanus*.  
**vouchesaufe**, *v.*, to sanction, vouchsafe; *inf.*, 720 25;—O.F. *voucher* and *sauf*.  
**voyce**, *sb.*, voice, 695 21; 707 13;  
**voys**, 580 6; 840 22;—O.F. *vois*.  
**vygyl**, *sb.*, vigil, eve of a feast or fast day, 612 1;—Lat. *vigilia*.

<sup>1</sup> The form "venetreted" is evidently a misprint, though I cannot explain it. The M.E. verb "entreten" is used for "to treat," in the good as well as in the bad sense; therefore Sir E. Strachey's reading "so entreated" is satisfactory.

- vylayn**, *adj.* and *sb.*, villain, ugly, detestable; **vylaynst**, *superl.*, 450 18;—O.F. *vilain, vilein*.
- vylony**, *sb.*, villany, 832 18;—O.F. *vilenie*.
- vyloynsly**, *adv.*, villanously, 503 8.
- vyolle**, *sb.*, vial, small bottle, 178 27;—O.F. *virole*, A.F. *fyole*.
- vysaged**, *adj.*, having a face, 213 26;—from A.F. *visage*.
- vyser**, *sb.*, visor, the perforated part of the helmet in front of the face, 181 6; **vysure**, 289 8;—O.F. *visiere*.
- vytaille**, *sb.*, provision, 64 29; **vytilled**, *p.p.*, provisioned, 45 13;—A.F. *vitaille*.
- wade**, *v.*, to wade; **wade**, *pt.*, 156 4;—A.S. *wadan*.
- wagge**, *v.*, to shake to and fro, to nod; **waggyng**, *p.prs.*, 787 20; **wagged**, *pt.*, 787 18.—*Compare* Icel. *vagga*, a cradle.
- wallop**, **wallope**, *sb.*, gallop, pace of a horse while lifting the fore and hind feet together, 69 14; 114 9.
- wallope**, *v.*, to gallop, to leap in running, to ride at a galloping pace; *inf.*, 179 33; **walopped**, *pt.*, 415 30; **wallopt**, *pt.*, 202 17; **walopte**, *pt.*, 204 6;—O.F. *galoper*.
- walowe**, *v.*, wallow, to roll about; **walowynge**, *p.prs.*, 168 16; **walowed**, *pt.*, 242 27;—A.S. *wealwian*.
- walsshe**, *adj.* and *sb.*, Welsh, Welshman, foreign, foreigner, 3 10; **walysse**, 767 30;—A.S. *welisc*.
- wanhope**, *sb.*, despair, 678 12.—*Compare* M.Du. *wanhope*.
- wanne**, *v.*, to wane, to grow less, to ebb; *inf.*, 849 5;—A.S. *wanian*.
- wappe**, *v.*, to wap, to lap; *inf.*, 849 5 (probably from the sound of the sea).
- ward**, *sb.*, care, heed, regard, keeping, 285 27;—A.S. *weard*.
- ward**, *sb.*, ward, one under the care of a guardian, 180 15;—A.S. *weard*.
- wardeyn**, *sb.*, warden, 44 14;—A.F. *wardein*.
- warison**, *sb.*, reward, property, 372 35;—O.F. *warison*.
- wasshe**, *v.*, to wash; **wesshe**, *pt.*, 178 29; **wasshed**, *pt.*, 380 11; **wasshen**, *p.p.*, 49 28;—A.S. *wascan*.
- wast**, *sb.*, waist, the middle part of a human body, 589 11; **waste**, 295 7;—M.E. *wast*, O.H.G. *wahst*.
- waxe**, *v.*, to wax, grow; **waxt**, *pt.*, 130 31; **waxte**, *pt.*, 463 23; **waxed**, *pt.*, 856\* 26;—A.S. *weaxan*.
- wayte**, *sb.*, watch, guard, 726 10; 761 24;—from A.F. *wayter*.
- webbe**, *sb.*, sheet of thin plate of lead, 857\* 27;—? A.S. *webb* or *web*.
- wede**, *sb.*, weed, garment, 702 33; **wedys**, *pt.*, 539 11;—A.S. *wæde*.
- wede**, *sb.*, weed, wild herb, 224 1;—A.S. *wéod, wíod*.
- weder**, *sb.*, weather, 587 2; **wheder**, 653 15; **whether**, 366 25;—A.S. *weder*.
- wedlok**, *sb.*, marriage, 451 4;—A.S. *wedlac*.
- welde**, *v.*, to govern, possess, have power over; *inf.*, 172 2; **weldeth**, *prs.*, 168 2; **welde hymself**, 294 1;—A.S. *wealdan*.
- wele**, *sb.*, weal, prosperity, 310 2; 804 15;—A.S. *wela, weola*.
- welthe**, *sb.*, wealth, 400 8;—from A.S. *wela* with the suff. *-th*.
- weltre**, *v.*, to welter, to roll about; **weltred**, *pt.*, 168 14; **weltryng**, *p.prs.*, 168 15.—*Compare* A.S. *wealtan*.
- wende**, *v.*, to go, to turn; **wente**, *pt.*, 6 19; 136 2; 761 9;—A.S. *wendan*.
- wene**, *v.*, to ween, suppose; **wene**, *prs.*, 163 2; **weneth**, *prs.*, 81 33; **wende**, *pt.*, 40 5; 404 21;—A.S. *wénan*.
- wepen**, *sb.*, weapon, 92 24;—A.S. *wépen*.
- wepenles**, *adj.*, without arms, 93 20.
- werche**, *v.*, to work; **werches**, *prs.*, 848 1; **worcheth**, *prs.*, 643 17; **wroughte**, *pt.*, 120 3; 378 28; **worche**, *inf.*, 135 10; **worched**, *p.p.*, 199 13; **wrouzt**, *p.p.*, 403 31; **wyrchyng**, *p.prs.*, 120 2;—A.S. *wyrcean, wercan*.

- werke**, *sb.*, work, 3 27;—A.S. (*ge*)  
*weorc, worc*.
- werre**, *sb.*, war; **werrys**, *pl.*, 198 9;  
**werres**, *pl.*, 659 10;—O.F. *werre*.
- werre**, *v.*, to make war; *inf.*, 673  
20; **werrith**, *prs.*, 682 13;—A.S.  
*werrian*. Compare O.F. *werreier*,  
*guerroier*.
- wers**, *adj. comp.*, worse, 46 22;  
**werse**, 47 34; **worse**, 297 4;—  
A.S. *wyrs*.
- werst**, *adj. superl.*, worst, utmost,  
839 37;—A.S. *wyrst*.
- werwolf**, *sb.*, man-wolf, 793 17;—  
A.S. *wer* (man, husband) and *wulf*.
- wery**, *adj.*, weary, 664 29;—A.S.  
*wérig*.
- wesshe**, *pt.* See *wasshe*.
- wete**, *v.*, to know, to observe, to keep,  
guard; *inf.*, 1 13; 433 26; **wiste**,  
*pt.*, 402 9; **wist**, *pt.*, 373 14;  
**wetest**, *prs.*, 379 14; **wyste**, *pt.*,  
82 13; 205 14; **we wote**, *prs.*, 59  
30; **I wote**, *prs.*, 110 19; 422 3;  
**thou wotest**, *prs.*, 72 10;—A.S.  
*witan*.
- wey**, *sb.*, way, 36 25; 51 15;—A.S.  
*weg*.
- weyke**, *adj.*, weak; **weykely**, *adv.*,  
794 21; **wayke**, 857\* 2; **weykest**,  
*superl.*, 144 29;—Icel. *veikr*, A.S.  
*wac*.
- wheder**, *sb.* See *weder*.
- wheder**, *adv.*, whither, 297 21;  
**whyder ward**, 438 17; **wheder**  
**ward**, whitherward, 341 6; **whe-**  
**ther**, 219 15; **whyder**, 378 10;  
**whyther**, 297 21; **whydder**, 702  
28;—A.S. *hwider*.
- whele**, *sb.*, wheel, 827 1;—A.S.  
*hwéol*.
- whelp**, *sb.*, young of a dog and of  
beasts of prey, puppy, 694 4;—  
A.S. *hwelp*.
- whether**, *sb.* See *weder*.
- whether**, *pron.*, which of the two,  
238 28; *conj.*, whether, if, 244 1;  
—A.S. *hwæðer*.
- whyder**, **whydder**. See *wheder*.
- whylest**, *adv. and conj.*, while, whilst,  
725 1;—from A.S. *hwil*.
- withinforth**, *adv.*, inwardly, inside,  
836 28.
- withoutforth**, *adv.*, outside, 836 28.
- withsay**, *v.*, to contradict, to re-  
nounce; *inf.*, 615 17;—A.S. *wið*  
and *secgan*.
- withstande**, *v.*, to resist; *inf.*, 760  
16; **withstand**, *p.p.*, 76 6;—A.S.  
*wið* and *standan*.
- woful**, *adj.*, sorrowful; **wofullest**,  
*superl.*, 407 3;—A.S. *wéa* and *ful*.
- wol**, *prs.* See *wylle*.
- wolde**, *pt.* See *wylle*.
- wonder**, *adj. and adv.*, fearful, won-  
derful, 689 8; 837 35. Compare  
A.S. *wundor*, *wundrian*.
- wonderly**, *adv.*, wonderfully, 300 23.
- wonne**, *pt.* See *wynne*.
- wonte**, *adj.*, accustomed, 831 27.
- wood**, *sb.*, wood, tree, forest, 56 2;  
**wode**, 85 19;—A.S. *wudu*, *widu*.
- wood**, **woode**, *adj. and adv.*, mad,  
raging, 58 32; 401 8;—A.S. *wód*.
- woodenes**, *sb.*, madness, 55 36; 396  
2;—A.S. *wódnys*.
- worcheth**, *prs.* See *werche*.
- worte**, *sb.*, plant, herb, vegetable;  
**wortes**, *pl.*, 668 18;—A.S. *wyrt*.
- wote**, *prs.* See *wete*.
- wowe**, *v.*, to woo, to request;  
**wowed**, *pt.*, 784 36;—A.S. *wógian*.
- wrake**, *sb.*, destruction, misery, mis-  
chief, 797 35; 854 22;—A.S.  
*wracu*.
- wrathe**, *v.*, to become or to make  
angry; *inf.*, 374 18;—from A.S.  
*wrād*.
- wreke**, *v.*, to wreak, to urge, punish,  
avenge; **wrackyd**, *p.p.*, 531 17;  
**wroken**, *p.p.*, 107 5;—A.S. *wrecan*.
- wroth**, **wrothe**, *adj.*, wroth, fearful,  
angry, 401 8, 14;—A.S. *wrād*.
- wrou3t**, *p.p.* See *werche*.
- wrynge**, *v.*, to wring, press; **wryng-**  
**yng**, *p.prs.*, 167 8; **wrange**, *pt.*,  
389 36; **wrong**, *pt.*, 168 14;—A.S.  
*wringan*.
- wrythe**, *v.*, to writhe, to twist;  
**wrythed**, *pt.*, 242 27; 582 23;  
**wrothe**, *pt.*, 595 27;—A.S.  
*wridan*.
- wyde where**, *adv.*, far and wide,  
340 29.
- wyght**, *adj.*, active, swift, strong,  
344 30; 467 34; 799 22;—A.S.
- wyle**, *sb.*, guile, trick, a sly artifice;  
**wyles**, *pl.*, 424 11;—A.S. *wil*, *wile*.

- wyllar**, *sb.*, one who wills, or wishes; **well wyllars**, *pl.*, 465 11;—from A.S. *willan*.
- wylsome**, *adj.*, dreary, doubtful, 247 11.
- wyl, wylle**, *prs.*, will, 402 12; 719 22; **I wol**, *prs.*, 59 8; **thou wolt**, *prs.*, 38 27; **he wol**, 70 36; **wylt thow**, 102 5; **woll ye**, 42 22; **wold**, *pt.*, 39 28; 402 26; **thou woldest**, 48 28;—A.S. *wille, wolde*.
- wyly**, *adj.*, wily, full of tricks, 135 38; 238 32.
- wymmen**, *sb. pl.*, women, 83 28; 407 10;—A.S. *wifmen*.
- wympeld**, *p.p.*, veiled, 531 59.
- wyn**, *sb.*, wine, 275 22;—A.S. *wīn*.
- wynded**, *p.p.*, having much breath, 512 8;—from A.S. *wind*.
- wynne, wyn**, *v.*, to win; *inf.*, 80 15; 148 19; 312 20; **wan**, *pt.*, 44 16; **wonne**, *pt.*, 134 13; **wonne**, *p.p.*, 105 77; 388 27; 513 32;—A.S. (*ge*)*winnan*.
- wyrchyng**, *p.prs.* See *werche*.
- wyt**, *sb.*, wisdom, intelligence, wit, reason, 50 20; **wytte**, 99 3;—A.S. (*ge*)*witt*.
- wyte**, *sb.*, blame, 75 24; 88 11.
- wyte**, *v.*, to blame; *prs.*, 133 32; 556 14; *inf.*, 575 9;—A.S. *wītan*.
- wytted**, *adj.* or *p.p.*, clever, having wit, 253 27.
- wyttely**, *adv.*, cleverly, 472 15.
- y**, (1) *I*, *pron. pers.*; **y gaf**, 46 36;—A.S. *ic*; (2) **y**, *prefix* = *ge*; **y barryd**, 780 27; **y fonde**, 699 35; **ynombred**, 178 7; **y sette**, 822 32; **y sought**, 754 1;—A.S. *ge*.
- yate**, *sb.*, the gate, 39 7; 91 9;—A.S. *geat*.
- ye**, *adv.*, yes, 100 14; **yis**, 93 16;—A.S. *gese (gēa and -se)*.
- yede**, *pt.*, went, 97 36; 110 30; 150 33; **yode**, *pt.*, 185 31;—A.S. *ge-éode*.
- yefte**, *sb.*, gift, 481 24; **yeftes**, *pl.*, 453 5;—A.S. *gift, Icel. gípt*.
- yelde**, *v.*, to pay, yield; *inf.*, 15 31; 24 13; *prs.*, 71 34; **yelded** (*hym*), *pt.*, 13 23; 16 3; **yelden**, *p.p.*, 13 1;  **yolde**, *pt.*, 189 23; **yolden**, *p.p.*, 180 29;—A.S. *geldan*.
- yelle**, *v.*, to yell; **yellynge**, *p.prs.*, 654 20;—A.S. *gellan*.
- yeue**, *v.*, to give; *inf.*, 38 11; **yeuen**, *p.p.*, 44 9; 61 36; 412 4; 518 6; **forýaf**, *pt.*, 43 32;—A.S. *gífan*. Compare *gyue*.
- yland**, *sb.*, island, 422 34;—A.S. *íglanđ*.
- ylle**, *sb.* and *adj.*, bad, ill, 208 27; 648 1;—Icel. *íllr*.
- ynde**, *sb.*, dark-blue colour;—O.F. *inde*, Lat. *India*.
- ynowe**, *adj.* and *adv.*, enough, 101 1; **ynow**, 71 6;—A.S. *genôh*.
- yole**, *sb.*, Yule, Christmas, 177 25;—A.S. *gēola*.
- yoman**, *sb.*, youth, servant, 646 36; **yemen**, *pl.*, 845 2.—See *Skeat, Dict.*
- yongthe**, *sb.*, youth, 276 31;—from A.S. *gēogud, gīogud*.
- yre**, *sb.*, anger, spite, 58 28; 391 22; 418 22;—Lat. *ira*. See *ire*.
- yssue**, *sb.*, issue; **yssues**, *pl.*, 36 3;—A.F. *issue*.
- yssue**, *v.*, to issue; **yssued**, *pt.*, 403 10.
- ytalyen**, *adj.*, Italian, 2 35.
- 3ere**, *sb.*, ear, 778 30 (*Wynkyn de Worde* has *ere*; ed. 1634, *eare*; Sir E. Strachey reads *ear*);—A.S. *éare*.



